

L. Germ.

223^m

Rowbotham

<36618166830016

S

<36618166830016

Bayer. Staatsbibliothek

A
PRACTICAL
GERMAN GRAMMAR.

GERMAN GRAMMAR
PRACTICAL

A NEW AND EASY METHOD

OF ACQUIRING A THOROUGH KNOWLEDGE

OF THE

GERMAN LANGUAGE

GERMAN GRAMMAR

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE STUDENTS

BY JOHN ROWBOTTOM

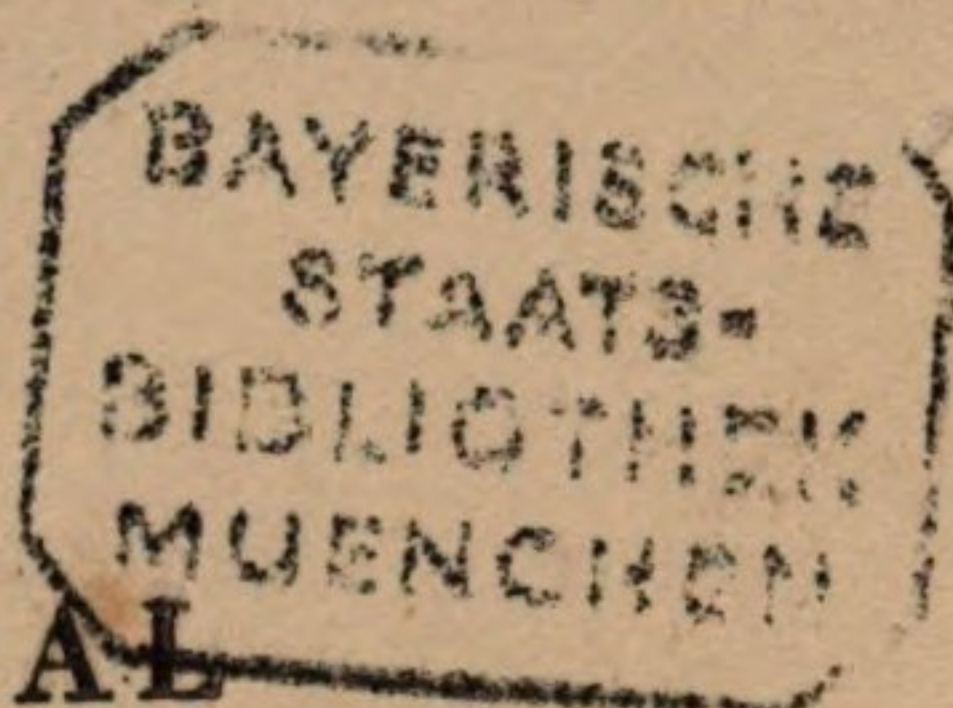
MASTER OF THE CLASSICAL, MATHEMATICAL AND COMMERCIAL ACADEMY

WALWORTH

LONDON

PRINTED FOR BALDWIN, CRADOCK AND JOY, HARVEY
AND DARTON, AND BOOSEY AND SONS

1824



A
PRACTICAL
GERMAN GRAMMAR;
OR,
A NEW AND EASY METHOD
OF
ACQUIRING A THOROUGH KNOWLEDGE
OF THE
German Language.

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE STUDENTS.

BY JOHN ROWBOTHAM,
MASTER OF THE CLASSICAL, MATHEMATICAL AND COMMERCIAL ACADEMY,
WALWORTH.

London:

PRINTED FOR BALDWIN, CRADOCK AND JOY; HARVEY
AND DARTON; AND BOOSEY AND SONS.

1824.

GERMAN GRAMMAR;

A NEW AND EASY METHOD

PREFACE

ACQUIRING A THOROUGH KNOWLEDGE

OF THE

GERMAN LANGUAGE.

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE STUDENTS.

By J. B. G. VOGEL, M.A.,

OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE.

LONDON: J. B. G. VOGEL, 1834.

PRINTED BY J. B. G. VOGEL,

ST. GEORGE'S PLACE, CAMBERWELL.

1834.

1834.

1834.

1834.

1834.

1834.

1834.

1834.

1834.

1834.

1834.

1834.

P R E F A C E.

ANCILLON, in his "*Mélanges de Littérature et de Philosophie*," says of the German Language, that "it is rich, varied and flexible,—a language which owes to itself all its beauties,—which possesses in itself undeveloped treasures,—and which is susceptible of an indefinite perfection." Indeed all competent judges readily admit that it possesses advantages not to be found in any of the mixed dialects of Europe, and that, in strength, copiousness, beauty, sublimity and comprehensiveness of expression, it is surpassed by no language ancient or modern.

The Germans hold so high a rank in literature, science and the arts, and their authors of eminence are so numerous in

every department of human knowledge, that the study of their language has now become, not merely desirable as a matter of taste, but, in some degree, necessary to every person who has the slightest pretensions to an acquaintance with European literature.

This Language not only opens a rich source of gratification to the man of taste and science, but, as it is the origin of the greater part of our colloquial words and phrases, it cannot fail to throw much light on the works of GOWER, CHAUCER, SPENCER, SHAKSPEARE and other early writers, and must therefore be of essential service to every Englishman who wishes to acquire an accurate and extensive knowledge of his native tongue. Its utility, in a mercantile point of view, cannot be doubted, as it is probably more in use among European Merchants than any other Language, except the English. While, however, the importance of the German Language in literature and science,—in arts and commerce,—gives it a just claim to the very general attention which is now paid to it in the middle and higher ranks of society, it is a subject of serious complaint that there has hitherto existed in English no good practical German Grammar. The great disadvantage is, that, in most or all of those which have been published, the first exercises begin with long sentences which require the application of all the rules of syntax, and that, in some instances, more rules are requisite than the writers themselves have given. Instead, however, of undertaking a

task which, though easy, might be thought invidious, namely to detail their various defects, the author thinks it sufficient to say that it has been his anxious endeavour to obviate them; and, as he is an Englishman, he presumes to hope that his grammar will be more useful, to his own countrymen, than any similar productions from the hands of German writers:—for who, it may be asked, is so likely to know the peculiar difficulties which retard the progress of the English student, as he who has had to contend with them.

Although the arrangement of the following pages differs, considerably, from that of preceding writers, the materials of which they are composed have been carefully selected from the works of German Grammarians of established authority.

In this grammar every rule or important note is followed by easy exercises, or by suitable examples: the exercises increase in difficulty by regular and almost imperceptible gradations, commencing with the articles and nouns which are sufficiently difficult for beginners, then proceeding with the articles, nouns and adjectives, and so on in regular order through the other parts of speech. In syntax the rules have been compressed as much as possible in order to afford greater scope for illustration and practice; and, though this grammar is comprised within a smaller compass than most others on the same subject, it will nevertheless be found to contain more matter than any German Gram-

mar hitherto published in this country. Throughout the work the author has been studious to unite conciseness with perspicuity, so as neither to perplex the student with unnecessary explanations, nor to omit any elucidation which he conceived would be useful. How far he has succeeded in these particulars is left to the decision of candid and impartial judges.

MARLBOROUGH PLACE,

WALWORTH.

May 1st, 1824.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE.
Alphabet	1
Pronunciation	3
Capitals	3
Observations on Orthography	4
Parts of Speech	6
Articles	6
Nouns	7
Declension of Proper Names	20
Observations on the Plural of Nouns	22
———— Declension of Nouns	27
———— Gender of Nouns	28
Endings of Nouns of every Declension	33
Adjectives	50
Terminations of Adjectives	54 and 55
Comparison of Adjectives	61
Numerals	69
Pronouns	76
Possessive Pronouns	78
Demonstrative Pronouns	83
Relative Pronouns	86
Interrogative Pronouns	87
Indefinite Pronouns	88
Division of Verbs	96

CONTENTS.

	PAGE.
Auxiliary Verbs	97
Conjugation of a Regular Active Verb	134
Table of Terminations of the Regular Verbs	138
Conjugation of the Irregular Verb <i>Sehen</i>	141
List of the Irregular Verbs	153
Conjugation of a Regular Passive Verb	170
Conjugation of an Irregular Passive Verb	175
Conjugation of Neuter Verbs	178 and 179
Observations on the Neuter Verbs	183
Neuter Verbs with <i>haben</i>	187
Neuter Verbs with <i>seyn</i>	190
Compound Verbs	192
Observations on the Compound Verbs	201
Particles with which Compound Verbs are formed	206
Reflective Verbs	207
Observations on the Reflective Verbs	212
Impersonal Verbs	212
Observations on the Impersonal Verbs	217
Adverbs,	222
Prepositions,	226
Conjunctions,	235
Interjections	241

SYNTAX.

Articles	243
Nouns	251
Observations respecting the Cases	259
Adjectives	260
Observations on the Adjectives	266
Pronouns	270
Possessive Pronouns	270
Demonstrative Pronouns	275

CONTENTS.

	PAGE.
Relative Pronouns	279
Interrogative Pronouns	284
Indefinite Pronouns	287
Verbs	289
Agreement of Verbs	290
Government of Verbs	294
Moods and Tenses of Verbs	300
Passive Verbs	311
Neuter Verbs	313
Compound Verbs	314
Reflective Verbs	316
Impersonal Verbs	317
Participles	319
Adverbs	322
Prepositions	323
Conjunctions	332
Familiar Dialogues	337
Proverbs and Idiomatic Expressions, &c.	341
German Abbreviations	346

*Explanation of the Signs and English Abbreviations which
are used in this Grammar.*

The Asterisk (*) is sometimes used to direct the reader to some note or observation ; but it is generally placed before single words to show that the vowels *a, o, u,* are changed into the diphthongs *ae, oe, ue,* or *â, ô, û.* Example : *das * Buch,* the book ; *die Buecher,* or *Bücher,* the books.

The letters *M. F. N. m. f. n.* or *Mas. Fem. Neut.* denote the genders Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

The letters *N. G. D. A.* or *Nom. Gen. Dat. Acc.* denote the cases Nominative, Genitive, Dative and Accusative.

The figures 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. when used after a noun, point out to what declension the noun belongs.

The letters *a. b. c. d. &c.* denote first, second, third, &c. *Ex.* is used for Example ; *Obs.* for Observe, or Observation ; *Sing.* Singular ; *Pl.* Plural.

Pres. Present Tense ; *Imp.* Imperfect ; *Perf.* Perfect ; *Plup.* Pluperfect ; *1st. Fut.* First Future ; *2nd. Fut.* Second Future ; *Cond.* Conditional ; *Act.* Active ; *Pass.* Passive ; *Vide,* or *v.* See ; *P.* or *p.* Page ; *Gram.* Grammar.

A PRACTICAL GERMAN GRAMMAR.

CHAP. I.

§ I. *The Alphabet.*

<i>Letters.</i>	<i>Names.</i>	<i>English.</i>	<i>Pronounced.</i>
A, a,	ah,	A, a.	| as a in <i>Father</i> , <i>Water</i> ; <i>man</i> , <i>Mann</i> .
B, b,	bay,	B, b.	{ generally sounded as in English, except where it is sounded like p at the end of words; as, <i>ob</i> , <i>whether</i> , is pronounced op.
C, c,	tsay,	C, c.	{ before a, o, u as t̃; Ex: <i>Cocoa</i> , and before e, i, y as ts̃; <i>Cicero</i> , is sounded as if it were written ts̃it̃s̃ero.
D, d,	day,	D, d.	{ as in English, but in some provinces much harder at the end of words approaching to t or rather dt.
E, e,	a,	E, e,	{ as a in <i>fate</i> , <i>name</i> , but is sometimes sounded like the Scotch e.
F, f,	f,	F, f,	
G, g,	ghay,	G, g,	{ G, at the beginning of words is hard; at the end, it has the soft guttural sound of ch; as, <i>der Tag</i> , <i>the day</i> . But the sounds of ch, and of the guttural g have no corresponding sound in the English language.
H, h,	hah,	H, h,	{ as in English when it begins a word; otherwise it merely protracts the sound of the preceding vowel.
I, i,	e,	I, i,	
J, j,	yod,	J, j.	| as y in <i>year</i> .
K, k,	kah	K, k,	
L, l,	l.	L, l,	
M, m,	m.	M, m,	
N, n,	n.	N, n,	
O, o,	o.	O, o,	
P, p,	pay,	P, p,	

Letters.	Name.	English.	Pronounced.
Q, q,	koo,	Q, q,	
R, r,	err,	R, r,	
S, s,	s,	S, s,	
T, t,	tay,	T, t,	
U, u,	oo,	U, u,	{ has either the long sound of the English oo, as die Kuh, (koo) cow, or the short sound of u in full.
V, v,	fow,	V, v,	| as f in English.
W, w,	vay,	W, w,	| nearly as v in the English word vine
X, x,	iks,	X, x,	
Y, y,	ipsilon,	Y, y,	{ Y is merely double i and was formerly written ij, it is sounded as y in the English word system, System.
Z, z,	tsett,	Z, z,	{ as ts, in the German word Zimmer, room, which is sounded as if it were tsimmer.

Obs. The letters, f, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, and x, when combined with other letters, are pronounced as in English.

THE VOWELS ARE

a, e, i, o, u.
a, e, i, o, u.

THE DIPHTHONGS ARE

â or æ, pronounced as a in hare. *

ô or œ,eu, or æu, in the French peu, little;
cœur, heart; ex. hören, to hear.

û or uethe French u in dure, hard; ex. übel,
ill.

auou, in house; ex. Bau, building.

ai, ay,y, in sky; ex. Kaiser, emperor.

ei, ey,y, in by; ex. bei or bey, near.

ie,ee, in the English word feet.

eu,i or oi, in voice; ex. Feuer, fire.

* As it would be inconvenient to put dots, or e over capitals the diphthongs Ae, De, Ue are used at the beginning of words instead of â, ô, û. Ex: die Äpfel, the apples; but â, ô, û, are used when differently situated. Ex: die Bögen, the bows, die Brüder, the brothers.

A TRIPHTHONG is the union of three vowels; as *äü* or *äeu*, pronounced as *oi* in the English word *voice*, Ex. *Mäuse*, mice.

THE DOUBLE CONSONANTS ARE

ch, sch, ck, ff, ph, pf, ss, sz, tz.

ch, sch, ck, ff, ph, pf, ss, sz, tz.

Some of the letters or characters are so similar in form as to be easily confounded. To avoid this confusion observe:

1. That among the capital letters *B*, bay, is closed in the middle, and *B*, fow, is open.

2. *E*, e, has a small projecting stroke in the middle, *E*, tsay, has not.

3. *G*, ghay, is without any opening, but *G*, s, has an opening,

4. *K*, kah, is rounded at the top towards the right hand, *N*, n, open in the middle and, *R*, err, closed.

5. *M*, m, is open, and *B*, vay, closed at the bottom.

Among the small letters.

1. *b*, bay, is perfectly closed below, and *h*, hah, open.

2. *m*, m, is quite open below, and *w*, vay, is closed.

3. *v*, fow, is closed, and *y*, ipsilon, is open at the bottom.

4. *x*, iks, has a small stroke below on the left, and *r*, err, none.

§ II. On the Pronunciation.

In German as in most other foreign languages attempts are generally made by writers of Grammars to give rules for the pronunciation; but as any description of sounds that can possibly be given, must fall far short of oral instruction and serve rather to mislead than instruct, I shall confine myself to the following observation.

The Germans pronounce every letter in each word, and always according to the original sound, except the diphthongs and combined consonants *ch*, *sch*, *ph*, *ß*.

This rule cannot mislead, but students of the German or of any other foreign language, had better never attempt to acquire the pronunciation without the assistance of a teacher; as sounds must be acquired by the ear and not by the eye.

CAPITALS.

§ III. Observations respecting the use of Capital Letters.

1. All substantives, as well as all words used substantively begin with capitals, and also all sentences: as,

Heinsius' German Grammar, Zeitung für die Elegante Welt, Morgenblatt, &c. But in the Jena and Leipsic Literary Gazettes, which are printed in Roman characters, y is used instead of i in the above examples.

As still greater irregularities take place in the use of *ff* and *ß*, the following observations respecting them may be found useful.

1. A word should never terminate in *ff*, therefore we must write *muß*, not *muff*; *bloß*, not *bloss*. So *Schloß*, *palace*, *Haß*, *hatred*, *naß*, *wet*, &c. For this authority vide Heinsius' Grammar, Adelung's Dictionary or Grammar, or any modern publications, which are printed in German characters. But it appears to be indifferent, whether *ff* or *ß* be employed when the roman characters are used. Vide the Jena or Leipsic Literary Gazettes.

2. *ß* is invariably used after a vowel when it is long, both in the middle and at the end of words; as, *groß*, *great*; *grüßen*, *to salute*; *saßen*, *sat*; *Spaß*, *sport*, &c.*

3. *ß* is used instead of *ff*, at the end of a syllable, when a consonant follows: as, *häßlich*, *hateful*; *größte* or *größeste*, *greatest*; *Sproßling*, *sprig*, &c. But when a short vowel precedes and another vowel follows, *ff* is used instead of *ß*; as, *wissen*, *to know*; *hassen*, *to hate*; *essen*, *to eat*; *Schlösser*, *palaces*; *Wasser*, *water*, &c. So in declining the same observations apply. Ex.

Sing. N. *Fäß*, (cask,) G. *Fäßes*, D. *Fäße*, A. *Fäß*.

Plur. N. *Fässer*, (casks) G. *Fässer*, D. *Fässern*, A. *Fässer*.

Sing. N. *Fräß*, (glutton) G. *Fräßes*, D. *Fräße*, A. *Fräß*.

Plur. N. *Fräße*, &c.

N.B. *a* is short in *Fäß*; but long in *Fräß*.

4. In the following adjectives and nouns *o* and *u* are long. *Blöß*, *naked*. M. *bloßer*, F. *bloße*, N. *bloßes*; *Blöße*, f. *nakedness*. *Groß*, *great*. M. *großer*, F. *große*, N. *großes*; *Größe*, f. *greatness*. *Süß*, *sweet*. M. *süßer*, F. *süße*, N. *süßes*; *Süßigkeit*, f. *sweetness*.

But in the following the vowel *a* is short:

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Bläß</i> , pale.	<i>blässer</i> ,	<i>blasse</i> ,	<i>blässes</i> .
<i>Graß</i> , horrible.	<i>grässer</i> ,	<i>grasse</i> ,	<i>grässes</i> .
<i>Naß</i> , wet.	<i>nässer</i> ,	<i>nasse</i> ,	<i>nässes</i> .
<i>Blässe</i> , paleness.	<i>Nässe</i> ,	<i>wetness</i> .	

5. In contracted words *ß* is used instead of *s* or *ff*; as, *dieß* for *dieses*, *this*, Nom. Neuter.

deß *dessen*, of this, Gen. Mas. and Neut.

wesß *wessen*, whose, or of whom.

er ißt *er isset*, he eats.

er läßt .. *er lässt*, he lets.

* The double vowels *aa*, *au*, *äu*, *ei*, *ie*, *oo* are always long. But *ä*, *ö*, *û* are sometimes long and sometimes short.

GERMAN GRAMMAR.

CHAP. II.

§ I. *Parts of Speech.**

In German there are nine different classes of words or parts of speech, five of which are declinable, and four indeclinable, viz.

Declinable.

1. Article, Geschlechtswort.
2. Noun, Nennwort, or }
Hauptwort. }
3. Adjective, Beiwort.
4. Pronoun, Fürwort.
5. Verb, Zeitwort.

Indeclinable.

6. Adverb, Nebenwort.
7. Preposition, Vornwort.
8. Conjunction, Bindewort.
9. Interjection, Empfindungswort.

§ II. *On the Article.*

There are two articles, viz. *ein*, *a* or *an*, and *der*, *the*; which are declined in three genders, masculine, feminine and neuter.

ARTICLES.

Ein, *a*, is thus declined.

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>ein</i> ,	<i>eine</i> ,	<i>ein</i> , <i>a</i> .
<i>G.</i>	<i>eines</i> ,	<i>einer</i> ,	<i>eines</i> , of <i>a</i> .
<i>D.</i>	<i>einem</i> ,	<i>einer</i> ,	<i>einem</i> , to <i>a</i> .
<i>A.</i>	<i>einen</i> ,	<i>eine</i> ,	<i>ein</i> , <i>a</i> .

Ein, has no plural.

* It is presumed that students are already acquainted with the parts of speech; they are the same in German as in English.

Der, the, is thus declined.

Singular.

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	der,	die,	das, the.
<i>G.</i>	des,	der,	des, of the.
<i>D.</i>	dem,	der,	dem, to the.
<i>A.</i>	den,	die,	das, the.

Plural for all the Genders.

<i>N.</i>	die, the.
<i>G.</i>	der, of the.
<i>D.</i>	den, to the.
<i>A.</i>	die, the.*

CHAP. III.

NOUNS.

§ I. *On the noun, (Nennwort).*

DECLENSION.

The changes of termination in German nouns are all comprehended under five declensions.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension generally end in el, er, en, lein, and make the genitive case singular in s, and the dative plural in n, without any other change of termination.†

Masculine.

Singular.

Plural.

<i>N.</i> der Engel, the angel.	<i>N.</i> die Engel, the angels.
<i>G.</i> des Engels, of the angel.	<i>G.</i> der Engel, of the angels.
<i>D.</i> dem Engel, to the angel.	<i>D.</i> den Engeln, to the angels.
<i>A.</i> den Engel, the angel.	<i>A.</i> die Engel, the angels.

* The articles must agree with the nouns to which they are joined in gender, number and case. This is properly a rule belonging to syntax, but it may here be found of great utility.

† Those nouns which end in en, in the nominative, do not take another n, in the dative plural, Ex. Degen.

Masculine.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. der Degen, the sword.	N. die Degen, the swords.
G. des Degens, of the sword.	G. der Degen, of the swords.
D. dem Degen, to the sword.	D. den Degen, to the swords.
A. den Degen, the sword.	A. die Degen, the swords.

Neuter.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. das Messer, the knife.	N. die Messer, the knives.
G. des Messers, of the knife.	G. der Messer, of the knives.
D. dem Messer, to the knife.	D. den Messern, to the knives.
A. das Messer, the knife.	A. die Messer, the knives.

So decline.

Der Adler, the eagle.	das Becken, the bason.
das Alter, the age.	der Busen, the bosom.
der Ballen, the bale.	der Himmel, the heaven.

Most nouns of this declension change the vowels a, o and u into ä or ae, ö or oe, ü or ue in the plural; as,

Mas.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. der Apfel, the apple.	N. die Äpfel, the apples.
G. des Apfels, of the apple.	G. der Äpfel, of the apples.
D. dem Apfel, to the apple.	D. den Äpfeln, to the apples.
A. den Apfel, the apple.	A. die Äpfel, the apples.

* Feminine.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. die Mutter, the mother.	N. die Mütter, the mothers.
G. der Mutter, of the mother.	G. der Mütter, of the mothers.
D. der Mutter, to the mother.	D. den Müttern, to the mothers.
A. die Mutter, the mother.	A. die Mütter, the mothers.

So decline.

der Bogen, the bow.	die Tochter, the daughter.
der Bruder, the brother.	der Vater, the father.
der Faden, the thread.	der Vogel, the bird.

* Feminines in the German language never change their terminations in the singular. (Example, Mutter.)

Practice on the first Declension.

Observe. The words marked (*) change the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, in the plural, into the diphthongs *ä*, *ö*, *ü*.

Of the ditch,	*Graben, <i>m.</i> ditch.
The brothers, (<i>Nom.</i>)	*Bruder, <i>m.</i> brother.
The hearing, (<i>Acc.</i>)	Hören, <i>n.</i> hearing.
To the birds,	*Vogel, <i>m.</i> bird.
Of the seal,	Siegel, <i>n.</i> seal.
To the mother,	*Mutter, <i>f.</i> mother.
Of the father,	*Vater, <i>m.</i> father.
To the daughters,	*Tochter, <i>f.</i> daughter.
To the backs,	Rücken, <i>m.</i> back.
To the nails,	*Nagel, <i>m.</i> nail.
Of the mantles,	*Mantel, <i>m.</i> mantle.

Observations on this Declension.

1. Nouns of this declension are all masculine, or neuter, except *die Mutter*, the mother; *die Tochter*, the daughter.

2. They generally end in *el*, *er*, *en*, *lein*; but feminines ending in *el* or *er*, belong to the third declension. *Vide obs. 2, p. 15.*

(a) in (*el*,) as :

das Achtel, the eighth	der Hammel, the wether.
der Apfel, the apple.	der Haspel, the reel.
der Beutel, the purse,	der Himmel, (<i>the</i> *) heaven.
der Büffel, the buffalo.	der Hobel, the plane.
das Ferkel, the pig.	der Mantel, the cloak.
der Flügel, the wing.	der Pudel, the spaniel.
das Geflügel, the poultry.	der Schnabel, the beak or bill.
das Gemurmel, the murmur.	der Strudel, the whirlpool.
das Getümmel, the tumult.	der Tadel, (<i>the</i>) blame, &c.

(b) in (*er*,) as :

der Adler, the eagle.	der Gegner, the adversary.
das Alter, (<i>the</i>) age.	das Gelächter, laughter.
der Anker, the anchor.	das Gewitter, the storm.
der Becher, the goblet.	der Kaiser, the emperor.
der Donner, (<i>the</i>) thunder.	das Laster, (<i>the</i>) vice.
das Fieber, the fever.	das Opfer, the sacrifice.
der Fehler, the fault.	der Sommer, (<i>the</i>) summer.
der Finger, the finger.	der Zucker, sugar, &c.

* (*The*) is omitted in English before some words, when taken in a general sense; but (*the*) is used before the same words taken in a particular sense.

(c) in (en,) as:

der Balken, the beam,
 der Busen, the bosom.
 der Degen, the sword.
 das Eisen, the iron.
 der Felsen, the rock.

der Graben, the ditch.
 der Haken, the hook.
 der Knochen, the bone.
 der Schatten, the shade.
 das Verbrechen, the crime, &c.

All infinitives employed as substantives belong to this declension and are of the neuter gender; as,

das Lesen, reading. das Zeichnen, drawing, &c.

Among these may be reckoned such as are compounded with *seyn*; as,

das Bewußtseyn, consciousness. das Wohlseyn, welfare, &c.

(d) Diminutives in *chen*, and *lein*, as:

das Knäbchen, the little boy; from *der Knabe*, the boy.

das Söhnchen, the little son; from *der Sohn*, the son.

das Kindlein, the little child; from *das Kind*, the child.

These diminutives are much more frequent in German than in English, particularly in colloquial discourse; but in modern German, *klein*, little, is more used; as, *der kleine Knabe*, the little boy &c.

(e) Neuters and collectives in *e*; as,

das Gebirge, the mountains.

das Gemüse, (*the*) vegetables.

das Gedränge, the crowd.

das Getreide, (*the*) corn.

das Gebäude, buildings.

das Gewerbe, (*the*) trade, &c.

Some neuters in *a* of foreign extraction form their plural in *s*, as:

N. das Sofa, the sofa.

N. das Klima, the climate.

G. des Sofas, of the sofa.

G. des Klimas, of the climate.

Pl. die Sofas, the sofas.

Pl. die Klimas, the climates.

3. The following words of this declension, change the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, in the plural.

der Acker, the field.

der Hammel, the wether.

der Apfel, the apple.

das Kloster, the convent.

der Boden, the ground.

das Lager, the camp.

der Bogen, the arch.

der Mantel, the mantle.

der Bruder, the brother

der Nagel, the nail.

der Faden, the thread.

der Sattel, the saddle.

der Garten, the garden.

der Schnabel, the bill, or beak.

der Graben, the ditch.

der Vater, the father.

der Hafen, the haven.

der Vogel, the bird, &c.

SECOND DECLENSION.

In the second declension the genitive singular ends in *es*, the dative in *e*, and has *e* in all the cases plural, except the dative, which takes *en*; as,

Masculine.

*Sing.**Plural.*

N. der Baum, the tree.	N. die Bäume, the trees.
G. des Baumes, of the tree.	G. der Bäume, of the trees.
D. dem Baume, to the tree.	D. den Bäumen, to the trees.
A. den Baum, the tree.	A. die Bäume, the trees.

Neuter.

*Sing.**Plural.*

N. das Kreuz, the cross.	N. die Kreuze, the crosses.
G. des Kreuzes, of the cross.	G. der Kreuze, of the crosses.
D. dem Kreuze, to the cross.	D. den Kreuzen, to the crosses.
A. das Kreuz, the cross.	A. die Kreuze, the crosses.

So decline.

der *Korb, the basket.	der *Kamm, the comb.
der König, the king.	der *Kopf, the head.
der *Rock, the coat.	der Oheim, the uncle.
der *Stock, the stick.	das Gerücht, the report.
der Tag, the day.	das Haar, the hair.
der Arm, the arm.	das Paar, the pair.

Feminines, it should be remembered, do not change in the singular. (*Vide note p. 8.*); as,

*Sing.**Plural.*

N. die Wand, the wall.	N. die Wände, the walls.
G. der Wand, of the wall.	G. der Wände, of the walls.
D. der Wand, to the wall.	D. den Wänden, to the walls.
A. die Wand, the wall.	A. die Wände, the walls.

So decline the following feminines:

die *Stadt, the city.	die *Kuh, the cow.
die *Magd, the maid.	die *Kunst, the art.
die *Bank, the bench.	die *Gans, the goose.

Practice on the second Declension.

To the head,

Of the horse,

To the feet,

The frogs, (N.)

The hoofs, (A.)

The nut, (N.)

The nut, (A.)

*Kopf, m. head.

Pferd, n. horse.

*Fuß, m. foot.

*Frosch, m. frog.

Huf, m. hoof.

*Nuß, f. nut.

.....

The nets, (N.)	Netz, n. net.
The net,	.....
Of the button,	*Knopf, m. button.
To the measure,	Maß, n. measure.
The pounds, (A.)	Pfund, n. pound.
Of the passes,	*Paß, m. pass.
The mouse, (N.)	*Maus, f. mouse.
To the mice,	.....
The mice.	.....

Observations on the second Declension.

1. This declension ends in almost all the letters of the alphabet and comprehends all nouns, which are not expressly brought under the other declensions. The principal endings are b, d, f, g, h, k, l, m, n, s, t, v, and z; as,

der Dieb, the thief.	der Kampf, the combat.
der Fleck, the blot.	der Kapaun, the capon.
der Freund, the friend.	der Keim, the sprig.
die Frucht, the fruit.	die Kraft, the power.
der Gebrauch, the custom.	der Kreis, the circle.
das Gewächß, vegetables.	der Krieg, the war,
das Gewürm, vermin.	die Laufbahn, the career.
der Hecht, the pike.	der Muff, the muff.
das Heil, welfare.	

2. Some masculines of this declension change the vowels a, o and u into ä, ö and ü in the plural; as,

der Abt, the abbot.	der Pacht, the farm.
der Bart, the beard.	der Pflock, the plug.
der Bischof, the bishop.	der Pflug, the plough.
der Block, the block.	der Pfuhl, the pool.
der Bock, the buck.	der Sarg, the coffin.
der Brand, the fire.	der Schlag, the blow.
der Damm, the dam.	der Schluß, the conclusion.
der Diebstahl, the theft.	der Schooß, the lap.
der Duft, the exhalation.	der Schwan, the swan.
der Dunst, the vapour.	der Schlund, the gulf.
der Fall, the fall.	der Stab, the staff.
der Gesang, the song.	der Stamm, the trunk.
der Hahn, the cock.	der Storch, the stork.
der Kauf, the purchase.	der Sturm, the storm.
der Krug, the pitcher.	der Vorhang, the curtain.
der Lauf, the course.	der Wall, the rampart.
der Markt, the market.	der Wunsch, the wish.
der Mund, the mouth.	der Zaum, the bridle, &c.

So likewise the following foreign words :

der Altan, the balcony.	der Fiscal, the exchequer.
der Altar, the altar.	der Magistrat, the magistrate.
der Canal, the canal.	der Marschall, the marshal.
der Capellan, the chaplain.	der Pocal, the drinking cup.
der Cardinal, the cardinal.	der Propst, the provost.
der Chor, the choir.	das Tribunal, the tribunal, &c.

The following nouns do not change their vowels in the plural :

der Aal, the eel.	der Lachs, the salmon.
der Ahorn, the maple.	der Lauch, the leek.
der Amboss, the anvil.	der Laut, the sound.
der Anwalt, the attorney.	der Leichnam, the corpse.
der Ballast, the ballast.	der Luchs, the lynx.
der Bau, the building.	der Mittag, the noon.
der Dachs, the badger.	der Pfad, the path.
der Dolch, the dagger.	der Port, the port.
der Falz, the fold.	der Schuh, the shoe.
der Flachs, the flax.	der Stoff, the stuff.
der Gemahl, the spouse.	der Strauß, the ostrich.
der Halm, the stubble.	der Trunkenbold, the drunkard.
der Harnisch, the harness.	der Zoll, the inch.
der Hauch, the breath.	but der Zoll, the toll, makes die
der Kalk, the lime.	Zölle, in the plural.

3. All feminines change their vowels but none of the neuters, except :

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
das Arsenal, the arsenal.	die Arsenale, the arsenals.
das Chor, the choir.	die Chöre, the choirs.
das Floß, the float or raft.	die Flöße, the floats or rafts.

THIRD DECLENSION.

In this declension all the cases of both numbers, end in en, except the nominative singular ; but those ending in e, el, or er, take n instead of en, as :

Masculine.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. der Fürst, the prince.	N. die Fürsten, the princes.
G. des Fürsten, of the prince.	G. der Fürsten, of the princes.
D. dem Fürsten, to the prince.	D. den Fürsten, to the princes.
A. den Fürsten, the prince.	A. die Fürsten, the princes.

Masculine.

Sing.

N. der Knabe, the boy.
 G. des Knaben, of the boy.
 D. dem Knaben, to the boy.
 A. den Knaben, the boy.

Plural.

N. die Knaben, the boys.
 G. der Knaben, of the boys.
 D. den Knaben, to the boys.
 A. die Knaben, the boys.

So decline.

der Soldat, the soldier.	der Neffe, the nephew.
der Komödiant, the player.	der Tyrann, the tyrant.
der Student, the student.	der Held, the hero.
der Zeuge, the witness.	der Prinz, the prince.
der Affe, the monkey, or ape.	der Hase, the hare.

The feminines of this declension are unchangeable in the singular, as in the preceding declensions.

Feminine.

Sing.

N. die Freiheit, the liberty.
 G. der Freiheit, of the liberty.
 D. der Freiheit, to the liberty.
 A. die Freiheit, the liberty.

Plural.

die Freiheiten, the liberties.
 der Freiheiten, of the liberties.
 den Freiheiten, to the liberties.
 die Freiheiten, the liberties.

So decline.

die Kirche, the church.	die Last, the burden.
die Gegend, the country.	die Kugel, the ball.
die Königin, the queen.	die Zeit, the time.

Practice on the third Declension.

To the poet,
 Of the heroes,
 The writings, (N.)
 The writing, (A.)
 To the ball,
 Of the master,
 To the count,
 The world,
 Of the tyrants,
 Of the burden,
 To the sister,
 Of the men,
 Of the intentions,
 Of the prince,
 To the princes,
 Of the churches,

Poet, *m.* poet.
 Held, *m.* hero.
 Schrift, *f.* writing.

 Kugel, *f.* ball.
 Herr, *m.* master.
 Graf, *m.* count.
 Welt, *f.* world.
 Tyrann, *m.* tyrant.
 Last, *f.* burden.
 Schwester, *f.* sister.
 Mensch, *m.* man.
 Absicht, *f.* intention.
 Fürst, *m.* prince.

 Kirche, *f.* church.

Observations on the third Declension.

(a) Most masculines in *e* belong to this declension, as :

der Affe, the ape.	der Funke, the spark.
der Böhme, the Bohemian.	der Hase, the hare.
der Britte, the Briton.	der Junge, the boy or lad.
der Celte, the Celt.	der Slave, the slave.
der Erbe, the heir.	der Zeuge, the witness, &c.

(b) The names of people according to their country, profession, character and the like, as :

der Advocat, the lawyer.	der Israelit, the Israelite.
der Bayer, the Bavarian.	der Monarch, the monarch.
der Christ, the Christian.	der Mohr, the Moor.
der Franzose, the Frenchman.	der Student, the student.
der Geck, the fop.	der Tartar, the Tartar.
der Gesell, the mate.	der Thor, the fool, &c.
der Hagestolz, the old bachelor.	

The feminines of this declension are :

(a) Nouns ending in *e, el, er*, except *die Mutter*, and *die Tochter*, which are of the first declension, as :

die Ader, the vein.	die Gabel, the fork.
die Ameise, the ant.	die Insel, the island.
die Amsel, the blackbird.	die Kammer, the chamber.
die Bibel, the bible.	die Kugel, the ball.
die Biene, the bee.	die Leber, the liver.
die Blume, the flower.	die Leyer, the lyre.
die Fabel, the fable.	die Mauer, the wall, &c.

(b) Nouns ending in *heit, feit, schaft, ung, inn*, and *ei* or *ey*, as :

die Beleidigung, the offence.	die Gutthäterinn, the benefactress.
die Fischerei, the fishery.	die Herrlichkeit, the splendor.
die Freiheit, the freedom.	die Herrschaft, the lordship, &c.

(c) Nouns ending in *ath, end, st, cht, ld, n*, &c. as :

die Birn, the pear.	die Last, the burden.
die Gegend, the country.	die List, the artifice.
die Heirath, the marriage.	die Pflicht, the duty.
die Tugend, the virtue, &c.	

3. Nouns ending in *e, el, er*, take only *n*, as : *der Bothe, the messenger* ; (*G.*) *Bothen* ; (*Pl.*) *Bothen* ; *die Schulter, the shoulder* ; (*Pl.*) *Schultern*.

4. The following nouns take *ens, or ns*, instead of *en*, in the genitive singular, but those ending in *n*, take *s* only.

der Buchstab, the letter.
 der Friede, (*the*) peace.
 der Funke, the spark.
 der Gedanke, the thought.
 der Haufen, the heap.
 das Herz, the heart.

der Karpfen, the carp.
 der Name, the name.
 der Same, the seed.
 der Schade, the mischief.
 der Schmerz, the pain.
 der Wille, the will.

Making the genitive *des Buchstabens, des Friedens, &c.* All these words (except *das Herz*) originally had *en* in the nominative, and belonged to the first declension, in which way they may still be used; *das Herz, the heart*, being neuter, is the same in the accusative as the nominative, that is, *das Herz*, not *Herzen*. These nouns may likewise take *n* in the nominative, and fall under the first declension, as, *der Frieden, der Funken, &c.*

FOURTH DECLENSION.

The fourth declension makes the genitive singular in *es*, or *s*, the dative in *e*, and all the cases in the plural in *en*, or *n*, as :

Neuter.

Sing.

N. das Ohr, the ear.
 G. des Ohres, of the ear.
 D. dem Ohre, to the ear.
 A. das Ohr, the ear.

Plural.

N. die Ohren, the ears.
 G. der Ohren, of the ears.
 D. den Ohren, to the ears.
 A. die Ohren, the ears.

So decline.

das Bett, the bed.
 der Daum, the thumb.
 der Dorn, the thorn.

das Hemd, the shirt.
 der Pfau, the peacock.
 das Gliedmaß, the limb.

Practice on the fourth Declension.

Of the ear,
 To the thrones,
 To the peacock,
 The eyes,
 To the eye,
 Of the neighbour,
 Of the state,
 The states, (*N.*)
 The state, (*A.*)
 Of the bed,
 To the beds,
 The beds, (*A.*)
 To the bed,

Ohr, *n.* ear.
 Thron, *m.* throne.
 Pfau, *m.* peacock.
 Auge, *n.* eye.

 Nachbar, *m.* neighbour.
 Staat, *m.* state.

 Bett, *n.* bed.

Of the subject,
To the subjects,
To the ornament,
To the ornaments,
To the shirt,

Unterthan, *m.* subject.
.....
Zierath, *m.* ornament.
.....
Hemd, *n.* shirt.

Observations on the fourth Declension.

1. Of this declension are likewise, *der Psalm, the psalm*; *der Sporn, the spur*; *der Strahl, the ray*; and some foreign words, as :

<i>der Aspect, the aspect.</i>	<i>der Impost, the impost.</i>
<i>der Affect, the passion.</i>	<i>das Insect, the insect.</i>
<i>der Diamant, the diamond.</i>	<i>der Rubin, the ruby.</i>
<i>das Epigramm, the epigram.</i>	<i>der Ruin, the ruin, decay, &c.</i>

2. Those nouns taking *s* in the genitive, having the dative unaltered, and taking *n* in the plural, are, *der Bauer, the peasant*; (*G.*) *des Bauers*, (*D.*) *dem Bauer*; (*Pl.*) *die Bauern*, so the following :

* <i>das Auge, the eye.</i>	<i>der Pantoffel, the slipper.</i>
<i>das Ende, the end,</i>	<i>der Stachel, the sting.</i>
<i>der Gevatter, the godfather.</i>	<i>der Stiefel, the boot.</i>
<i>der Hader, the quarrel.</i>	<i>der Better, the cousin.</i>
<i>der Nachbar, the neighbour, and some foreign words, viz.:</i>	
<i>der Barbar, the barbarian.</i>	<i>der Muskel, the muscle.</i>
<i>der Doctor, the doctor.</i>	<i>der Satir, the satire.</i>
<i>der Pastor, the pastor.</i>	<i>der Tartar, the Tartar, &c.</i>

FIFTH DECLENSION.

The fifth declension takes *es* in the genitive, *e* in the dative singular, and *er* in all the cases of the plural, except the dative, which takes *ern*, as :

Sing.

Plural.

<i>N. der Leib, the body.</i>	<i>N. die Leiber, the bodies.</i>
<i>G. des Leibes, of the body.</i>	<i>G. der Leiber, of the bodies.</i>
<i>D. dem Leibe, to the body.</i>	<i>D. den Leibern, to the bodies.</i>
<i>A. den Leib, the body.</i>	<i>A. die Leiber, the bodies.</i>

* Some neuters ending in *e*, are of this declension.

So decline.

der Geist, the spirit.
 der *Ort, the place.
 das *Buch, the book.
 das *Blatt, the leaf.

der *Mann, the man.
 das *Land, the country.
 das *Amt, the office.
 das Bild, the picture.

Practice on the fifth Declension.

To the houses,
 Of the woods,
 The images, (N.)
 The villages, (A.)
 The glasses, (N.)
 To the glass,
 The monies,
 The hens,
 Of the houses,
 To the house,
 To the village,
 The woods, (A.)
 To the woods,
 To the books,
 The books, (A.)
 The glass, (A.)

*Haus, n. house.
 *Wald, n. wood.
 Bild, n. image.
 *Dorf, n. village.
 *Glas, n. glass.

 Geld, n. money.
 *Huhn, n. hen.
 *Haus, n. house.

 *Dorf, n. village.
 *Wald, n. wood or forest.

 *Buch, n. book.

 *Glas, n. glass.

Observations on the fifth Declension.

1. All nouns of this declension, having a, o, or u, in them, change those vowels into â, ô, and û, in the plural. This declension contains some few masculines, but mostly neuters. The masculines are:

der Geist, the spirit.
 der Gott, the God.
 der Irrthum, the error.
 der Leib, the body.
 der Ort, the place.
 der Mann, the man.

der Rand, the border.
 der Reichthum, the riches.
 der Vormund, the guardian.
 der Wald, the wood.
 der Wurm, the worm.

Obs. der Bösewicht, the villain, is also of the 2nd declension.

The neuters are

das Kar, the carrion, (pl. die Lefer.)
 das Amt, the office.
 das Bad, the bath.
 das Band, the ribbon.
 das Bild, the picture.
 das Blatt, the leaf.

das Kalb, the calf.
 das Kind, the child.
 das Kleid, the coat.
 das Korn, the grain.
 das Kraut, the herb.
 das Lamm, the lamb.

das Brett, the board.	das Land, the country.
das Buch, the book.	das Licht, the light.
das Dach, the roof.	das Lied, the song.
das Ding, the thing.	das Loch, the hole.
das Dorf, the village.	das Mahl, the meal.
das Ey or Ei, the egg.	das Maul, the mouth.
das Fach, the shelf.	das Nest, the nest.
das Faß, the barrel.	das Pfand, the pledge.
das Feld, the field.	das Rad, the wheel.
das Geld, the money.	das Reis, the rice.
das Gemach, the apartment.	das Rind, the cattle.
das Gemüth, the mind.	das Schloß, the castle.
das Glas, the glass.	das Schwert, the sword.
das Glied, the limb.	das Stift, the foundation.
das Grab, the grave.	das Stift, is also of the 2d declen.
das Gras, the grass.	das Thal, the valley.
das Gut, the estate.	das Trümmer, the wreck.
das Haupt, the head.	das Tuch, the cloth.
das Haus, the house.	das Volk, the people.
das Holz, the wood.	das Wammes, the waistcoat.
das Horn, the horn.	das Weib, the woman.
das Huhn, the hen.	das Wort, the word, and most
foreign names, as, das Hospital, oder Spital, <i>the hospital</i> ; das	
Parlament, <i>the parliament</i> ; das Regiment, <i>the regiment</i> , &c.	

2. The following nouns are of the fifth declension, when taken distributively, and of the second, when taken collectively, as :

Distributively.

das Band, the ribbon.	die Bänder, the ribbons.
der Dorn, the thorn.	die Dörner, the thorns.
das Horn, the horn.	die Hörner, the horns.
das Land, the country.	die Länder, the countries.
das Mahl, the meal.	die Mähler, the meals.
der Ort, the place.	die Orter, the places.
das Tuch, the cloth.	die Tücher, the linens.
das Wort, the word.	die Wörter, the words.

Collectively.

die Bande, the bonds or fetters.
die Dorne, thorns.
die Horne, different sorts of horns.
die Lande, lands.
die Mahle, times.
die Orte, places.
die Tuche, cloths.
die Worte, words, and some few others.

§ II. Declension of Proper Names.

1. Proper names in general take *s* in the genitive, and *en* or *n* in the other cases, as :

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
N. Gottfried, Godfrey.	N. Hannibal, Hannibal.
G. Gottfrieds, of Godfrey.	G. Hannibals, of Hannibal.
D. Gottfrieden, to Godfrey.	D. Hannibaln, to Hannibal.
A. Gottfrieden, Godfrey.	A. Hannibaln, Hannibal.

To the latter mode of declining, belong all nouns ending in *al*, *el*, *il*, *er*, and *or*, except those which have the accent on the ending, as, Virgil, Valer, &c.

If ever a plural be required, the first class takes only *e* in all cases, as, (N.) Gottfriede, &c. the latter class takes only *n* in the dative, as, (D.) Hannibaln.

* 2. Proper names ending in *s*, *sch*, *e*, *a*, *ft*, *r*, and *z*, take *ens*, or *ns*, in the genitive, instead of *s*, and *en* or *n*, in the other cases, singular and plural ; but if the word ends in *a*, it is dropped in the oblique cases. Examples :

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
N. Franz, Francis.	N. Minerva, Minerva.
G. Franzens, of Francis.	G. Minervens, of Minerva.
D. Franzén, to Francis.	D. Minerven, to Minerva.
A. Franzén, Francis.	A. Minerven, Minerva.

So decline, Leibniz, Flora, August, Penelope, Helena, Jehova, &c.

3. Some proper names take simply *s* in the genitive singular, and *e* in the plural as before observed, as :

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
N. Böhmen, Bohemia.	N. Rom, Rome.
G. Böhmens, of Bohemia.	G. Roms, of Rome.
D. Böhmen, to Bohemia.	D. zu, in, nach Rom, at, in, or to Rome.
A. Böhmen, Bohemia.	A. Rom, Rome.

So decline Schweden, Sweden ; Indien, India ; London, &c. and all names of countries, cities, towns, villages, and the

* N.B.—It is the opinion of Adelung, that the English mode of declining proper names would be preferable, which is sometimes adopted. Ex. Jehova's, of Jehovah, instead of Jehovens, &c.

like, as well as most persons' names, &c. so Baumgarten, Abraham, Adam, Cicero, Cato, Xenophon, Josua, Noah, &c. but when proper names are declined with the article, they do not change their terminations.* Examples :

Masculines.

Sing.

Sing.

N. der Salomo, Solomon.	N. der Virgil, Virgil.
G. des Salomo, of Solomon.	G. des Virgil, of Virgil.
D. dem Salomo, to Solomon.	D. dem Virgil, to Virgil.
A. den Salomo, Solomon.	A. den Virgil, Virgil.

Feminine.

Sing.

N. die Flora, Flora.
G. der Flora, of Flora.
D. der Flora, to Flora.
A. die Flora, Flora.

Observations on the Declension of Proper Names.

1. Proper names may be declined three ways in German.

(a) By means of the article, without any change in the noun, as: *die Weisheit des Salomo, the wisdom of Solomon.* Vide the declension of *der Salomo*, &c.

(b) After the Latin manner, as: *das Leiden Christi, the sufferings of Christ; die Geburt Maria, the birth of (the virgin) Mary.*

(c) After the German manner, as: *Ciceros Briefe, Cicero's letters.*

2. Many Latin and Greek names drop their original endings in German, though not in English, as :

<i>English.</i>	<i>German.</i>	<i>English.</i>	<i>German.</i>
Augustus,	August.	Socrates,	Socrat.
Lycurgus,	Lycurg.	Diogenes,	Diogen.
Tibullus,	Tibull.	Hippocrates,	Hippocrat.
Epicurus,	Epicur.	Achilles,	Achill.
Democritus.	Democrit.	Propertius.	Properz.
Aristarchus,	Aristarch, &c		

But Dominicus, Erasmus, Irenius, Cornelius, Demetrius, Eugenius, Aristoteles, Alcibiades, Anchises and others, retain their endings in German, although not always in English; these words are mostly declined in the Latin form, which is best suited to the grave style. Modern names on the contrary, are commonly declined after the German manner.

* However this mode of declining is not so general as the preceding.

§ III. *Observations on the Plural of Nouns.*

1. There are many nouns which in German and English admit of but one number, having either no singular or no plural. Some of these are the same in both languages, others are different: but generally those nouns which are used only in the singular in English have the same restrictions in German, as:

das Gold, gold.

das Elfenbein, ivory.

das Silber, silver.

die Erde, earth.

das Eisen, iron.

der Staub, dust.

das Kupfer, copper.

das Holz, wood;

and most general and abstract nouns, as: der Ruhm, *glory*,
das Vieh, *cattle*, &c.

Of some, the plural may be used to denote the different kinds, as: die Kupfer, *coppers*, die Erden, *earths*, &c.

2. The following words admit of the plural in English, but not in German, as:

*der Dank, thanks.

der Tod, death.

der Rath, counsel.

das Ende, the end, or conclusion.

der Verstand, the understanding.

der Empfang, the receipt.

der Lohn, the reward.

der Mund, the mouth.

der Kummer, sorrow.

der Sand, sand.

der Jammer, affliction.

die Gunst, favour.

der Mord, murder.

die Liebe, (*the*) love.

der Zwang, constraint.

die Furcht, fear.

das Leben, life.

das Lob, praise.

The following may sometimes be used in the plural.

das Unglück, the misfortune.

der Anfang, the beginning.

der Zank, the quarrel.

der Unterricht, instruction.

die Flucht, the flight, escape.

der Genuß, the enjoyment, &c.

3. The following words have no singular.

die Gefälle, the taxes.

die Weihnachten, Christmas.

die Einkünfte, the revenue.

die Ostern, Easter.

die Aeltern, the parents.

die Pfingsten, Whitsuntide.

die Leute, the people.

die Gebrüder, the brothers, &c.

die Waffen, the arms.

4. Those words which express quantity, weight or measure, are seldom used in the plural, even though a numeral adjective precede them, as:

* If the plural be required it must be supplied by another word, as; der Dank, Pl. die Dankfagungen, from die Dankfagung; der Rath, the counsel, Pl. die Rathversammlungen, from die Rathversammlung, &c.

zehn Acker, (not Aecker) Land, ten acres of land.
 vier Buch (not Bücher) Papier, four quires of paper.
 hundert Fuß (not Füße) hoch, a hundred feet high.
 zwanzig Duzend Wein, twenty dozens of wine.
 vier Pfund Zucker, four pounds of sugar, &c.

The following are exceptions to this rule :

drei paar Schuhe, three pair of shoes.
 ein paar Tage, a few days, &c.,—So
 die Elle, the ell; die Meile, the mile, and some few others
 which must be learnt by practice.

Promiscuous Practice on all the preceding Declensions,

With the German words in alphabetical order, serving not only as a useful vocabulary, but possessing the advantage of having the gender and declension marked, the former by the letters, *m. f. n.* and the latter by the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5.

Of the eels,	Aal, <i>m.</i> 2. eel.
To the carrion,	*Aas, <i>n.</i> 5. carrion.
The evening,	Abend, <i>m.</i> 2. evening.
To the abbots,	*Abt, <i>m.</i> 2. abbot.
Of the field or acre,	*Acker, <i>m.</i> 1. field or acre.
Of the fields,	.....
The shoulders,	Achsel, <i>f.</i> 3. shoulder.
Of the nobility,	Adel, <i>m.</i> 1. nobility.
To the ape,	Affe, <i>m.</i> 3. ape.
To the apes,	.....
Of the altars,	*Altar, <i>m.</i> 2. altar.
To the age,	Alter, <i>m.</i> 1. age.
Of the antiquities,	*Alterthum, <i>n.</i> 5. antiquity.
To the blackbirds,	Amsel, <i>f.</i> 3. blackbird.
The offices, (<i>A.</i>)	*Amt, <i>n.</i> 5. office.
The ants, (<i>A.</i>)	Ameise, <i>f.</i> 3. ant.
The nurses, (<i>A.</i>)	Amme, <i>f.</i> 3. nurse.
Of the devotion,	Andacht, <i>f.</i> 3. devotion.
The preparations,	Anstalt, <i>f.</i> 3. preparation.
To the replies,	Antwort, <i>f.</i> 3. reply.
Of the labors,	Arbeit, <i>f.</i> 3. labor.
To the eyes,	Auge, <i>n.</i> 4. eye.
Of the oyster,	Auster, <i>f.</i> 3. oyster.
The brooks,	*Bach, <i>m.</i> 2. brook.
The path,	Bahn, <i>f.</i> 3. path.

Of the ball,
 To the ribbons,
 To the ideas,
 Of the mountains,
 To the bed,
 To the beds,
 Of the proofs,
 To the pictures,
 Of the pears,
 Of the flowers,
 To the letters,
 The breasts,
 To the books,
 The books,
 To the canals,
 To the cardinals,
 To the roofs,
 Of the badgers,
 The dikes,
 To the thumbs,
 Of the swords,
 To the poets,
 To the villages,
 To the heirs,
 The eggs, (*N. and A.*)
 To the fables,
 Of the threads,
 Of the barrels,
 To the fists,
 Of the enemies,
 To the fields,
 Of the rocks,
 To the fetters,
 To the fleas,
 Of the plains,
 To the rivers,
 The wives,
 To the feet,
 The forks,
 The geese,
 To the guest,
 The prayers,

*Ball, *m.* 2. ball.
 *Band, *n.* 5. ribbon.
 Begriff, *m.* 2. idea.
 Berg, *m.* 2. mountain.
 Bett, *n.* 4. bed.

 Beweis, *m.* 2. proof.
 Bild, *n.* 5. picture.
 Birn, *f.* 3. pear.
 Blume, *f.* 3. flower.
 Brief, *m.* 2. letter.
 *Brust, *f.* 2. breast.
 *Buch, *n.* 5. book.

 *Canal, *m.* 2. canal.
 *Cardinal, *m.* 2. cardinal.
 *Dach, *n.* 5. roof.
 *Dachs, *m.* 2. badger.
 *Damm, *m.* 2. dike.
 Daumen, *m.* 1. thumb.
 Degen, *m.* 1. sword.
 Dichter, *m.* 1. poet.
 *Dorf, *n.* 5. village.
 Erbe, *m.* 3. heir.
 Ei, *n.* 5. egg.
 Fabel, *f.* 3. fable.
 *Faden, *m.* 1. thread.
 *Faß, *n.* 5. barrel.
 *Faust, *f.* 2. fist.
 Feind, *m.* 2. enemy.
 Feld, *n.* 5. field.
 Fels, *m.* 3. rock.
 Fessel, *f.* 3. fetter.
 *Floh, *m.* 2. flea.
 Flur, *f.* 3. plain.
 *Fluß, *m.* 2. river.
 Frau, *f.* 3. wife.
 *Fuß, *m.* 2. foot.
 Gabel, *f.* 3. fork.
 *Gans, *f.* 2. goose.
 *Gast, *m.* 2. guest.
 Gebet, *n.* 2. prayer.

Of the dangers,	Gefahr, <i>f.</i> 3. danger.
The countries,	Gegend, <i>f.</i> 3. country.
The spirits,	Geist, <i>m.</i> 5. spirit.
Of the money,	Geld, <i>n.</i> 5. money.
The ghosts,	Gespensst, <i>n.</i> 5. ghost.
To the conversation.	Gespräch, <i>n.</i> 2. conversation.
To the limbs.	Glied, <i>n.</i> 5. limb.
The Gods (<i>N.</i> and <i>A.</i>)	*Gott, <i>m.</i> 5. God.
The graves,	*Grab, <i>n.</i> 5. grave.
Of the count,	Graf, <i>m.</i> 3. count.
The property,	*Gut, <i>n.</i> 5. property.
The cock,	*Hahn, <i>m.</i> 2. cock.
Of the hands,	*Hand, <i>f.</i> 2. hand.
The towels,	*Handtuch, <i>n.</i> 5. towel.
Of the skins,	*Haut, <i>f.</i> 2. skin.
Of the heroes,	Held, <i>m.</i> 3. hero.
Of the master,	Herr, <i>m.</i> 3. master.
To the wood,	*Holz, <i>n.</i> 5. wood.
To the fowl,	*Huhn, <i>n.</i> 5. fowl.
Of the hats,	*Hut, <i>m.</i> 2. hat.
To the year,	Jahr, <i>n.</i> 2. year.
Of the islands,	Insel, <i>f.</i> 3. island.
Of the Jew,	Jude, <i>m.</i> 3. Jew.
Of the boy,	Junge, <i>m.</i> 3. boy.
To the calves,	*Kalb, <i>n.</i> 5. calf.
To the children,	Kind, <i>n.</i> 5. child.
Of the churches,	Kirche, <i>f.</i> 3. church.
To the coats,	Kleid, <i>n.</i> 5. coat.
The cloisters,	*Kloster, <i>n.</i> 1. cloister.
Of the buttons,	*Knopf, <i>m.</i> 2. button.
To the heads,	*Kopf, <i>m.</i> 2. head.
Of the salmon,	Lachs, <i>m.</i> 2. salmon.
To the countries,	*Land, <i>n.</i> 5. country.
Of the burdens,	Last, <i>f.</i> 3. burden.
To the holes,	*Loch, <i>n.</i> 5. hole.
Of the maids,	*Magd, <i>f.</i> 2. maid.
To the almonds,	Mandel, <i>f.</i> 3. almond.
Of the mice,	*Maus, <i>f.</i> 2. mouse.
Of the mothers,	*Mutter, <i>f.</i> 1. mother.
To the nightingales,	Nachtigall, <i>f.</i> 3. nightingale.
Of the fools,	Narr, <i>m.</i> 3. fool.
The nuts. (<i>A.</i>)	*Nuß, <i>f.</i> 2. nut.

Of the places,	*Ort, <i>m.</i> 5. place.
To the popes,	*Papst, <i>m.</i> 2. pope.
Of the path,	Pfad, <i>m.</i> 2. path.
The plants,	Pflanze, <i>f.</i> 3. plant.
Of the jaw,	Kachen, <i>m.</i> 1. jaw.
The borders,	*Rand, <i>m.</i> 5. border.
Of the ranks,	*Rang, <i>m.</i> 2. rank.
The spaces, (<i>A.</i>)	*Raum, <i>m.</i> 2. space.
The riches, (<i>N.</i>)	*Reichthum, <i>m.</i> 5. riches.
To the judge,	Richter, <i>m.</i> 1. judge.
To the juices,	*Saft, <i>m.</i> 2. juice.
The troop,	Schaar, <i>f.</i> 3. troop.
Of the shadow,	Schatten, <i>m.</i> 1. shadow.
The treasures,	*Schatz, <i>m.</i> 2. treasure.
To the ships,	Schiff, <i>n.</i> 2. ship.
The shields,	Schild, <i>n.</i> 5. shield.
To the serpents,	Schlange, <i>f.</i> 3. serpent.
The castles,	*Schloß, <i>n.</i> 5. castle.
The debts,	Schuld, <i>f.</i> 3. debt.
The swallows,	Schwalbe, <i>f.</i> 3. swallow.
Of the soldier,	Soldat, <i>m.</i> 3. soldier.
Of the looking-glass,	Spiegel, <i>m.</i> 1. looking-glass.
The storks,	*Storch, <i>m.</i> 2. stork.
The stockings,	*Strumpf, <i>m.</i> 2. stocking.
Of the actions,	That, <i>f.</i> 3. action,
To the daughters,	*Tochter, <i>f.</i> 1. daughter.
To the dreams,	*Traum, <i>m.</i> 2. dream.
The cloths,	*Tuch, <i>n.</i> 5. cloth.
Of the virtues,	Tugend, <i>f.</i> 3. virtue.
The nations,	*Volk, <i>n.</i> 5. nation.
Of the watches,	Uhr, <i>f.</i> 3. watch.
To the woods,	*Wald, <i>m.</i> 5. wood or forest.
Of the walls,	*Wand, <i>f.</i> 2. wall.
Of the women,	Weib, <i>n.</i> 5. woman.
Of the worlds,	Welt, <i>f.</i> 3. world.
Of the wind,	Wind, <i>m.</i> 2. wind.
The wishes,	*Wunsch, <i>m.</i> 2. wish.
The worms,	*Wurm, <i>m.</i> 2. 5. worm.
Of the numbers,	Zahl, <i>f.</i> 5. number.
To the tooth,	*Zahn, <i>m.</i> 2. tooth.
To the times,	Zeit, <i>f.</i> 3. time.
To the tents,	Zelt, <i>n.</i> 2. tent.

Of the circle,
The tolls,
The aims,
The onions,

Kreis, m. 1. circle.
*Zoll, m. 2. toll.
Zweck, m. 2. aim.
Zwiebel, f. 3. onion.

§ IV. Observations on the Formation of Nouns.

Many German nouns are derived from other words by the help of certain syllables called affixes, which it is of importance for a learner to know, in order to be able to understand the rules for the gender and declension. The following are the principal endings.

1. *-chen* and *-lein*, are syllables by which diminutives are formed, as: *das Söhnchen, the little son*, from *der Sohn, the son*; *das Männchen, the little man*, from *der Mann, the man*; *das Kindlein, the babe*, from *das Kind, the child*.

2. *-er* denotes persons of the male sex, as: *der Bettler, the beggar* from *betteln, to beg*; *der Gärtner, the gardener*, from *der Garten, the garden*.

3. *-inn* or *-in* denotes persons of the female sex, as: *die Fürstin, the princess*, from *der Fürst, the prince*; *die Königin, the queen*, from *der König, the king*.

4. *-e*, *-heit*, *-keit*, *-schaft*, *-thum*, denote abstract qualities, as; *die Größe, the greatness*, from *groß, great*; *die Kindheit, the childhood*, from *das Kind, the child*; *die Dankbarkeit, the thankfulness*, from *dankbar, thankful*; *die Bekanntschaft, the acquaintance*, from *bekannt, known*; *das Alterthum, antiquity*, from *alt, old*.

§ V. General Observations on the Declension of Nouns.

The German nouns have caused much perplexity to Grammarians in the arrangement of the declensions, owing to the terminations being so singularly varied, that those nouns which agree in the singular, differ in the plural, and consequently admit of different classifications. Adelung and several other German Grammarians have made eight declensions, others have made four, five, &c, and some only one declension. The number five which I have adopted, is probably best adapted for practice. The learner may however be benefitted by a careful perusal of the following observations.

1. The declension of nouns is determined by the ending of the genitive singular and nominative plural: the former being principally in *-s*, or *-es*; *-n*, or *-en*, the latter either unchangeable or taking *-e*, *-n*, *-en* or *-er*.

2. The genitive singular of four declensions out of the five

is in *ß* or *eß* ; and those which have *eß* take *e* in the dative. The third declension takes *en* or *n* in all cases except the nominative singular.

3. All feminines are unchangeable in the singular and are of the second and third declensions.

4. The principal part of the nouns, of all genders, falls under the second and third declensions particularly the second.

5. Some nouns differ in their declension according to their signification, as :

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
der Band, the volume or binding.	die Bände, the volumes.
das Band, the ribbon.	die Bänder, the ribbons.
das Band, the band, fetter.	die Bande, the bands, fetters.
die Banke, the bench.	die Bänke, the benches.
die Bank, the bank.	die Banken, the banks.
der Bär, the bear.	die Bären, the bears.
der Bär, the bar or dam.	die Bäre, the bars or dams.
der Bauer, the peasant.	die Bauern, the peasants.
das Bauer, the cage.	die Bauer, the cages.
der Bogen, the sheet of paper.	die Bogen, the sheets of paper.
der Bogen, the bow.	die Bögen, the bows.
das Gesicht, the vision.	die Gesichte, the visions.
das Gesicht, the face.	die Gesichter, the faces.
der Laden, the shutter.	die Laden, the shutters.
der Laden, the shop.	die Läden, the shops.
der Mensch, man.	die Menschen, men.
das Mensch, the wench.	die Menschen, the wenches.
der Schild, the shield.	die Schilde, the shields.
das Schild, the sign.	die Schilder, the signs.
der Strauß, the ostrich.	die Straußen, the ostriches.
der Strauß, the nosegay.	die Sträuße, the nosegays.
der Thor, the fool.	die Thoren, the fools.
das Thor, the gate.	die Thore, the gates.

§ VI. Observations on the Gender of Nouns.

The genders of nouns in German are masculine, feminine or neuter.

As a general remark it may be observed, that those nouns which express strength, vigour, energy or activity, are masculine.

If they express what is soft, agreeable, pleasant or tender, they are feminine.

If they do not express any of these things, they are neuter. But neither this general rule, nor any other rules, will be suf-

ficient to distinguish the gender of nouns; yet it may not be improper to make a few remarks on this subject.

1. Of the masculine gender are .

a. All proper names of male persons, gods, angels, and spirits, as well as all names expressing any office, dignity, quality, station, or implements used by mechanics, &c, as :

der Löwe, the lion,	a male animal.
der Vater, the father,	a male person.
der König, the king,	the office of a male.
der Bürger, the citizen,	a male relation.
der Mahler, the painter,	the employment of a male.
der Hammer, the hammer,	an instrument for males.
der Raub, (<i>the</i>) robbery,	a quality denoting strength.
der Grimm, (<i>the</i>) wrath,	a quality denoting strength.
der Knabe, the boy,	a male relation.

Except

das Messer, the knife,	das Ruder, the oar,
die Leiter, the ladder, &c.	

And all diminutives, as: das Söhnchen, the little son; das Männchen, the little man, &c.

b. The names of stones, winds, trees, mountains, fishes, birds,* seasons,† months, days, &c. as :

der Diamant, the diamond.	der Regen, the rain.
der Ost, the east.	der May or Mai, May.
der Ostwind, the eastwind.	der Lachs, the salmon.
der Sommer, the summer.	der Baum, the tree.
der Sonntag, the sunday.	

c. Most nouns ending in en, as :

der Boden, the bottom.	der Magen, the stomach.
der Hafen, the harbour.	der Degen, the sword.

Except all infinitives when used as nouns, which are neuter, as: das Lesen, the reading, das Sehen, the seeing, &c. with some few other nouns, as :

das Almosen, the alms.	das Kissen, the cushion.
das Becken, the bason.	das Lehen, the fee.
das Eisen, the iron.	das Wappen, the coat of arms.
das Füllen, the foal.	das Zeichen, the sign or signal.

* Except die Wachtel, the quail, die Amsel, the blackbird, die Elster, the magpie.

† Das Jahr, the year.

2. Of the feminine gender are :

a. The names of female persons, and female animals, as well as names expressing the dignities, relations, qualities, functions, and implements of art peculiar to the female sex, as :

die Dichterinn, the poetess,	a female poet.
die Frau, the wife,	a female relation.
die Kaiserinn, the empress,	a female's dignity.
die Mutter, the mother,	a female relation.
die Nadel, the needle,	a female's implement of art.
die Sau, the sow,	a female animal.

Except

Frauenzimmer, the lady.	das Weib, the woman.
das Mensch, the wench.	das Weibsbild, the female person.
das Mädchen, the girl.	

b. The names of rivers are feminine, as :

die Oder, the Oder.	die Elbe, the Elbe, &c.
---------------------	-------------------------

Except

der Rhein, the Rhine.	der Nil, the Nile.
der Mann, the Maine.	der Jordan, the Jordan.
der Lech, the Lech.	der Euphrat, the Euphrates.
der Neckar, the Necker.	der Po, the Po.

c. The names of flowers, fruits, vegetables, &c. as :

die Nuß, the nut.	die Eichel, the acorn.
die Pflaume, the plum.	die Nelke, the gillyflower.
die Birn, the pear.	die Rose, the rose.

Except

der Apfel, the apple.	der Salat, the sallad.
das Kraut, the herb.	der Kohl, the cabbage.
der Rettich, the raddish.	der Spinat, the spinage.

3. Of the Neuter gender are :

a. The names of countries, towns, and villages, as : England London, Kingsland, &c.

Except

die Turken (or Turkei,) Turkey.	
die Wallachen (or Wallachei,) Wallachia.	
die Barbaren (or Barbarei,) Barbary.	

And other names of places ending in ey or ei as well, as :

die Schweiz, Switzerland.

die Sachsenburg, Saxonburgh.

b. The names of metals, as : das Gold, gold; das Eisen, iron

Except

der Stahl, steel; der Zomback, pinchbeck, der Zink, zink.

c. The names of young animals and diminutive objects, as: das Lamm, the lamb, das Kalb, the calf, das Männchen, the little man, &c.

d. Most collectives, as: das Wild, game; das Heer, the army, das Volk, the people, &c.

e. Most words beginning with ge or ending with thum, as: das Geäder, the veins, das Alterthum, the antiquity, &c.

f. * All infinitives used as substantives, as: das Essen, the eating, das Trinken, the drinking, &c.

g. The letters of the alphabet, as: das A, das B, &c.

Some nouns vary their gender according to their signification, as:

der Band, the volume.	die Mark, the mark, boundary.
das Band, the ribbon.	das Mark, the marrow.
der Bauer, the peasant.	der Mast, the mast of a ship.
das Bauer, the cage.	die Mast, the fruit of wild trees as oak, beach, &c.
der Buckel, the hump, back.	der Mensch, man.
die Buckel, the stud, curl.	das Mensch, the wench.
der Bund, the alliance.	der Messer, the measurer.
das Bund, the bundle.	das Messer, the knife.
der Erbe, the heir.	der Mohr, the Moor, (a person.)
das Erbe, the inheritance.	das Mohr or Moor, the moor.
der Geißel, the hostage.	der Muth, the courage.
die Geißel, the scourge.	das Muth, the hogshead.
der Geschöß, the tax.	der Reiß, the rice.
das Geschöß, missile.	das Reiß, the twig.
die Gift, the gift.	der See, the lake.
das Gift, poison.	die See, the sea.
der Heide, the heathen.	der Stift, a tag.
die Heide, the heath.	das Stift, a charitable founda- tion.
der Leiter, the guide.	der Thor, the fool.
die Leiter, the ladder.	das Thor, the gate.
der Kiefer, the jaw.	
die Kiefer, the pine.	
die Mandel, the almond.	
das Mandel, the number fifteen.	

* All infinitives in German can be used as substantives.

AN ALPHABETICAL INDEX OF MOST ENDINGS OF
NOUNS, TO DETERMINE THEREBY THEIR GENDERS.

Obs. Though there may be some exceptions to these endings, they are but few.

<i>Masculine.</i>			<i>Feminine.</i>		<i>Neuter.</i>
ahl.	el.	opf.	acht.	niß.	ach.
ahn.	elm.	ord.	aft.	ucht.	ad.
all.	en.	orn.	ahrt.	ücke.	at.
alm.	er.	ort.	angst.	uft.	ech.
am.	ich.	ost.	art,	uld.	eil.
and.	icht.	ok.	at.	uhr.	et.
ang.	ick.	uch.	aust.	unst.	ier.
ank.	ieb.	uck.	e.	ung.	ir.
anx.	ieg.	ug.	ei.	unst.	ment.
arm.	ing.	umpf.	eit.	ur.	och.
au.	isch.	und.	enz.	ust.	ohr.
auch.	ik.	unk.	ey.	ut.	or.
aum.	ock.	uß.	gend.	uth,	os.
eck.	of.	uk.	ie.		oß.
eig.	ohn.		ift.		ot.
eim.	olch.		ik.		oth.
eis.	oll.		ion.		thum.
eiß.	on.		ist.		ück.

The following Table exhibits at one view the endings of Nouns of every Declension in all the Cases, except the Nominative Singular.

Singular.

	1st. Dec.	2d. Dec.	3d. Dec.	4th. Dec.	5th. Dec.
Nom. {	—	—	—	—	—
Gen. {	s.	es.	en, or n. ens, or ns.	es, or s.	es.
Dat. {	—	e.	en, or n.	e.	e.
Acc. {	—	—	en, or n.	—	—

Plural.

Nom. {	—	e.	en, or n.	en, or n.	er.
Gen. {	—	e.	en, or n.	en, or n.	er.
Dac. {	n.	en.	en, or n.	en, or n.	ern.
Acc. {	—	e.	en, or n.	en, or n.	er.

As it may sometimes be difficult for learners to ascertain by rules and observations, the genders of nouns, and the declensions to which they belong, the following table is added ; in which most endings of nouns are alphabetically arranged, by which means the genders and declensions may generally be known.*

In this table it is necessary to observe that the mark, (&c.) is used to point out that most nouns belong to that gender and declension under which it is placed : the exceptions under each gender are distinguished by the omission of this mark, and by the English being printed in Italics.

The numbers 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. point out the declension ; and the letters eß or ß ; en or n, denote the endings of the genitive singular, and e or er ; en or n the nominative plural.

Obs. Feminines have only the termination of the nominative plural, on account of their having no change in the singular.

The following example will serve to illustrate the rules and show the utility of the table. For instance, if a noun end in b, by referring to the table it will be seen that the &c. is under the masculines, consequently most nouns ending in b will be of the masculine gender, second declension, having the genitive singular in eß, and nominative plural in e, the exceptions are neuters, and the English is printed in Italics with no &c. under them.

NOUNS IN

<i>Masculines.</i>	<i>Feminines.</i>	<i>Neuters.</i>
b. (eß, e. 2. Dec.)		(eß, er. 5. Dec.)
der Dieb, the thief.		das Grab, the grave.
der Hieb, the stroke.		das Kalb, the calf.
der Korb, the basket.		das Weib, the woman.
&c.		
(eß, er. 5.)		
der Leib, the body.		

* There would have been but little difficulty, in ascertaining to which declension nouns belong, provided the writers of German Dictionaries, in this country, had followed the plan adopted by Professor Adelung and other German Lexicographers, who have given the terminations of the genitive singular, and nominative plural, where any change of termination is required, in order to show to what declension nouns belong ; if this practice be necessary in Germany, surely it is more requisite in other countries.

NOUNS IN

<i>Masculines.</i>	<i>Feminines.</i>	<i>Neuters.</i>
d. (* eß, e, 2. Dec.) der Freund, the friend. der Hund, the dog. der Sand, the sand. &c.	(e, 2. Dec.) die Hand, the hand. die Magd, the servant. die Wand, the wall. and some few others.	(eß, e, 2. Dec.) das Pferd, the horse. das Pfund, the pound.
(en, en, 3. Dec.) der Held, the hero.	(en, 3. Dec.) die Geduld, patience. die Jagd, the chase.	(eß, er, 5. Dec.) das Bad, the bath. das Bild, the image. das Geld, the money. das Glied, the limb. das Land, the land. das Lied, the song. das Rad, the wheel. &c.
* For further particulars, vide the observations on the second declension.		
end. (eß, e, 2. Dec.) der Abend, the evening.	(en, 3. Dec.) die Tugend, the virtue die Gegend, the region &c.	(eß, en, 4. Dec.) das End, the piece cut off, the end.
e. (en, en, 3. Dec.) der Affe, the ape. der Friede, the peace. der Name, the name. der Wille, the will. &c.	(n, 3. Dec.) die Ameise, the ant. die Historie, the history. and all other feminines in e.	(eß, en, 4. Dec.) das Auge, the eye and some others, particularly collectives. vide obs. page 10.
f, pf. (eß, e, 2. Dec.) der Brief, the letter. der Knopf, the button. &c.		(eß, e, 4. Dec.) das Schaf, the sheep.
g. (eß, e, 2. Dec.) der Honig, the honey. der König, the king. &c.		
ung. (eß, e, 2. Dec.) der Sprung, the leap. der Schwung, the swing,	(en, 3. Dec.) die Zeitung, the news. &c.	

NOUNS IN

<i>Masculines.</i>	<i>Feminines.</i>	<i>Neuters.</i>
h. (eß. e. 2. Dec.) der Floh, the flea. &c.	(e. 2, Dec.) die Kuh, the cow. &c.	(eß. e. 2. Dec.) das Stroh, the straw. das Reh, the doe. das Vieh, the beast.
ch, chß, (eß, e 2. Dec.) der Dachs, the badger. der Hauch, the breath. der Luchs, the lynx. &c.		(eß, e, 2. Dec.) das Gemach, the room. das Reich, the empire. das Wachs, the wax. &c. (eß, er, 5. Dec.) das Buch, the book. das Dach, the roof. das Loch, the hole. das Pech, the pitch. das Tuch, the cloth.
fch. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Fisch, the fish. &c.		
arch. (en, en, 3. Dec.) der Monarch, the monarch. &c.		
ath. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Rath, the counsel. (eß, en, 4. Dec.) der Zierath, the ornament.	(en. 3, Dec.) die Heirath, the marriage. &c.	
oth, uth.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Noth, the want. die Demuth, humility. &c.	
rth. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Werth, the value. &c.		

NOUNS IN

<i>Masculines.</i>	<i>Feminines.</i>	<i>Neuters.</i>
ph (en, en. 3. Dec.) der Philosoph, the philosopher. &c.		
(eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Triumph, the triumph.		
f, cf. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Rock, the coat. &c.		(eß, e, & er. 2. & 5. D.) das Werk, the work. das Volk, the people.
ack, ick, uck, if. (en, en. 3. Dec.) der Katholik, the catholic.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Fabrik, the fabric, and a few others.	(eß, e. 2. Dec.) das Glück, the luck. (Glück has no plural.) das Stück, the part or piece.
(eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Blick, the look. der Druck, the pressure der Sack, the bag.		
al, all. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Canal, the canal. der Ball, the ball. &c.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Nachtigall, the nightingale. die Qual, the tor- ment.	(eß, e. 2. Dec.) das Arsenal, the arse- nal. &c. (eß, er. 5. Dec.) das Spital, the hos- pital. das Thal, the valley.

NOUNS IN

<i>Masculines.</i>	<i>Feminines.</i>	<i>Neuters.</i>
el. (1) Vide first Dec. der Hammel, the wether. &c.* (es, en. 4. Dec.) der Pantoffel, the slipper. der Stachel, the sting. der Stiefel, the boot.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Achsel, the shoul- der. &c.	(1) das Achtel, the eighth. &c.
iel. (es, e. 2. Dec.) der Federkiel, the quill. &c.		(es, e, & er. 2. & 5. D.) das Ziel, end, aim, term.
ell.		(es, e. 2. Dec.) das Castell, the castle. das Duell, the duel. das Fell, the skin. &c.
ill, oll. (es, e. 2. Dec.) der Zoll, the inch. &c.		
hl. (es, e. 2. Dec.) der Pfahl, the post. der Stahl, the steel. &c.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Zahl, the number. die Wahl, the choice.	(es, er. 5. Dec.) das Mahl, the repast, or the meal.
(es, en. 4. Dec.) der Strahl, the ray.		

* Where &c. is put under each column, the table, in such instances, is of very little use, and the only remedy in such cases, would be to refer to a Dictionary, similar to Adelung's, in which, the genders and declensions are marked.

It is the author's intention to publish (at some future period) a list of all the simple nouns in the German language, with their genders and declensions marked.

NOUNS IN

<i>Masculines.</i>	<i>Feminines.</i>	<i>Neuters.</i>
eil. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Pfeil, the ar- row. der Theil, the part. der Keil, the wedge. &c.		(eß, e. 2. Dec.) das Beil, the axe.
m. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Baum, the tree. &c. (eß, en. 4. Dec.) der Halm, the straw, (a single piece of straw.) der Psalm, the psalm. &c. (1) der Athem, the breath.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Form, the shape.	
n. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Sohn, the son. &c. (eß, en, & e. 4. Dec.) der Dorn, the thorn. der Sporn, the spur.		(eß, e. 2. Dec.) das Gehirn, the brain. (eß, er. 5. Dec.) das Horn, the horn. das Huhn, the fowl. das Korn, the corn.
an, ann. (eß, e. 2. D.) der Castellan, the keeper of a cas- tle. &c. (eß, en. 4. Dec.) der Unterthan, the subject. (en, en. 3. Dec.) der Tyrann, the tyrant.		

NOUNS IN

<i>Masculines.</i>	<i>Feminines.</i>	<i>Neuters.</i>
en. (1.) der Boden, the ground. &c.		(1.) das Leben, the life. &c.
on, ion. (eß, en, 4. D.) der Patron, the patron. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Scorpion, the scorpion. der Spion, the spy.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Nation, the nation. die Person, the person. die Religion, the reli- gion. &c.	(eß, e. 2. Dec.) das Bataillon, the battalion.
*in, inn. (eß, e. 2. D.) der Rubin, the ruby. &c.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Doctorin, the doc- tess. die Dichterin, the poe- tess, (and all femi- nines in inn or in.)	(eß, e. 2. Dec.) das Bein, the leg.
ar. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Altar, the al- tar. &c. (en, en. 3. Dec.) der Scholar, the scholar. (eß, en. 4. Dec.) der Husar, the hussar. der Nachbar, the neighbour. der Tartar, the tartar. der Ungar, the Hun- garian, and most names of countries end- ing in ar.		(eß, e. 2. Dec.) das Formular, the set form. das Haar, the hair. das Paar, the pair.

* Modern writers generally use only in, instead of inn, at the end of feminine nouns.

NOUNS IN

Masculines.

Feminines.

Neuters.

er. (1.) der Vater, the father. &c. (3, n. 4. Dec.) der Bauer, the peasant, (and some names of persons.)	(n. 3. Dec.) die Schwester, the sister. &c.	(1.) das Vaster, the vice. das Wunder, the miracle. das Zimmer, the room.
hr. (en, en. 3. Dec.) der Mohr, the negro. der Vorfahr, the predecessor. &c.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Uhr, the watch. &c.	(e3, en. 4. Dec.) das Ohr, the ear. &c. (e3, e. 2. Dec.) das Rohr, the reed. &c.
ier.		(e3, e, 2. Dec.) das Bier, the beer. das Brevier, breviary, or abridgement. das Papier, the paper. das Thier, the animal.
or. (e3, en. 4. Dec.) der Professor, the professor. &c. (e3, e. 2. Dec.) der Castor, the castor. der Auditor, the auditor. &c.		(e3, e. 2. Dec.) das Thor, the gate.
rr. (en, en. 3. Dec.) der Herr, the master. der Narr, the fool. &c.		

NOUNS IN

<i>Masculines.</i>	<i>Feminines.</i>	<i>Neuters.</i>
ur. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Schwur, <i>the</i> <i>swearing.</i>	(en. 3. Dec.) die Spur, <i>the track.</i> &c.	
ß. (en, en. 3. Dec.) der Fels, <i>the rock.</i> (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Krebs, <i>the</i> <i>crab.</i> der Hals, <i>the neck.</i>	(e, 2. Dec.) die Gans, <i>the goose.</i>	(eß, er. 5. Dec.) das Glas, <i>the glass.</i> das Gras, <i>the grass.</i> &c.
ß, uß. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Fuß, <i>the foot.</i> der Vielfraß, <i>the</i> <i>glutton.</i> &c.	(e. 2. Dec.) die Fäulniß, <i>the cor-</i> <i>ruption.</i> die Nuß, <i>the nut.</i> die Maus, <i>the mouse.</i> &c.	(eß, er. 5. Dec.) das Faß, <i>the cask.</i> das Haus, <i>the house.</i> &c. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) das Befugniß, <i>the</i> <i>right.</i>
t. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Punkt, <i>the</i> <i>point.</i> &c.		(eß, er, 5. Dec.) das Amt, <i>the office.</i> das Haupt, <i>the head.</i> das Zelt, <i>the tent, and</i> <i>some others.</i>
at, et, ut. (eß, e. 2. D.) der Legat, <i>the le-</i> <i>gate.</i> der Tribut, <i>the</i> <i>tribute.</i> der Magnet, <i>the</i> <i>magnet.</i> (en, en. 3. Dec.) der Advocat, <i>the</i> <i>lawyer.</i> der Potentat, <i>the</i> <i>potentate, and</i> <i>other names of</i> <i>rank.</i>	(e. 2. Dec.) die Haut, <i>the skin.</i> die Braut, <i>the bride.</i> (en. 3. Dec.) die That, <i>the deed.</i>	(eß, e. 2. Dec.) das Mandat, <i>the man-</i> <i>date.</i> das Statut, <i>the statute.</i> &c. (eß, er. 5. Dec.) das Blatt, <i>the leaf.</i> das Brett, <i>the board.</i> das Gut, <i>the good.</i> das Gebet, <i>the prayer.</i> das Kraut, <i>the herb.</i>

NOUNS IN

<i>Masculines.</i>	<i>Feminines.</i>	<i>Neuters.</i>
tät.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Qualitât, the qua- lity. &c.	
ft. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Duft, <i>the va- pour.</i> der Saft, <i>the sap.</i> der Schaft, <i>the shaft.</i>	(e. 2. Dec.) die Kraft, <i>the strength.</i> die Luft, <i>the air.</i> die Vernunft, <i>the sense.</i> die Zunft, <i>the corpora- tion.</i>	(eß, er. 5. Dec.) das Stift, <i>the institu- tion or foundation.</i>
(eß, er. 5. Dec.) der Stift, <i>the peg, or tag.</i>	(en. 3. Dec.) die Freundschaft, <i>the friendship.</i> &c.	
ant, ent. (en, en. 3. D) der Adjutant, <i>the adjutant.</i> &c.		
(eß, en. 4. Dec.) der Diamant, <i>the diamond.</i>		
(eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Orient, <i>the east.</i> der Occident, <i>the west.</i>		
ment.		(eß, er. 5. Dec.) das Parlament, <i>the parliament.</i> das Regiment, <i>the re- giment.</i> &c.
ct. (eß, en. 4. Dec.) der Affect, <i>the passion.</i> &c.		(eß, e. 2. Dec.) das Edict, <i>the edict.</i> (eß, en. 4. Dec.) das Insect, <i>the insect.</i>

NOUNS IN

<i>Masculines.</i>	<i>Feminines.</i>	<i>Neuters.</i>
st. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Ballast, the ballast. der Dunst, the vapour. der Papst, the pope. &c. (en, en. 3. Dec.) der Enthusiast, the enthusiast. der Atheist, the atheist. &c.	(en, 3. Dec.) die Last, the load. die List, the craft. (e. 2. Dec.) die Angst, the anguish. die Wurst, the sausage. die Kunst, the art. &c.	(eß, er. 5. Dec.) das Gespenst, the ghost.
cht. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Knecht, the servant. &c. (eß, er. 5. Dec.) der Bösewicht, the villain.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Absicht, the design. die Andacht, (the) devotion. die Pflicht, the duty. die Schlacht, the battle. die Sucht, sickness. &c. (e. 2. Dec.) die Macht, the might. die Nacht, the night.	(eß, er. 5. Dec.) das Geschlecht, the gender or genus. das Gesicht, the sight, or face. &c.
ht.	(e. 2. Dec.) die Naht, the seam.	
gt.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Predigt, the sermon. &c.	
dt.	(e. 2. Dec.) die Stadt, the town.	
lt. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Anwalt, the attorney. der Spalt, the slit.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Anstalt, the regulation. die Welt, the world.	(eß, e. 2. Dec.) das Zelt, the tent.

NOUNS IN

<i>Masculines.</i>	<i>Feminines.</i>	<i>Neuters.</i>
eit. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Streit, <i>the dispute.</i>	(en. 3. Dec.) die Zeit, <i>the time.</i> die Grobheit, <i>the coarseness.</i> &c.	(eß, er. 5. Dec.) das Scheit, <i>the log.</i>
rt. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Bart, <i>the beard.</i>	(en. 3. Dec.) die Art, <i>the species.</i> die Antwort, <i>the answer.</i> die Fahrt, <i>the passage.</i>	(eß, er. 5. Dec.) das Wort, <i>the word.</i> das Schwert, <i>the sword.</i>
eu.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Spreu, <i>the chaff.</i> &c.	(eß, 2. 5. Dec.) das Heu, <i>the hay.</i> (Heu has no plural.)
au. (eß, en. 4. Dec.) der Pfau, <i>the peacock.</i>	(e. 2. Dec.) die Sau, <i>the sow.</i>	(eß, e. 2. Dec.) das Thau, <i>the rope.</i>
(eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Bau, <i>the building.</i>	(en. 3. Dec.) die Frau, <i>the wife.</i> die Schau, <i>the show.</i>	
ey, or ei.	(en. 3. Dec.) die Bettelei, <i>begging.</i> die Schmeichelei, <i>the flattery.</i> &c.	(eß, er. 5. Dec.) das Blei, <i>the lead.</i> (Blei has no plural.) das Ei, <i>the egg.</i>
z, ß. (eß, e. 2. Dec.) der Klotz, <i>the block.</i> der Reverenz, <i>the reverence.</i>	(en. 3. Dec.) die Miliz, <i>the militia.</i> &c.	(eß, er. 5. Dec.) das Holz, <i>the wood.</i>
(eß, en. 4. Dec.) der Prinz, <i>the prince.</i> &c. Vide § page 42.		(eß, e. 2. Dec.) das Geschütz, <i>the artillery.</i> das Salz, <i>the salt.</i>

*Recapitulatory Exercises (exemplifying the Rules and Observations on the Nouns,) to be translated into English.**

FIRST LESSON.

Die Hunde jagen die Hasen.

Die Lieder der Nachtigallen ergötzen die Ohren des Menschen.

Die Absichten des Menschen stimmen oft nicht mit seinen Handlungen überein.

Man nennt das Alter, den Winter des Lebens; und die Jugend, den Frühling des Lebens.

Alle Menschen lieben das Leben, und scheuen den Tod, aber der Weise verachtet den Tod.

Die Zeiger an der Uhr, zeigen die Stunden und die Minuten.

Die Mathematik lehrt die Verhältnisse der Zahlen, und überhaupt der Größen.

Die Theologie ist die Lehre von Gott, und der Glückseligkeit des Menschen.

der Hund, the dog.

jagen, hunt.

der Hase, the hare.

das Lied, the song.

die Nachtigall, the nightingale.

ergötzen, delight.

das Ohr, the ear.

der Mensch, man.

die Absicht, the intention.

oft, often.

stimmen nicht überein, do not agree.

mit, with, seinen, his.

die Handlung, action.

mann nennt, we call.

das Alter, old age.

der Winter, the winter.

das Leben, life.

die Jugend, youth.

der Frühling, the spring.

alle Menschen, all men.

lieben, love.

das Leben, life.

scheuen, abhor.

der Tod, death.

aber, but.

der Weise, the wise man.

verachtet, despises.

der Zeiger, the hand.

an, of.

die Uhr, the watch.

zeigen, point to.

die Stunde, the hour.

die Minute, the minute.

* It will be advisable for a scholar on his first going through the Grammar, to pass over the recapitulatory practice.

die Mathematik, the mathematics.	die Theologie, theology.
lehrt, teaches, (<i>teach.</i>)	ist, is.
das Verhältniß, the proportion.	die Lehre, the doctrine.
die Zahl, number.	von, of.
überhaupt, in general.	Gott, God.
die Größe, magnitude.	die Glückseligkeit, happiness.
	des Menschen, man.

SECOND LESSON.

Die neun Musen sind die Göttinnen der schönen Künste und Wissenschaften.

Wir haben vier Elemente, das Wasser, die Erde, die Luft, und das Feuer; das Wasser dient den Menschen, den Thieren, den Pflanzen, ja selbst den Metallen zur Nahrung.

Die Erde nährt ebenfalls die Pflanzen.

Die Luft umgiebt den ganzen Erdball.

Die lebendigen Geschöpfe athmen die Luft ein.

Das Feuer macht die Metalle schmelzen.

Das Feuer bringt Wärme hervor.

Die Flamme ist ein Zeichen des Feuers.

Auf der Oberfläche der Erde wachsen Bäume, Kräuter, und Pflanzen.

Im Frühlinge blühen viele Arten von Blumen, dann sieht man Rosen, Veilchen, Narcissen, Hyacinthen, Tulpen, und viele andre Blumen.

neun, nine.	der Mensch, man.
die Muse, the muse.	das Thier, the animal.
sind, are.	die Pflanze, the plant.
die Göttinn, the Goddess.	ja selbst, even.
schönen, fine.	das Metall, the metal.
die Kunst, the art.	zur, as, (for zu der, as.)
die Wissenschaft, the science.	die Nahrung, food.
wir haben, we have.	nährt, nourishes.
vier, four.	ebenfalls, in like manner.
das Element, the element.	umgiebt, surrounds.
das Wasser, (<i>the</i>) water.	ganz, whole
die Erde, (<i>the</i>) earth.	der Erdball, globe.
die Luft, (<i>the</i>) air.	lebendig, living.
das Feuer, (<i>the</i>) fire.	das Geschöpf, the creature.
dient, serves, is useful to.	athmen ein, breathe in.

macht, makes.
 schmelzen, to melt.
 bringt hervor, brings forth.
 die Wärme, warmth.
 die Flamme, the flame.
 ist, is.
 das Zeichen, the sign.
 auf, upon.
 die Oberfläche, surface.
 wachsen, grow.
 der Baum, the tree.
 das Kraut, the herb.
 die Pflanze, the plant.
 im (for in dem), in.

der Frühling, the spring.
 blühen, blossom.
 viele, many.
 die Art, the sort.
 die Blume, the flower.
 dann, then.
 sieht man, we see.
 die Rose, the rose.
 das Veilchen, the violet.
 die Narciſſe, the narcissus.
 die Hyacinth, the hyacinth.
 die Tulpe, the tulip.
 andere, other.

In the following exercises, the words which are translated underneath, follow in the order as they ought to stand in the German, and the words inclosed in a parenthesis, are according to the German idiom.

Recapitulatory Exercises on the Nouns.

THIRD LESSON.

The dog loves the society of man (*the man*).
 The return of the swallows announces (*the*) spring.
 (*The*) horns are the ornament of the stag.
 (*The*) cats catch (*the*) mice and (*the*) rats.
 The eagle kills (*the*) birds and (*the*) fourfooted animals.
 Greatness (*the greatness*) and immortality (*the immortality*) flatter our wishes.
 (*The*) sparrows kill the insects.
 The whale swallows (*the*) other fish.
 The teacher instructs the scholar, and the scholar learns the principles of the teacher.
 Praise (*the praise*) belongs to the diligent and blame (*the blame*) to the idle.
 (*The*) Apes resemble men (*to the men*).

Dog, Hund, <i>m.</i> 2.	announces, kündigt an.
loves, liebet.	the spring, den Frühling.
society, Gesellschaft, <i>f.</i> 3. (<i>Acc.</i>)	horns, Geweihe, <i>n.</i> 1.
man, Mensch, <i>m.</i> 3.	ornament, Zierde, <i>f.</i> 3.
return, Wiederkunft, <i>f.</i> 2.	stag, Hirsch, <i>m.</i> 2.
swallow, Schwalbe, <i>f.</i> 3.	

eat, Rahe, <i>f.</i> 3.	swallows, verschlingt.
catch, fangen.	other, andere.
mouse, *Maus, <i>f.</i> 2. (<i>Acc.</i>)	fish, Fisch, <i>m.</i> 2.
rat, Rabe, <i>f.</i> 3.	teacher, Lehrer, <i>m.</i> 1.
eagle, Adler, <i>m.</i> 1.	instructs, unterrichtet.
kills, tödtet.	scholar, Schüler, <i>m.</i> 1.
bird, *Vogel, <i>m.</i> 1.	learns, lernt.
fourfooted, vierfüßige.	principle, *Grundsatz, <i>m.</i> 2.
animal, Thier, <i>n.</i> 2. (<i>Acc.</i>)	praise, Lob, <i>m.</i> 2.
greatness, Größe, <i>f.</i> 3.	belongs, gebührt.
immortality, Unsterblichkeit, <i>f.</i> 3.	diligent, Fleißigen, <i>m.</i> 3.
wish, *Wunsch, <i>m.</i> 2.	blame, Tadel, <i>m.</i> 1.
sparrow, Sperling, <i>m.</i> 2.	idle, Faulen, <i>m.</i> 3.
kill, tödten.	ape, Affe, <i>m.</i> 3.
insect, Insect, <i>n.</i> 4.	resemble, gleichen.
whale, Wallfisch, <i>m.</i> 2.	

FOURTH LESSON.

The quills of (*the*) geese, ravens, and bustards, serve for (*the*) writing, but the quills of (*the*) hens and turkeys are of no such use.

We hold the pen in our (*with the*) hand, and make (*the*) letters with it.

(*The*) letters are the parts of (*the*) syllables, (*the*) syllables the parts of (*the*) words, and (*the*) words the parts of (*the*) speech.

Many objects we cannot see, for instance the soul of (*the*) man, and the thoughts of man; God only knows the thoughts of man.

We know the will of men by their (*the*) actions.

The state erects schools for the benefit of the citizens, and the children of (*the*) citizens.

quill, Federkiel, <i>m.</i> 2.	we hold, wir halten.
goose, *Gans, <i>f.</i> 2.	pen, Feder, <i>f.</i> 3.
raven, Rabe, <i>m.</i> 3.	with, mit.
bustard, Trappe, <i>f.</i> 3.	hand, *Hand, <i>f.</i> 2.
serve, dienen.	make, machen.
for (<i>the,</i>) zum, or zu dem.	with it, damit.
writing, Schreiben.	letter, Buchstabe, <i>m.</i> 3.
but, aber.	are, sind.
hen, *Henne, <i>f.</i> 3.	part, Theil, <i>m.</i> or <i>n.</i> 2.
turkey, *Truthahn, <i>n.</i> 5.	syllable, Sylbe, <i>f.</i> 3.
are of no such use, taugen nicht dazu.	word, Wort, <i>n.</i> 5.
	speech, Rede, <i>f.</i> 3.

many, viele.	will, Wille, m. 3.
object, *Gegenstand, m. 2.	by, auß.
we cannot see, können wir nicht sehen.	actions, Handlung, f. 3.
for instance, zum Beispiel.	state, Staat, m. 4.
the soul, Seele, f. 3.	erects, errichtet.
the thought, Gedanke, m. 3.	school, Schule, f. 3.
God, Gott, m. 5.	for the benefit, zum Nutzen.
only knows, nur kennt.	citizen, Bürger, m. 1.
we know, wir wissen.	child, Kind, n. 5.

CHAP. IV.

§ I. Of Adjectives, (Beiwörter.)

1. Adjectives are sometimes used adverbially, and are then indeclinable, as:

Der Mann ist gut,	The man is good.
Die Frau ist gut,	The woman is good.
Daß Kind ist gut,	The child is good.
Die Männer sind gut,	The men are good.
Der Mann schreibt gut,	The man writes well.

2. They are declinable in three different forms, viz. 1stly without any article, 2ndly with the article ein, and 3rdly with the article der.

FIRST FORM.

If no article precedes the adjective, it is declined like the article der, die, daß; as,

Singular.

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. guter,	gute,	gutes, good.
G. gutes or* guten,	guter,	gutes or guten, of good.
D. gutem,	guter,	gutem, to good.
A. guten,	gute,	gutes, good.

* Guten instead of gutes in the genitive, is used by the best German writers.

*Plural.**For the three Genders.*

gute, good.
 guter, of good.
 guten, to good.
 gute, to good.

Guter, without an article and with a masculine noun, is thus declined :

*Sing.**Plural.*

N. guter Wein, good wine.	N. gute Weine, good wines.
G. guten or gutes Weines, of good wine.	G. guter Weine, of good wines.
D. gutem Weine, to good wine.	D. guten Weinen, to good wines.
A. guten Wein, good wine.	A. gute Weine, good wines.

Guter with a feminine noun is thus declined in the singular only, as :

N. gute Milch, good milk, or some good milk.
 G. guter Milch, of good milk.
 D. guter Milch, to good milk.
 A. gute Milch, good milk.

Weiß, (*white*,) with a neuter noun is thus declined in the singular only, as :

N. weißes Brot or Brod, white bread.
 G. weißes or weißen Brotes, of white bread.
 D. weißem Brote, to white bread.
 A. weißes Brot, white bread.

So decline rother Wein, red wine ; dünnes Bier, small beer ; schwarze Tinte or (Dinte,) black ink ; schönes Wetter, fine weather.

 SECOND FORM.

Adjectives with the indefinite article ein, are thus declined :

Singular.

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
* N. ein guter,	eine gute,	ein gutes.
G. eines guten,	einer guten,	eines guten.
D. einem guten,	einer guten,	einem guten.
A. einen guten,	eine gute,	ein gutes.

Ein guter, with a masculine noun is thus declined ;

Singular.

N. ein guter Vater, a good father.
 G. eines guten Vaters, of a good father.
 D. einem guten Vater, to a good father.
 A. einen guten Vater, a good father.

Ein guter, with a feminine noun is thus declined :

Singular.

N. eine gute Mutter, a good mother.
 G. einer guten Mutter, of a good mother.
 D. einer guten Mutter, to a good mother.
 A. eine gute Mutter, a good mother.

Ein guter, with a neuter noun is thus declined :

Singular.

N. ein gutes Weib, a good woman.
 G. eines guten Weibes, of a good woman.
 D. einem guten Weibe, to a good woman.
 A. ein gutes Weib, a good woman.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. gute Väter,	Mütter,	Weiber.
good fathers,	mothers,	women.
G. guter Väter,	Mütter,	Weiber, of good &c.
D. guten Vätern,	Müttern,	Weibern, to good &c.
A. gute Väter,	Mütter,	Weiber, good &c.

So decline, ein weiser Mann, a wise man; eine schöne Frau, a handsome woman; ein kleines Haus, a little or small house; ein warmer Wind, a warm wind.

* The plural is formed in the same manner, as without any article.
 Vide the plural of guter Wein.

THIRD FORM.

Adjectives with the definite article *der*, are thus declined :

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>for the three Gend.</i>
N. <i>der gute,</i>	<i>die gute</i>	<i>das gute,</i>	<i>die guten.</i>
G. <i>des guten,</i>	<i>der guten,</i>	<i>des guten,</i>	<i>der guten.</i>
D. <i>dem guten</i>	<i>der guten,</i>	<i>dem guten,</i>	<i>den guten.</i>
A. <i>den guten,</i>	<i>die gute,</i>	<i>das gute,</i>	<i>die guten.</i>

Der gute, with a masculine noun, is thus declined :

Singular.

- N. *der gute Mann*, the good man.
 G. *des guten Mannes*, of the good man.
 D. *dem guten Manne*, to the good man.
 A. *den guten Mann*, the good man.

Der gute, with the feminine noun, is thus declined :

Singular.

- N. *die gute Frau*, the good woman.
 G. *der guten Frau*, of the good woman.
 D. *der guten Frau*, to the good woman.
 A. *die gute Frau*, the good woman.

Der gute, with a neuter noun, is thus declined :

Singular.

- N. *das gute Kind*, the good child.
 G. *des guten Kindes*, of the good child.
 D. *dem guten Kinde*, to the good child.
 A. *das gute Kind*, the good child.

Plural for the three Genders.

- N. *die guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder.*
 The good men, women, children.
 G. *der guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder*, of the good &c.
 D. *den guten Männern, Frauen, Kindern*, to the good. &c.
 A. *die guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder*, the good &c.

So decline *der kleine Knabe*, the little boy; *die kluge Frau*, the prudent woman; *das kleine Mädchen*, the little girl.

The following Table exhibits, at one view, the Terminations of the three different Forms of Adjectives.

FIRST FORM, like der, die, das.				
	Singular.			Plural.
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	
Nom.	er,	e,	eß,	e.
Gen.	eß or en,	er,	eß or en,	er.
Dat.	em,	er,	em,	en.
Acc.	en,	e,	eß,	e.

SECOND FORM, like ein guter.				
	Singular.			Plural.
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	
Nom.	er,	e,	eß,	• 1st 2nd. e, en.
Gen.	en,	en,	en,	er, en.
Dat.	en,	en,	en,	en, en.
Acc.	en,	e,	eß,	e, en.

* When one adjective is used in the plural in the second form, the first terminations are employed; vide the plural of gute Väter, Mütter, Weiber, page 52; but when more adjectives are used, the first adjective takes the first terminations, and the others the second; however Klopstock, and some other writers, use the plural of the first form throughout; vide the plural gute rothe alte Weine, page 59.

It may be also observed, that the plural of the first form, is like the plural of the first terminations of the second form.

THIRD FORM, like der gute.				
	Singular.			Plural.
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	
Nom.	e,	e,	e,	en.
Gen.	en,	en,	en,	en.
Dat.	en,	en,	en,	en.
Acc.	en,	e,	e,	en.

Promiscuous Practice on the Adjectives and Nouns.

	Adjectives.	Nouns.
Of the fine children,	schön.	Kind, n. 5.
To a fine child,	....	.....
Of happy days,	glücklich.	Tag, m. 2.
Of good men,	gut.	*Mann, m. 5.
The ignorant people,	unwissend.	Leute, m. 3.
The liquid air,	flüssig.	*Luft, f. 2.
A timid girl,	furchtsam.	Mädchen, n. 1.
The industrious maid,	fleißig.	*Magd, f. 2.
An easy work,	leicht.	Arbeit, f. 3.
Of hard labor,	schwer.	Arbeit, f. 3.
The frugal meal,	sparsam.	Mahlzeit, f. 3.
Tall firs,	erhaben.	Fichte, f. 3.
Of the hard oak,	hart.	Eiche, f. 3.
A shady elm,	schattig.	Ulme, f. 3.
Of hard iron,	hart.	Eisen, n. 1.
The early lark,	früh.	Perche, f. 3.
An unknown land,	unbekannt.	*Land, n. 5.
Of the Trojan hero,	trojanisch.	Geld, m. 3.
Of civilized Europe,	gesittet.	Europa, n.
To hot Africa,	heiß.	Afrika, n.
Rich America,	reich.	Amerika, n.

	<i>Adjectives.</i>	<i>Nouns.</i>
To large Asia,	groß.	Asien, n.
To the fiery Hecla,	feurig.	Hekla, m.
Of the fair Helen,	schön.	Helena, f.
The chaste Diana,	keusch.	Diana, f.
The geographical miles,	geographisch.	Meile, f. 3.
Terrible thunder,	erschrecklich.	Donner, m. 1.
The Olympic games,	olympisch.	Spiel, n. 2.
Of distant vallies,	entfernt.	*Thal, n. 5.
Of fine flowers,	schön.	Blume, f. 3.
The pious father, (<i>Acc.</i>)	fromm.	*Vater, m. 1.
To fresh butter,	frisch.	Butter, f. 1.
To a red coat,	roth.	Kleid, n. 5.
Black bread.	schwarz.	Brot, n. 2.

Observations on the Declension of Adjectives.

1. Adjectives are declined according to the second form, (viz. like *ein guter*) when preceded by the personal pronouns *ich, I; du, thou; er, he, &c.*; after the possessives, *mein, my; dein, thy; sein, his, &c.*; and the indefinites, *kein, no; viel, many; wenig, few; mehr, more*; as, *ich armer Mann, I poor man; mir armen Manne, (nicht armem Manne) to me poor man; du gute Seele, thou good soul; ihr ehrlichen Leute, you honest people; kein ehrlicher Mann, no honest man; viel guter Wein, much good wine; wenig gutes Brot, little good bread; mein eigenes Haus, my own house; meines eigenen Hauses, of my own house; meinem eigenen Hause, to my own house; mit ihrer gütigen Erlaubniß, with your kind permission; unser altes Haus, our old house; keine grünen Wälder, no green woods*; so likewise when several adjectives follow one another, as:

Dein guter alter ehrlicher Vater, thy good honest old father.
Ein einziger lieber Sohn, an only dear son.

2. Adjectives are declined after the third form, that is like *der gute*, when they follow the pronouns;

<i>Alle, all.</i>	<i>jener, that.</i>
<i>beide, both.</i>	<i>selbigen, selfsame.</i>
<i>dieser, this.</i>	<i>solcher, such.</i>
<i>derjenige, that, he.</i>	<i>mancher, many a one.</i>
<i>derselbe, the same.</i>	<i>welcher, which or that.</i>
<i>jeder, every.</i>	

The first adjective or pronoun is declined like *der*. Examples:

Singular.

- N.* Dieser fromme Vater, this pious father.
G. Dieses frommen Vaters, of this pious father.
D. Diesem frommen Vater, to this pious father.
A. Diesen frommen Vater, this pious father.

Plural.

- N.* Diese frommen Väter, these pious fathers.
G. Dieser frommen Väter, of these pious fathers.
D. Diesen frommen Vätern, to these pious fathers.
A. Diese frommen Väter, these pious fathers.

Singular.

- N.* Mancher kluge Mann, many a prudent man.
G. Um manches guten Vorsatzes willen, on account of many a good purpose.
D. Manchem bösen Menschen, to many a bad man.
A. Manchen frommen Mann, many a pious man.

So also when many adjectives come together, as :

Singular.

- N.* Dieser alte brave Mann, this brave old man.
G. Dieses alten braven Mannes, of this brave old man.
D. Diesem alten braven Manne, to this brave old man.
A. Diesen alten braven Mann, this brave old man.

Plural.

- N.*jene schönen rothen Blumen, those fine red flowers.
G. jener schönen rothen Blumen, of those fine red flowers.

After *alle*, *all*; *etliche* and *einige*, *some*; *manche*, *many*; the nominative and accusative plural may end in *e*, instead of *en*, as :

- N.* or *A.* Alle gute Menschen, all good men.
N. or *A.* Alle übrige fremde Gäste, all the other strange guests.
N. or *A.* Einige griechische Schriftsteller, some Grecian writers.
N. or *A.* Manche wilde Vögel, many wild birds; but the other cases follow the rule, as :

Plural.

- G.* Aller übrigen fremden Gäste, of all the other strange guests.
G. Um einiger griechischen Schriftsteller willen, for the sake of some Grecian writers.

3. When no article comes before the adjective, it is declined in the first form, like *der*, *die*, *das*, (*vide* *guter*); and when indeclinable words precede, whether numerals, adjectives, or adverbs, they have no influence upon the adjective, as :

Etwas guter Wein, some good wine.
 Viel frische Milch, much fresh milk.
 Wenig kaltes Wasser, a little cold water.
 Sehr gute Menschen, very good men.
 Vier baare Thaler, four dollars in cash.
 Fünf lange Jahre, five long years.
 Nach zehn langen Jahren, after ten long years.

But the adjective is declined in the third form, (viz. as with *der*) when preceded by *zwei* or *drei*, these two numerals being declinable in the genitive and dative. Examples:

G. Zweier langen Tage, of two long days.
 G. Dreier baaren Thaler, of three dollars in cash.
 D. Dreien guten Menschen, to three good men.

For the sake of euphony, the genitive singular in the first form, takes *en* instead of *es*, as:

Folgenden Tages, the following day.
 Widrigen Falles, in the contrary case.
 Guten Theils, in a great measure.
 Seligen Andenkens, of blessed memory.
 Geraden Weges, in the straight way.
 Hiesigen Ortes, in this place.
 Andern Theils, on the other hand.
 Größten Theils, for the most part.

For the same reason, the *m* of the dative, is changed into *n*, when the adjective already ends in *m*; as, *armen* (*not armem*,) poor; *angenehmen* (*not angenehmem*,) pleasant, &c.

4. When several adjectives come together without any article before them, the first only is declined in the first form, like *der*, *die*, *das*, the others in the second form; but some authors decline each adjective in the plural, according to the first form.

Masculine.

Singular.

N. Guter rother alter Wein, good old red wine.
 G. Guten or gutes alten rothen Weines, of good old red wine.
 D. Gutem rothen alten Weine, to good old red wine.
 A. Guten rothen alten Wein, good old red wine.

Plural.

N. Gute rothen alten Weine, or gute rothe alte Weine, good old red wines.

G. Guter rothen alten Weine, or guter rother alter Weine, of good old red wines.

D. Guten rothen alten Weinen, to good old red wines.

A. Gute rothen alten Weine, or gute rothe alte Weine, good old red wines.

So guter weißer Hafer, good white oats.

*Feminine.**Singular.*

N. Reife süße Frucht, ripe sweet fruit.

G. Reifer süßen Frucht, of ripe sweet fruit.

D. Reifer süßen Frucht, to ripe sweet fruit.

A. Reife süße Frucht, ripe sweet fruit.

Plural.

A. Reife süßen Früchte, ripe sweet fruits.

G. Reifer süßen Früchte, of ripe sweet fruits.

D. Reifen süßen Früchten, to ripe sweet fruits.

A. Reife süßen, Früchte, ripe sweet fruits.

*Neuter.**Singular.*

N. Schönes grünes Glas, fine green glass.

G. Schönen grünen Glases, of fine green glass.

D. Schöнем grünen Glase, to fine green glass.

A. Schönes grünes Glas, fine green glass.

Plural.

N. Schöne grünen Gläser, fine green glasses.

G. Schöner grünen Gläser, of fine green glasses.

D. Schönen grünen Gläsern, to fine green glasses.

A. Schöne grünen Gläser, fine green glasses.

So in the plural only.

*Masculine.**Plural.*

N. Andere guten Menschen, other good men.

G. Anderer guten Menschen, of other good men.

Feminine.

Plural.

N. Schöne großen Städte, fine large cities.

G. Schöner großen Städte, of fine large cities.

Neuters.

Plural.

N. Schöne großen Häuser, fine large houses.

G. Schöner großen Häuser, of fine large houses.

But there are some deviations from these forms, particularly in the plural, as :

Ganze lange Tage, whole long days.

Lange ganze Tage, long whole days.

Lange halbe Nächte, long half nights.

Schwere volle Becher, heavy full cups.

Eine Reihe wohlklingender deutscher Verse, a string of harmonious German verses, &c. (vide Adelung's Grammar, page 233 ; and the observation in this Grammar, page 54, and the plural of guter rother alter Wein, page 59.)

5. When two or more defining particles come together before an adjective, each retains its own form of declension, as: viele solche neuen Wörter, many such new words ; um vieler solcher neuen Wörter willen, on account of many such new words ; alle diese bösen Männer, all these bad men.

6. Adjectives which admit of declension cannot lose their proper endings, hence, schön Wetter, for schönes Wetter, *fine weather*, is not grammatical, but used in conversation ; so also, all mein Vermögen, for alles mein Vermögen, *all my property* ; manch ehrlicher Mann, for mancher ehrlicher Mann, *many an honest man*.

7. Some adjectives never admit of declension, as : anderthalb, *one and a half* ; drittehalb, *two and a half* ; allerlei, *all sorts* ; mancherlei, *many sorts* ; and all compounds in halb and lei or ley. Viel, *much* ; wenig, *little* ; mehr, *more*, are indeclinable before nouns which are considered as a whole ; as, viel Brot, *much bread* ; wenig Mühe, *little trouble or pain* ; but before plural nouns they are declinable ; as, viele Kinder, *many children* ; wenige Menschen, *few men*. Ganz, *all* ; and halb, *half*, before names of places, are frequently indeclinable, as : ganz Deutschland, *all Germany* ; halb Frankreich, *half France*.

8. When two adjectives come together, coupled by the conjunction und, it is usual in familiar discourse to drop the ending

of the first ; as, ein roth- und weißes Gesicht, *a red and white face* ; ein genüg- und arbeitsamer Mensch, *a contented and industrious man*.

8. Adjectives may be converted into substantives, both in the singular and plural, the nouns being understood, for which they are made to stand ; as, der Weise, *the wise man* ; die Weise, *the wise woman* ; das Erhabene, *the sublime* ; so, der Gelehrte, *the learned man* ; die Schöne, *the fair woman* ; der Bekannte, *the male acquaintance* ; die Bekannte, *the female acquaintance* ; der Verwandte, *the male relation* ; die Verwandte, *the female relation* ; der Höchste, *the supreme, (the supreme being)* ; der Geliebte, *the beloved man* ; die Geliebte, *the beloved woman* ; der Allmächtige, *the Almighty* ; der Bediente, *the servant man*.

§ II. Comparison of Adjectives.

The degrees of comparison are the positive, the comparative and the superlative. The comparative is formed by adding *r* or *er*, and the * superlative by adding *st*, *ste* or *este* to the end of the simple word or positive, as :

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Klein, little ;	kleiner, less ;	der, die, das kleinste, the least.
Weise, wise ;	weiser, wiser ;	der weiseste, the wisest.
Dreist, bold ;	dreister, bolder ;	der dreiste, the boldest.

So form :

hohl, hollow.	lahm, lame.
rauh, rough.	stolz, proud.
blau, blue.	roh, raw.
toll, mad.	fremd, strange.
schlecht, bad.	fest, firm.
sanft, soft.	zähm, tame.
müde, weary.	schlank, slender.

The preceding adjectives do not change their vowels in the comparative and superlative, but most adjectives change the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, in the comparative and superlative, as ;

* The superlative degree is seldom used without the definite article, which must agree in gender, number and case, with the noun to which it refers, as :

das ist der kleinste Mann, that is the least man.
das ist die kleinste Frau, that is the least woman.
das ist das kleinste Kind, that is the least child.

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
alt, old ;	älter, older ;	der, die or das älteste, the oldest.
lang, long ;	länger, longer ;	der längste, the longest.
kurz, short ;	kürzer, shorter ;	der kürzeste, the shortest.

So form :

arm, poor.	kalt, cold.
bange, fearful.	klar, clear.
dumm, stupid.	klug, prudent.
grob, coarse.	naß, wet.
groß, great.	schwach, weak.
hart, hard.	stark, strong.

Some adjectives form their comparisons irregularly, as :

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
bald, soon ;	eher, sooner ;	der, die or das eheste, the soonest.
gern, willing ;	lieber, more willing ;	am liebsten, the most willing.
gut, good ;	besser, better ;	der beste, the best.
hoch, high ;	höher, higher ;	der höchste, the highest.
nahe, near ;	näher, nearer ;	der nächste, the nearest.
viel, much ;	mehr, more ;	der meiste, the most.

The comparatives and superlatives of adjectives are declined like the positive.

Declension of the comparative *älter, older*, with *ein*, and a masculine noun.

Singular.

N. Ein älterer Mann, an older man.

G. Eines älteren or ältern Mannes, of an older man.

D. Einem älteren or ältern Manne, to an older man.

A. Einen älteren or ältern Mann, an older man.

A feminine noun.

N. Eine ältere Frau, an older woman.

G. Einer älteren or ältern Frau, of an older woman.

D. Einer älteren or ältern Frau, to an older woman.

A. Eine ältere Frau, an older woman.

A neuter noun.

N. Ein älteres Kind, an older child.

G. Eines älteren or ältern Kindes, of an older child.

D. Einem älteren or ältern Kinde, to an older child.

A. Ein älteres Kind, an older child.

Plural for the three Genders, without any Article.

N. Ältere Männer, Frauen, Kinder, older men, women, children.

G. Älterer Männer, Frauen, Kinder, of older men, &c.

D. Ältern Männern, Frauen, Kindern, to older men, &c.

A. Ältere Männer, Frauen, Kinder, older men, &c.

Declension of the superlative älteste, with der, and a masculine noun.

Singular.

N. Der älteste Mann, the oldest man.

G. Des ältesten Mannes, of the oldest man.

D. Dem ältesten Manne, to the oldest man.

A. Den ältesten Mann, the oldest man.

A feminine noun.

N. Die älteste Frau, the oldest woman.

G. Der ältesten Frau, of the oldest woman.

D. Der ältesten Frau, to the oldest woman.

A. Die älteste Frau, the oldest woman.

A neuter noun.

N. Das älteste Kind, the oldest child.

G. Des ältesten Kindes, of the oldest child.

D. Dem ältesten Kinde, to the oldest child.

A. Das älteste Kind, the oldest child.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Die ältesten Männer Frauen, Kinder, the oldest men, women, children.

G. Der ältesten Männer, Frauen, Kinder, of the &c.

D. Den ältesten Männern, Frauen, Kindern, to the &c.

A. Die ältesten Männer, Frauen, Kinder, the &c.

So decline.

Ein besserer Mann, a better man.

Eine schönere Frau, a more beautiful woman.

Ein jüngeres Kind, a younger child.

Der beste Mann, the best man.

Die schönste Frau, the handsomest woman.

Das jüngste Kind, the youngest child.

Ein heiterer Tag, a clearer day.

Eine freiere Luft, a freer air,

Ein klügeres Weib, a more prudent woman.

Der heiterste Tag, the clearest day.

Die freieste Luft, the freest air.

Das klügste Weib, the most discreet woman.

Ein jüngerer Bruder, a younger brother.

Das sicherste Mittel, the safest means.

Der größte Held, the greatest hero.

Ein höheres Haus, a higher house.

Der längste Weg, the longest way.

Die breiteste Straße, the broadest road.

Observations on the Comparison of Adjectives.

1. The e is often dropped in the comparative of adjectives, ending in el, en and er, as :

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>
edel, noble ;	edler, nobler, (for edeler.)
sicher, safe ;	sichrer, safer, (for sicherer.)
vollkommen, perfect.	vollkommner, more perfect, (for vollkommener.)

2. Most primitives change their vowels in the comparative and superlative ; as, *stark, strong ; stärker, stronger ; der stärkste, the strongest ; kurz, short ; kürzer, kürzeste ;* but the following are exceptions, as well as some others previously noticed : *bläß, pale ; falsch, false ; gerade, straight ; hold, affectionate ; lose, loose ; glatt, smooth ; laß, lazy ; matt, faint ; nackt, naked ; rund, round ; stumpf, dull ; platt, flat ; satt, weary ; schlaff, slack.* Derivatives never change their vowels ; as, *lasterhaft, vicious ; lasterhafter, more vicious ; der lasterhafteste, most vicious.*

Recapitulatory Exercises on the Adjectives.

I.

Die Natur zeigt uns schönere Gegenstände als die Kunst.
 Die bergichten Gegenden sind angenehmer als die ebenen.
 Kleine Fürsten sind glücklicher als große Könige.

Die Wolle der sächsischen Schaafse ist feiner als die Wolle
 der englischen Schaafse.

Die Mandeln haben einen feinern Geschmack als die Nüsse.

Die unüberwindliche Flotte der Spanier hielt einen außerordentlichen Sturm aus.

Der reichste Mensch ist nicht immer der glücklichste, und
 der ärmste ist nicht immer der unglücklichste; sondern der tugendhafteste ist der glücklichste unter den Menschen.

Die Tugend ist das höchste Gut des Menschen, der größte Mensch aber, hat nicht immer dieses höchste Gut, und er ist daher nicht immer unsrer Achtung der würdigste.

Die Figur des Zirkels ist die vollkommenste unter den geometrischen Figuren.

die Natur, nature.

zeigt, exhibits.

uns, to us.

schön, fine.

der Gegenstand, object.

als, than.

die Kunst, art.

bergicht, mountainous.

die Gegend, the countries.

angenehm, pleasant.

die Ebene, the plain.

klein, little.

der Fürst, the prince.

sind, are.

glücklich, happy.

groß, great.

der König, the king.

die Wolle, wool.

sächsische, Saxon.

das Schaaf, the sheep.

fein, fine.

englisch, English.

die Mandel, the almond.

haben, have.

der Geschmack, the taste.

die Nuß, the nut.

unüberwindlich, invincible.

die Flotte, the fleet.

der Spanier, the Spaniard.

hielt aus, endured.

außerordentlich, extraordinary.

der Sturm, the storm.

reich, rich.

Mensch, man.

nicht immer, not always.

unglücklich, unhappy.

sondern, but.

tugendhaft, virtuous.

glücklich, happy.

arm, poor.

hoch, high.

höchste, supreme.

das Gut, the good.

aber, but.

hat nicht immer, has not always.	die Figur, the figure.
dieses, this.	der Birkel, the circle.
daher, therefore.	vollkommen, complete.
würdig, worthy.	unter, among.
unsrer, of our.	geometrisch, geometrical.
die Achtung, esteem.	

SECOND LESSON.

Die Jahre der Jugend sind die angenehmsten und zugleich die kostbarsten. Dies ist die Bemerkung der weisesten Menschen, daher muß der Knabe und der Jüngling diese Jahre aufs beste benutzen, er muß seinen möglichsten Fleiß anwenden, um sich die wichtigsten Kenntnisse zu erwerben, seinen Sitten die möglichste Politur zu geben, und sein Herz durch die besten Maximen zu bilden.

Die feinste List des Bösewichts, ist doch nicht der Geradheit des einfältigsten Bauern vorzuziehen.

Der schönste Tag des Winters ist nicht zu vergleichen mit einem schönen Tage des Frühlings.

Derjenige Staat ist der glücklichste, den ein weiser und gerechter Monarch regiert.

In einem solchen Staate gelten die gerechtesten Gesetze.

Die erhabenste Weisheit des berühmtesten Heiden, reicht doch nicht an die göttliche Weisheit Jesu.

das Jahr, the year.	um sich zu erwerben, in order to acquire.
die Jugend, youth.	wichtig, important.
angenehm, pleasant.	die Kenntnisse, knowledge.
zugleich, at the same time.	zu geben, to give.
kostbar, precious.	die möglichste Politur, the greatest polish possible.
dies, this.	seinen, his.
die Bemerkung, the remark.	die Sitten, the manners.
weise, wise.	zu bilden, to improve.
daher, therefore.	sein, his.
der Knabe, the boy.	das Herz, the heart.
der Jüngling, youth.	durch, by.
muß, must.	die Maxime, the maxim.
aufs beste benutzen, employ in the best manner.	fein, subtle.
anwenden, use.	die List, cunning.
möglichste, utmost.	der Bösewicht, villain.
Fleiß, assiduity.	

ist doch nicht vorzuziehen, is yet not to be preferred.	gerecht, just.
die Geradheit, the rectitude.	der Monarch, monarch.
einfältig, simple.	regiert, governs,
der Bauer, the peasant.	ein solcher, such.
der Tag, the day.	das Gesetz, the law.
der Winter, the winter.	gelten, are valid.
der Frühling, the spring.	erhaben, exalted.
ist nicht zu vergleichen, is not to be compared.	die Weisheit, wisdom.
mit, to.	berühmt, celebrated.
derjenige, that.	der Heide, heathen.
der Staat, state.	reicht doch nicht an, does not come up to.
	göttlich, divine.

THIRD LESSON.

Gold (*the gold*) is the most precious of metals, and yet not to be preferred to the useful iron.

English (*the English*) tin is the best.

(*The*) alabaster is the whitest stone.

Frederic the Second was a great warrior.

A polite man has not always the worth, which an honest man has.

The picture hangs in a (*the*) false light.

Scipio possessed all the virtues (*all virtues*) which are necessary for (*to*) a great commander.

We have not all equal talents.

One (*the one*) has a talent for mechanical labors, another (*the other*) for (*the*) poetry and the like.

The earth has high mountains, deep vallies, level fields, shady woods, and hollow caves.

Mining is a dangerous, troublesome and expensive business; without which however human (*the human*) society in these days cannot easily subsist.

Observe. Make the adjectives of the same gender, number and case as the substantives.

gold, Gold, *n.* 2.

is, ist.

precious, kostbar.

of, unter.

metal, Metal, *n.* 3. (*Dat.*)

and yet not, und doch nicht.

to be preferred, vorzuziehen.

useful, nützlich.

iron, Eisen, *n.* 1.

English, englisch.

tin, Zinn, *n.* 2.

alabaster, Alabaster, *m.* 1.

white, weiß.

stone, Stein, *m.* 2.

Frederic, Friederich.

second, zweite.

was, war.	for the, zur.
great, groß.	poetry, Dichtkunst.
warrior, Krieger, <i>m.</i> 1.	and the like, und so weiter.
polite, höflich.	earth, Erde, <i>f.</i> 3.
man, *Mann, <i>m.</i> 5.	high, *hoch.
has not always, hat nicht immer.	mountains, Berg, <i>m.</i> 2.
worth, Werth, <i>m.</i> 2.	deep, tief.
which, den or welchen.	valley, *Thal, <i>n.</i> 5.
honest, ehrlich.	shady, schattig.
picture, Gemählde, <i>n.</i> 1.	wood, *Wald, <i>n.</i> 5.
hangs, hängt.	cave, Höhle, <i>f.</i> 3.
in the, im.	mining, Grubenbau or Bergbau,
false, falsch.	<i>m.</i> 2.
light, Licht, <i>n.</i> 5.	dangerous, gefährlich.
Scipio, Scipio.	troublesome, mühsam.
possessed, besaß.	expensive, kostspielig.
all, alle.	business, Geschäft, <i>n.</i> 2.
virtue, Tugend, <i>f.</i> 3.	without, ohne.
which, die.	which, welches.
commander, Feldherr, <i>m.</i> 3.	however, doch.
we have not, wir haben nicht.	human, menschlich.
equal, gleich.	society, Gesellschaft, <i>f.</i> 3.
talent, Talent, <i>n.</i> 2.	in these days, in diesen Tagen.
talent, Anlage, <i>f.</i> 3.	cannot easily subsist, nicht wohl
mechanical, mechanisch.	bestehen kann.
labor, Arbeit, <i>f.</i> 3.	

FOURTH LESSON.

The father is more discreet than the son.

The cedar is higher than the willow.

The oak yields us the hardest wood, and is said to attain (to) the greatest age of all trees.

God is the most powerful being: therefore he can humble the most exalted man, and make the weakest into the strongest.

Iceland is one of the coldest countries, and those regions are the hottest, which lie under the equator.

The petitions of the poorest citizens ought to be heard.

The oldest persons do not remember such a severe frost.

The longer the better.

This is my youngest son.

That is the tamest bird.

He is the proudest man.

He has the strongest reasons.

father, *Vater, <i>m.</i> 1.	are, sind.
discreet, *klug.	hot, heiß.
than, als.	which, welche.
son, *Sohn, <i>m.</i> 2.	under the equator, unter dem Ä=
cedar, Zeder, <i>f.</i> 3.	quator.
willow, Weide, <i>f.</i> 3.	lie, liegen.
oak, *Eichbaum, <i>m.</i> 2.	petition, Bitte, <i>f.</i> 3.
yields, liefert.	poor, *arm.
us, uns.	citizen, Bürger, <i>m.</i> 1.
hard, *hart.	ought to be heard, sollten gehört
wood, *Holz, <i>n.</i> 5.	werden.
and is said, und soll.	old, *alt.
great, *hoch.	person, Person, <i>f.</i> 3.
age, Alter, <i>n.</i> 1.	do remember, erinnern sich.
of, unter.	such a, ein solcher.
all, allen.	severe, *stark.
tree, *Baum, <i>m.</i> 2. (<i>Dat.</i>)	frost, Frost, <i>m.</i> 2.
to attain to, erreichen.	the, je.
powerful, mächtig.	long, *lang.
being, Wesen.	the, je.
therefore he can, daher kann er.	good, gut.
exalted, erhaben.	this, dieß.
man, Mensch, <i>m.</i> 3.	my, mein.
humble, erniedrigen.	young, *jung.
weak, *schwach.	that, daß.
into, zum.	tame, zahm.
strong, *stark.	bird, *Vogel, <i>m.</i> 1.
to make, machen.	he is, er ist.
Iceland, Island.	proud, stolz.
cold, kalt.	he has, er hat.
country, *Land, <i>n.</i> 5.	strong, *stark.
region, Gegend, <i>f.</i> 3.	reason, *Grund, <i>m.</i> 2.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

§ III. The numbers are divided into cardinal, ordinal, proportional, distributive, and collective.

1. The cardinal numbers are as follows:

(Null or Zero, nothing.)	Acht, eight.
Ein or eins, one.	Neun, nine.
Zwei or zwey, two.	Zehen or zehn, ten.
Drei or drey, three.	Elf, eleven.
Vier, four.	Zwölf, twelve.
Fünf, five.	Dreizehn, thirteen.
Sechs, six.	Vierzehn, fourteen.
Sieben, seven.	Fünfzehn, fifteen.

Sechzehn, sixteen.	Achtzig, eighty, &c.
Siebenzehn, seventeen.	Neunzig, ninety, &c.
Achtzehn, eighteen.	Hundert, a hundred.
Neunzehn, nineteen.	Hundert und ein or eins, a hundred and one.
Zwanzig, twenty.	Hundert und zwei, a hun- dred and two, &c.
Ein und Zwanzig, one and twenty.	Zwei hundred, two hundred, &c.
Zwei und zwanzig, two and twenty, &c.	Tausend, a thousand.
Dreißig, thirty.	Zehn tausend, ten thousand.
Ein und dreißig, one and thirty, &c.	Eine Million, one million.
Vierzig, forty, &c.	Zwei Millionen, two millions.
Fünfzig, fifty, &c.	Drei Millionen, &c.
Sechzig, sixty, &c.	Ein tausend acht hundert und vier und zwanzig, 1824.
Siebenzig, seventy, &c.	

Some of the cardinal numbers are declinable, when put before substantives, as: *ein, eine, ein, one*; which is declined like the article *ein, a*: this numeral may be declined with the definite article before it; as, *Nom. der eine, die eine, das eine, the one*; *Gen. des einen, der einen, des einen, of the one, &c.*; and *einer, eine, eines or eins*, is declined like *der, die, das*. * *Zwei* and *Drei*, make *zweier* and *dreier*, in the genitive, *zweien* and *dreien* in the dative: most of the other numerals are declined in the dative only with *en*, as: *vieren, fünfen, &c.*

Observations on the cardinal Numbers.

1. *Ein* is added to the noun; as, *ein Mann, one man*; *eine Frau, one woman*; and in order to distinguish it from the article, it is pronounced with a stronger accent. *Einer* is used when the noun is understood; as, *hier ist einer, here is one*; (that is one man, or one hat understood) &c.; *hier ist eine, here is one*, (that is one woman) &c. *Einmal eins ist eins, once one is one*. *Haben sie ein Messer, have you a knife*; *hier ist eines, here is one*, (that is one knife.)

2. The numeral adjectives are converted into substantives, by the addition of *er, inn* or *in*; as, *ein Fünfziger, a man of fifty*; *eine Dreißigerin, a woman of thirty*.

* The cardinal number *zwei, two*, admits of three genders, but is seldom used in modern German; as, *Mas. zweien, Fem. zwei, Neut. zwei or zwey, two*.

The ordinal numbers are formed by adding *te* to the cardinal, except *der erste*, *the first*; *der dritte*, *the third*; but after the number nineteen *ste* is added, as:

Der erste, the first.	Der ein und zwanzigste, the one and twentieth.
Der zweite, the second.	Der zwei und zwanzigste, the two and twentieth.
Der dritte, the third.	Der drei und zwanzigste, the three and twentieth.
Der vierte, the fourth.	Der dreißigste, the thirtieth.
Der fünfte, the fifth.	Der ein und dreißigste, the one &c.
Der sechste, the sixth.	Der vierzigste, the fortieth.
Der siebente, the seventh.	Der fünfzigste, the fiftieth.
Der achte, the eighth.	Der sechzigste, the sixtieth.
Der neunte, the ninth.	Der siebenzigste or siebzigste, the seventieth.
Der zehnte, the tenth.	Der achtzigste, the eightieth.
Der elfte or eilfte, the eleventh.	Der neunzigste, the ninetieth.
Der zwölfte, the twelfth.	Der hundertste, the hundredth.
Der dreizehnte, the thirteenth.	Der zwei hundertste, the two hundredth.
Der vierzehnte, the fourteenth.	Der drei hundertste, the three &c.
Der funfzehnte, the fifteenth.	Der tausendste, the thousandth.
Der sechzehnte, the sixteenth.	Der zwei tausendste, the two thousandth.
Der siebenzehnte, the seventeenth.	Der drei tausendste, the three &c.
Der achtzehnte, the eighteenth.	
Der neunzehnte, the nineteenth.	
Der zwanzigste, the twentieth.	

In compound numbers, the last only assumes the shape of an ordinal; as, *der tausend acht hundert und vier und zwanzigste*, the one thousand eight hundred and twenty fourth.

These adjectives may be declined in all forms; 1st with the definite article, as:

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Der zweite,	die zweite,	das zweite, the second.
G. Des zweiten,	der zweiten,	des zweiten, of the second, &c.

Der andere, *the other*, is used as synonymous with der zweite, where there are only two persons or things spoken of.

2. With the indefinite article, as :

N. Ein zweiter, eine zweite, ein zweites, a second.

G. eines zweiten, einer zweiten, eines zweiten, of a second, &c.

The Germans always say ein und zwanzigste, *one and twentieth* ; zwei und dreißigste, *two and thirtieth*, and the like ; but never as in English, zwanzig erste, *twenty first* ; dreißig zweite, *thirty second*, &c.

Partitive and fractional numbers are formed by a composition of the ordinal numbers, with various words or letters.

1st. With halb, thus ;

*Anderthalb (for zweitehalb,) one and a half.

Drittehalb, two and a half.

Vierthehalb, three and a half.

Fünftehalb, four and a half.

Sechstehalb, five and a half.

Siebentehalb or siebtehalb, six and a half.

Zehntehalb, nine and a half, &c.

Examples. Vor anderthalb Jahren, *a year and a half ago* ; in drittehalb Stunden, *in two hours and a half* ; but in speaking of the hour of the day, the Germans say halb eins, *half past twelve* ; halb zwei, *half past one*, &c.

2nd. With theil, as ;

Das Drittheil, the third or the third part.

Das Viertel, the quarter or fourth part.

Das Fünftheil, the fifth or fifth part.

Das Viertel Hundert, or das Viertel Hundert, the quarter of a hundred, &c.

Similar modes of expression are derived from the ordinals, by adding l to the nominative, making the last syllable tel, which is only a contraction of theil ; as, from der dritte, *the*

* This mode of compounding seldom exceeds zwölftehalb, *eleven and a half*.

third, is formed ein Drittel, *a third part*, or *one third*; from der vierte, ein Viertel, *a fourth part*, or *quarter*. In the same manner,

Ein Fünftel, *a fifth*, or *one fifth*.

Ein Sechstel, $\frac{1}{6}$ th.

Ein Zehntel, $\frac{1}{10}$ th.

Ein Zwanzigstel, $\frac{1}{20}$ th. &c. So in the plural, as ;

Zwei Drittel, *two thirds*.

Drei Viertel, $\frac{3}{4}$ ths.

Vier Siebentel, $\frac{4}{7}$ ths. &c. These are regarded as substantives, and of the neuter gender; but theil, when used separately, is masculine.

2. Numerals of proportion and distribution are :

Einfach or einfältig, *single*.

Zweifach or zweifältig, *double*.

Dreifach or dreifältig, *treble*.

Bierfach or vierfältig, *fourfold*, &c.

Hundertfach, *centuple*, or *a hundredfold*.

Tausendfach, *a thousandfold*, &c.

Observe. The above numeral adjectives, in fach or fältig may be regularly declined.

Die Hälfte, *the half*.

*Einmal, *once*.

Zweimal, *twice*.

Dreimal, *thrice*, or *three times*.

Biermal, *four times*, &c.

Erstlich or erstens, *firstly*, or *in the first place*.

Zweitens, or zum andern, *secondly*.

Drittens, or zum dritten, *thirdly*.

Viertens, or zum vierten, *fourthly*, &c.

Einzeln, *singly*, or ein und ein, *one by one*.

Zwei und zwei, *two and two*, or *two by two*.

* Some of these words are numeral adverbs, but are inserted here on account of their close connexion with adjectives.

Drei und drei, three and three, &c.

Einerlei, of one sort or the same.

Zweierlei, of two sorts, or two different things, &c.

Paarweise, in pairs, &c.

3. The collective numbers are :

Ein Paar, a pair, few, or couple.

Ein Duzend, a dozen.

Eine Mandel, a fifteen, &c.

The English word *time*, or *times*, is to be expressed by the termination *mal, if in composition with other words; as,

Diesesmal, this time.

Einandermal, another time.

Manchmal, many a time.

Vielfachmal, many times.

Oftmal, often times.

Wie vielfachmal, how many times;

and also in multiplying; as, zwei mal zwei sind vier, twice two are four, (that is literally two times two are four); drei mal drei sind neun, three times three are nine, &c.

Recapitulatory Exercises on the Numerals, &c.

FIRST LESSON.

One and one make two.

Ten times ten make a hundred.

Six thousand six hundred and sixty-six men composed a legion with the Romans.

It is said that in order to be able to write (*the*) Chinese, the common man has occasion to know eighty thousand letters or characters, but the learned (*man*) a hundred and sixty thousand.

Since the birth of Christ, a thousand eight hundred and twenty four years have elapsed.

Germany was divided into ten circles.

America was discovered by Christopher Columbus in the fifteenth century.

(*The*) spring commences the twenty-first of March, (*the*) summer the twenty-first of June, (*the*) autumn the twenty-first of September, and (*the*) winter the twenty-first of December.

* The word mal in old German signified *time* or *times*.

December is the twelfth month in the year.

Sunday (*the Sunday*) is the first day in the week, (*the*) Monday the second, (*the*) Tuesday the third, (*the*) Wednesday the fourth, (*the*) Thursday the fifth, (*the*) Friday the sixth, (*the*) Saturday the seventh and last.

Vienna the capital of Austria, lies in the sixteenth degree of longitude and forty-eighth degree of latitude.

make, macht.

times, mal.

men, Männer, *m.* 5.

composed with the Romans a
legion, machten bei den Rö-
mern eine Legion aus.

it is said, man sagt.

that in order to be able to write
Chinese, daß um chinesisch
schreiben zu können.

common, gemein.

letter, Buchstab, *m.* 3.

to know, kennen.

occasion has, nöthig habe.

but, aber.

learned, gelehrt.

since, seit.

Christ, Christus.

(*Vide observations on the de-
clension of proper names.*)

birth, Geburt, *f.* 3.

have, find.

year, Jahr, *n.* 2.

elapsed, verflossen.

Germany, Deutschland.

was, war.

into, in.

circle, Kreis, *m.* 2.

divided, getheilt.

America, Amerika.

was, wurde.

by, von.

Christopher Columbus, Chri-
stoph Columb.

century, Jahrhundert.

discovered, entdeckt.

spring, Frühling, *m.* 2.

commences, fängt an.

March, März, *m.* 2.

summer, Sommer, *m.* 1.

June, Junius, *m.* (Juni, of June.)

autumn, Herbst, *m.* 2.

September, September, *m.* 1.

winter, Winter, *m.* 1.

December, December, *m.* 1.

in the, im.

Sunday, Sonntag, *m.* 2.

Monday, Montag, *m.* 2.

Tuesday, Dienstag, *m.* 2.

Wednesday, Mittwoch, *f.* 3.

Thursday, Donnerstag, *m.* 2.

Friday, Freitag, *m.* 2.

Saturday, Sonnabend, *m.* 2.

last, letzte.

Vienna, Wien.

capital, Hauptstadt, *f.* 2.

of, von.

Austria, Oestreich.

lies, liegt.

longitude, Länge, *f.* 3.

latitude, Breite, *f.* 3.

SECOND LESSON.

Ferdinand Magellan was the first who sailed round the world, in the year one thousand five hundred and nineteen; his ship came back again, after a voyage of three years and twenty-nine days.

The polar circles are twenty-three degrees and a half (*twenty-three and a half degrees*) distant from each pole.

In regard to the warmth and cold on the earth, five zones have been admitted, (*one has admitted in regard upon the warmth, &c.*)

About two thousand stars have been reckoned visible to the naked eye, (*one has about two thousand visible stars with naked eyes reckoned.*)

We must first learn to count, then to add, thirdly to subtract, fourthly to multiply, and fifthly to divide.

who, der.	cold, Kälte, <i>f.</i> 3.
round, um.	on, auf.
world, Welt, <i>f.</i> 3. (<i>Acc.</i>)	earth, Erdboden, <i>m.</i> 1.
sailed, schiffte.	zone, Zone, <i>f.</i> 3.
in the, im.	admitted, angenommen.
year, Jahr, <i>n.</i> 2.	with, mit.
ship, Schiff, <i>n.</i> 2.	naked, bloß.
came back again, kam wieder zurück.	eye, Auge, <i>m.</i> 3.
after, nach.	about, etwa, or ungefähr.
voyage, Reise, <i>f.</i> 3. (<i>Dat.</i>)	visible, sichtbar.
of, von.	star, Stern, <i>n.</i> 2.
polar circle, Polar Birkel, <i>m.</i> 1.	reckoned, gezählt.
degree, Grad, <i>m.</i> 2. (<i>Sing.</i>)	we must, man muß.
from each, von jedem.	to count, zählen.
pole, Pol, <i>m.</i> 2.	learn, lernen.
distant, entfernt.	then, dann.
one has, man hat.	to add, addiren.
in regard to, in Rücksicht auf, <i>f.</i> 3.	to subtract, subtrahiren.
warmth, Wärme, <i>f.</i> 3.	to multiply, multipliciren.
	to divide, dividiren.

CHAP. V.

PRONOUNS, Fürwörter.

There are six kinds of pronouns, viz. personal, possessive, demonstrative, interrogative, relative, and indefinite.

In German as in English there are five personal pronouns, viz. *ich, I; du, thou; er, he; sie, she; es, it*; with their plurals, *wir, we; ihr, you; sie, they*.

§ I. The personal pronouns are declined as follows :

First Person.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Ich, I.	N. Wir, we.
G. Meiner, of me.	G. Unser, of us.
D. Mir, to me.	D. Uns, to us.
A. Mich, me.	A. Uns, us.

Second Person.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Du, thou.	N. Ihr, you.
G. Deiner, of thee.	G. Euer, of you.
D. Dir, to thee.	D. Euch, to you.
A. Dich, thee.	A. Euch, you.

Third Person.

<i>Singular.</i>		
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Er, he.	sie, she.	es, it.
G. Seiner, of him.	ihrer, of her.	seiner, of it.
D. Ihm, to him.	ihr, to her.	ihm, to it.
A. Ihn, him.	sie, her.	es, it.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Sie, they, (or Sie, you.)
G. Ihrer, of them, (or Ihrer, of your.)
D. Ihnen, to them, (or Ihnen, to you.)
A. Sie, them, (or Sie, you.)

The personal pronouns, when employed as reflectives, are declined in the following manner :

First Person.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	N.
G. Meiner (mein,) of myself.	G. Unser, of ourselves.
D. Mir, to myself.	D. Uns, to ourselves.
A. Mich, myself,	A. Uns, ourselves.

Second Person.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	N.
G. Deiner (dein,) of thyself.	G. Euer, of yourselves.
D. Dir, to thyself.	D. Euch, to yourselves.
A. Dich, thyself.	A. Euch, yourselves.

Third Person.

<i>Singular.</i>		
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. ....	.....	.....
G. Seiner (sein,) of himself.	ihrer (ihr) of herself.	seiner (sein,) of itself.
D. Sich, to himself.	sich, to herself.	sich, to itself.
A. Sich, himself.	sich, herself.	sich, itself.

Plural for the three Genders.

N.
G. Ihrer, of themselves.
D. Sich, to themselves.
* A. Sich, themselves.

§ II. *Possessive Pronouns.*

Possessive pronouns are either conjunctive, or absolute.
The conjunctive possessive pronouns are as follow :

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas. Fem. and Neut.</i>
Mein,	meine,	mein,	meine, my.
Dein,	deine,	dein,	deine, thy.
Sein,	seine,	sein,	seine, his, its.
Ihr,	ihre,	ihr,	ihre, her.
Unser,	unsere,	unser,	unsere, our.
Euer,	euere or eure,	euer,	euere, your.
Ihr,	ihre,	ihr,	ihre, their.
Ihr,	ihre,	ihr,	ihre, your.

Observe. These pronouns are declined like the article ein, (*a*), in the singular and like the adjective gute, (*good*), in the plural ; as,

* These pronouns are used with reflective verbs, to express what we do to ourselves ; examples, ich fleide mich, I dress myself ; du liebst dich, thou lovest thyself ; er liebt sich, he loves himself, &c.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>for the three Gend.</i>
N. Mein,	meine,	mein,	meine, my.
G. Meines,	meiner,	meines,	meiner, of my.
D. Meinem,	meiner,	meinem,	meinen, to my.
A. Meinen,	meine,	mein,	meine, my.

These possessive pronouns are called conjunctive, because they are joined to substantives, with which they must agree, in gender, number, and case. They are declined as follow.

Mein, with a masculine noun, is thus declined :

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Mein Vater, my father.	N. Meine Väter, my fathers.
G. Meines Vaters, of my father.	G. Meiner Väter, of my fathers.
D. Meinem Vater, to my father.	D. Meinen Vätern, to my fathers.
A. Meinen Vater, my father.	A. Meine Väter, my fathers.

Mein, with a feminine noun, is thus declined :

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Meine Mutter, my mother.	N. Meine Mütter, my mothers.
G. Meiner Mutter, of my mother.	G. Meiner Mütter, of my mothers.
D. Meiner Mutter, to my mother.	D. Meinen Müttern, to my mothers.
A. Meine Mutter, my mother.	A. Meine Mütter, my mothers.

Mein, with a neuter noun, is thus declined :

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Mein Buch, my book.	N. Meine Bücher, my books.
G. Meines Buches, of my book.	G. Meiner Bücher, of my books.
D. Meinem Buche, to my book.	D. Meinen Büchern, to my books.
A. Mein Buch, my book.	A. Meine Bücher, my books.

So decline :

Meine Base, <i>f.</i> my aunt or cousin.	Eure Verwandtin, <i>f.</i> your female relation.
Sein Vater, <i>m.</i> his father.	Unser Bruder, <i>m.</i> our brother.
Deine Mutter, <i>f.</i> thy mother.	Mein Better, <i>m.</i> my cousin.
Seine Mutter, <i>f.</i> his mother.	Unsere Schwester, <i>f.</i> our sister.
Ihre Mutter, <i>f.</i> her mother.	Ihre Nichte, <i>f.</i> their niece.
Ihre Mutter, <i>f.</i> your mother.	Ihr Neffe, <i>m.</i> their nephew.
Ihr Vater, <i>m.</i> their father.	Sein Nachbar, <i>m.</i> his neighbour.
Ihr Kind, <i>n.</i> her child.	Seine Nachbarin, <i>f.</i> his female neighbour.
Ihr Kind, <i>n.</i> your child.	Ihr Nachbar, <i>m.</i> her neighbour.
Sein Kind, <i>n.</i> his child.	Ihre Nachbarin, <i>f.</i> her neighbour.
Ihr Better, their male cousin.	Unser Vaterland, <i>n.</i> our country.
Ihre Cousine, <i>f.</i> their female cousin.	Euer Buch, <i>n.</i> your book.
*Euer Verwandter, <i>m.</i> your male relation.	Ihr Herz, <i>n.</i> your heart.
	Ihr Glück, <i>n.</i> their fortune.
	Ihr Glück, <i>n.</i> her fortune.

Possessive Pronouns Absolute.

They are called absolute possessive pronouns, because they stand for some noun, which precedes them, expressed or understood, and, with which they must agree in gender, number and case. They are declined like *der gute*, in the following manner :

Singular.

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Der meinige,	die meinige,	daß meinige, mine.
G. Des meinigen,	der meinigen,	des meinigen, of mine.
D. Dem meinigen,	der meinigen,	dem meinigen, to mine.
A. Den meinigen,	die meinige,	daß meinige, mine.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Die meinigen, mine.
G. Der meinigen, of mine.
D. Den meinigen, to mine.
A. Die meinigen, mine.

* The pronoun, *ihr, m. ihre, f. ihr, n. ihre, (Pl.) her, your, their*, agree with the possessor, but the termination must agree with the thing possessed. *Euer*, is seldom used except to inferiors; and *Ihr*, when it is used for *your*, is written with a capital.

So decline the following :

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Der deinige,	die deinige,	daß deinige, thine.
Der seinige,	die seinige,	daß seinige, his, its.
Der ihrige,	die ihrige,	daß ihrige, hers.
Der unsrige,	die unsrige,	daß unsrige, ours.
Der eurige,	die eurige,	daß eurige, yours.
Der ihrige,	die ihrige,	daß ihrige, theirs.
Der Ihrige,	die Ihrige,	daß Ihrige, yours.

Plural.

Die deinigen, thine.
 Die seinigen, his, its.
 Die ihrigen, hers.
 Die unsrigen, ours.
 Die eurigen, yours.
 Die ihrigen, theirs.
 Die Ihrigen, yours.

The substantive *Hut*, *hat*, with the conjunctive possessive pronoun before, and the absolute possessive pronoun, *der meinige*, after, is thus declined :

- N. Sein Hut und der meinige, his hat and mine.
 G. Seines Hutes und des meinigen, of his hat and mine.
 D. Seinem Hute und dem meinigen, to his hat and mine.
 A. Seinen Hut und den meinigen, his hat and mine.

Plural.

- N. Seine Hüte und die meinigen, his hats and mine.
 G. Seiner Hüte und der meinigen, of his hats and mine.
 D. Seinen Hüten und den meinigen, to his hats and mine.
 A. Seine Hüte und die meinigen, his hats and mine.

So decline :

Mein Freund und der seinige, my friend and his.
 Seine Freundin und die meinige, his female friend and mine.
 Ihr Freund und der *Ihrige, her friend and yours.

* When *Ihr* and *Ihrige* are employed for the second person *your*, they are always written with a capital : *Ihr* and *Ihrige*, have three different meanings and are Englished by *her*, *your*, *their*. *Euer* and *eurige*, are seldom used, except to servants and people of low condition.

Ihr Vater und der ihrige, your father and hers.
 Ihr Bruder und der deinige, their brother and thine.
 Mein Bruder und der eurige, my brother and yours.
 Meine Schwester und die seinige, my sister and his.
 Seine Schwester und die ihrige, his sister and hers.
 Ihre Mutter und die meinige, her mother and mine.
 Ihre Mutter und die ihrige, your mother and hers.
 Mein Buch und das seinige, my book and his.
 Sein Vaterland und das Ihrige, his country and yours.
 Unser Vaterland und das ihrige, our country and theirs.
 Ihr Vaterland und das unsrige, their country and ours.

The Germans sometimes make use of the following possessive pronouns absolute, instead of the preceding.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural</i>
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>for the three Genders.</i>
Meiner,	meine,	meines,	meine, mine.
Deiner,	deine,	deines,	deine, thine.
Seiner,	seine,	seines,	seine, his, its.
Ihrer,	ihre,	ihres,	ihre, hers.
Unser,	unsere,	unsere,	unsere, ours.
Eurer,	eure,	eure,	eure, yours.
Ihrer,	ihre,	ihres,	ihre, theirs.
<i>or,</i>			

Der meine, die meine, das meine, die meine, mine.
 Der deine, &c. They correspond to the French pronouns, *le mien, le tien, &c.*

These pronouns like the former, are used without a noun, when the same is understood; as, *das ist mein Hut*, that is my hat; *no*, it is mine, *nein, es ist meiner*, or *der meine*, or *der meinige*. The latter mode of expression is most general, *viz. es ist der meinige*, it is mine.

The pronouns, *meiner, mine; deiner, thine; &c.* are declined like *guter, gute, gutes; as,*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural</i>
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>for the three Genders.</i>
N. Meiner,	meine,	meines,	meine, mine.
G. Meines,	meiner,	meines,	meiner, of mine.
D. Meinem,	meiner,	meinem,	meinen, to mine.
A. Meinen,	meine,	meines,	meine, mine.

So decline, *deiner, thine; seiner, his, its, &c.*

§ III. *Demonstrative Pronouns.*

The demonstrative pronouns are those which point out the persons, or things spoken of. They are declined in the following manner; like *guter*, or the article *der*.

Singular.

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Dieser,	diese,	dieses or dieß, this.
G. Dieses,	dieser,	dieses, of this.
D. Diesem,	dieser,	diesem, to this.
A. Diesen,	diese,	dieses, this.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Diese, these.
G. Dieser, of these.
D. Diesen, to these.
A. Diese, these.

So decline the following :

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Jener,	jene,	jenes, that ;	jene, those.
Selbiger,	selbige,	selbiges,	selbige, the same.
Solcher,	solche,	solches,	solche, such.

Dieser, with a masculine noun, is thus declined :

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Dieser Knabe, this boy.	N. Diese Knaben, these boys.
G. Dieses Knaben, of this boy.	G. Dieser Knaben, of these boys.
D. Diesem Knaben, to this boy.	D. Diesen Knaben, to these boys.
A. Diesen Knaben, this boy.	A. Diese Knaben, these boys.

Dieser, with a feminine noun, is thus declined :

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Diese Magd, this (maid) servant.	N. Diese Mägde, these servants.
G. Dieser Magd, of this servant.	G. Dieser Mägde, of these servants.
D. Dieser Magd, to this servant.	D. Diesen Mägden, to these servants.
A. Diese Magd, this servant.	A. Diese Mägde, these servants.

Dieser, with a neuter noun, is thus declined :

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Dieses Kind, this child.	N. Diese Kinder, these children.
G. Dieses Kindes, of this child.	G. Dieser Kinder, of these children.
D. Diesem Kinde, to this child.	D. Diesen Kindern, to these children.
A. Dieses Kind, this child.	A. Diese Kinder, these children.

So decline :

Jenes Mädchen, <i>n.</i> that girl.	Solche Person, <i>f.</i> such a person.
Jener Bruder, <i>m.</i> that brother.	Jenes Schiff, <i>n.</i> that ship.
Dieses Weib, <i>n.</i> this woman.	Dieses Thor, <i>n.</i> this gate.
Diese Frau, <i>f.</i> this woman or wife.	Jene Frucht, <i>f.</i> that fruit.
	Solches Wetter, <i>n.</i> such weather.

The demonstrative pronoun *der*, *that*, is thus declined, like the article *der*, *the* ; except in the genitive case.

<i>Singular.</i>		
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Der,	die,	daß, that.
G. Deß, or dessen,	der, or deren,	deß, or dessen, of that.
D. Dem,	der,	dem, to that.
A. Den,	die,	daß, that.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Die, those.
G. Derer, or deren, of those.
D. Denen, to those.
A. Die, those.

The pronoun *derjenige*, *he that*, is thus declined, like *der* *meinige*.

<i>Singular.</i>		
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Derjenige,	diejenige,	daßjenige, he, she, it or that.
G. Deßjenigen,	derjenigen,	deßjenigen, of him, her, it or that.
D. Demjenigen,	derjenigen,	denjenigen, to him, her, it or that.
A. Denjenigen,	diejenige,	daßjenige, him, her, it or that.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Diejenigen, they, or those.

G. Derjenigen, of them, or of those.

D. Denjenigen, to them, or to those.

A. Diejenigen, them, or those.

So decline :

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Derselbe,	dieselbe,	dasselbe,	dieselben, the same, or he, she, it.
derselbige,	dieselbige,	dasselbige,	dieselbigen, the &c.

*Derjenige, with a masculine noun, is thus declined :

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Derjenige Baum, that tree.	N. Diejenigen Bäume, those trees.
G. Desjenigen Baumes, of that tree.	G. Derjenigen Bäume, of those trees.
D. Demjenigen Baume, to that tree.	D. Denjenigen Bäumen, to those trees.
A. Denjenigen Baum, that tree.	A. Diejenigen Bäume, those trees.

Derjenige, with a feminine noun, is thus declined :

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Diejenige Wand, that wall.	N. Diejenigen Wände, those walls.
G. Derjenigen Wand, of that wall.	G. Derjenigen Wände, of those walls.
D. Derjenigen Wand, to that wall.	D. Denjenigen Wänden, to those walls.
A. Diejenige Wand, that wall.	A. Diejenigen Wände, those walls.

* Derjenige is seldom used in conjunction with nouns, it answers to the French celui, *that* ; as, die Kutsche des Königs, und diejenige (or die) der Königin, le carrosse du roi et celui de la reine, the coach of the king, and *that* of the queen. Der and derjenige are sometimes used as relatives.

Derjenige, with a neuter noun is thus declined :

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Dasjenige Kreuz, that cross.	N. Diejenigen Kreuze, those crosses.
G. Desjenigen Kreuzes, of that cross.	G. Derjenigen Kreuze, of those crosses.
D. Demjenigen Kreuze, to that cross.	D. Denjenigen Kreuzen, to those crosses.
A. Dasjenige Kreuz, that cross.	A. Diejenigen Kreuze, those crosses.

So decline the following :

Derfelbe Mann, <i>m.</i> the same man.	Dieselbe Tugend, <i>f.</i> the same virtue.
Derjenige Mann, <i>m.</i> that man.	Dasjenige Buch, <i>n.</i> that book.
Diejenige Tugend, <i>f.</i> that virtue.	Dasselbe Buch, <i>n.</i> the same book.

Observe. There are some invariable pronouns, which are formed by adding *selbst*, *selbsten*, or *selber*, after any of the personal pronouns, &c.; as,

Ich selbst, or selbsten, or selber,	I myself.
Er selbst,	he himself.
Wir selbst,	we ourselves.
Gott selbst,	God himself, &c.

§ IV. Of Relative Pronouns.

Relative pronouns relate to some word or phrase going before, which word or phrase is called the antecedent.

They are declined in the following manner :

<i>Singular.</i>		
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Der,	die,	daß, who, which, or that.
G. Dessen, deß,	deren, der,	dessen, deß, whose, of whom, or of which.
D. Dem,	der,	dem, to whom, or to which.
A. Den,	die,	daß, whom, or which.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Die, who, which, or that.

G. Deren, whose, of whom, or of which.

D. Denen, den, to whom, or to which.

A. Die, whom, or which.

Welcher, who, or which, is thus declined :

Singular.

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Welcher,	welche,	welches, who, which, or that.
G. Welches,	welcher,	welches, of whom, or of which.
D. Welchem,	welcher,	welchem, to whom, or to which.
A. Welchen,	welche,	welches, whom, or which.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Welche, who, which, or that.

G. Welcher, of whom, or of which.

D. Welchen, to whom, or to which.

A. Welche, whom, or which.

Wer, who ; and was, what, as relatives, are thus declined :

Sing. and Plural.

<i>Mas. Fem. and Neuter.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Wer, who, whoever, which, he who, &c.	N. Was, what.
G. Wessen, wess, of whom, of whomsoever.	G. Wessen, wess, of what.
D. Wem, to whom, to whomsoever.	D. Wem, to what.
A. Wen, whom, whomsoever.	A. Was, what.

Observe. Wer and was, are sometimes relative and sometimes interrogative pronouns. So, which, is indeclinable.

Wer, is sometimes Englished by *he who*, as, wer mich liebt, der ist mein Freund, he who loves me, is my friend. Was, is sometimes Englished by *that which* ; as, was ich gesagt habe, ist wahr, *that which*, or *what* I have said, is true.

§ V. Of Interrogative Pronouns.

Interrogative pronouns are used in asking questions.

The interrogative pronouns are, wer? *who*? was? *what*? welcher? *which*? was für? *what*? or was für ein? *what sort of*? They are declined in the following manner :

Singular and Plural.

<i>Mas. Fem. and Neut.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Wer? who?	N. Was? what?
G. Wessen? wess? whose? or of whom?	G. Von was, or wovon? of what?
D. Wem? to whom?	D. Zu was, or wozu? to what?
A. Wen? whom?	A. Was? what?

Welcher, which, though a relative pronoun, is frequently used as an interrogative; it is declined in the following manner:

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural</i>
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>for the three Gend.</i>
N. Welcher?	welche?	welches?	welche? which?
G. Welches?	welcher?	welches?	welcher? of which?
D. Welchem?	welcher?	welchem?	welchen? to which?
A. Welchen?	welche?	welches?	welche? which?

Was für ein? what? or what sort of? is thus declined:

<i>Singular.</i>		
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. Was für ein?	was für eine?	was für eins? what? or what sort of?
G. Was für eines?	was für einer?	was für eines? of what?
D. Was für einem?	was für einer?	was für einem? to what?
A. Was für einen?	was für eine?	was für eins? what?

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Was für? what? or what sort of?

No genitive.

D. Was für? to what?

A. Was für? what?

§ VI. *Indefinite Pronouns.*

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS are so called, because they refer to things in an indefinite manner, some are numeral;

as, *einer*, *one*; *keiner*, *no one*, or *none*, &c.; others distributive; as, *jeder*, *each*, *every*, &c.

These pronouns are generally declined like adjectives. *Keiner*, *no one*, or *none*; is thus declined:

Singular.

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. <i>Keiner</i> ,	<i>keine</i> ,	<i>keines</i> , no one, or neither.
G. <i>Keines</i> ,	<i>keiner</i> ,	<i>keines</i> , of no one.
D. <i>Keinem</i> ,	<i>keiner</i> ,	<i>keinem</i> , to no one.
A. <i>Keinen</i> ,	<i>keine</i> ,	<i>keines</i> , no one.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. <i>Keine</i> , none.
G. <i>Keiner</i> , of none.
D. <i>Keinen</i> , to none.
A. <i>Keine</i> , none.

Observe. *kein*, *no*, is declined like the article *ein*; as. (*M.*) *kein*, (*F.*) *keine*, (*N.*) *kein*, &c.

So decline the following, like *keiner*.

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Mancher</i> ,	<i>manche</i> ,	<i>manches</i> , many a one.
<i>Solcher</i> ,	<i>solche</i> ,	<i>solches</i> , such.
<i>Einiger</i> ,	<i>einige</i> ,	<i>einiges</i> , some, or any.
<i>Einziger</i> ,	<i>einzig</i> ,	<i>einziges</i> , only.
<i>Jeder</i> ,	<i>jede</i> ,	<i>jedes</i> , every, or each.
<i>Jedweder</i> ,	<i>jedwede</i> ,	<i>jedwedes</i> , every.
<i>Keiner von bei-</i> <i>den</i> ,	<i>keine von bei-</i> <i>den</i> ,	<i>keines von beiden</i> , neither.
* <i>Einer von bei-</i> <i>den</i> ,	<i>eine von bei-</i> <i>den</i> ,	<i>eines von beiden</i> , either.
<i>Einer</i> ,	<i>eine</i> ,	<i>eines</i> , a person, some one, or one.

* *Einer von beiden*, *either*; and *einer*, *some one*, or *one*, are indeclinable in the plural.

Plural for the three Genders.

Manche, many, many a one.

Solche, such.

Einige, some, or any.

Einzige, only.

Jede, every, or each.

Jedwede, every.

Keine von beiden, neither.

Beide, *both*, and alle, *all*, are thus declined in the plural number only.

Plural.

N. Beide, both.

G. Beider, of both.

D. Beiden, to both.

A. Beide, both.

N. *Alle, all, every.

G. Aller, of all.

D. Allen, to all.

A. Alle, all.

Some of these pronouns, may be declined as adjectives, with ein or der.

Ein jeder, *each*, is thus declined in the singular number only.

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Ein jeder,	eine jede,	ein jedes, each, or every one.
G. Eines jeden,	einer jeden,	eines jeden, of each.
D. Einem jeden,	einer jeden,	einem jeden, to each.
A. Einen jeden,	eine jede,	ein jedes, each.

Der eine, *the one*, is thus declined:

Singular.

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Der eine,	die eine,	daß eine, the one.
G. Des einen,	der einen,	des einen, of the one.
D. Dem einen,	der einen,	dem einen, to the one.
A. Den einen,	die eine,	daß eine, the one.

* Alle, when used without a noun, becomes alles.

Plural for the three Genders.

N. Die einen, the ones.

G. Der einen, of the ones.

D. Den einen, to the ones.

A. Die einen, the ones.

So decline :

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Ein *jedweder,	eine jedwede,	ein jedwedes, every.
Ein andrer,	eine andre,	ein andres, another.
Der andre,	die andre,	das andre, the other.
Ein einziger,	eine einzige,	ein einziges, an only one.
Der einzige,	die einzige,	das einzige, the only one.
Ein einiger,	eine einige,	ein einiges, an only one.
Der einige,	die einige,	das einige, the only one.
Ein jeglicher,	eine jegliche,	ein jegliches, any, every one.

The substantive pronouns, *Jemand*, *some*, or *any body* ; *Niemand*, *nobody* ; *Jederman*, *every body* ; are declined as follow ; in the singular only.

N. *Jemand*, some, or any body.G. *Jemandes*, of some, or any body.D. *Jemandem*, to some, or any body.A. *Jemanden*, some, or any body.N. *Niemand*, nobody.G. *Niemandes*, of nobody.D. *Niemandem*, to nobody.A. *Niemanden*, nobody.N. *Jedermann*, every body.G. *Jedermannes*, of every body.D. *Jedermannem*, to every body.A. *Jedermann*, every body.

Man, *one*, *we*, *people*, *they*, &c. ; like the French pronoun *on*, is used only in the third person singular, and is indeclinable.

* *Jedweder*, is generally used without the article, and is then declined like *jeder*, or *keiner*.

Recapitulatory Exercises on all the Pronouns.

FIRST LESSON.

Wir sind Menschen und wir sind sterblich.

Thoren, die ihr seyd, indem ihr hoffet, daß ihr ohne euch Mühe zu geben, gelehrt und weise werden könnet.

Socrates sagte oft zu seinen Freunden: mein Leben ist mir nicht so schätzbar als die Tugend.

Unser Körper ist hinfällig, aber unsre Seele wird ewig leben.

Mein Geschmack ist nicht der deinige, und dein Geschmack ist nicht der meinige; denn ich finde Vergnügung an Gemälden aus der Niederländischen Schule und du an Gemälden aus der Italiänischen.

Woher dieser Unterschied? da doch sonst meine Neigung mit der deinigen beinahe ganz übereinstimmt.

Ein jeder schöpft aus der Quelle seiner Leidenschaften, entweder sein Glück oder Unglück.

Ich zweifle daß jemand die Menschen besser gekannt habe als Horaz.

Jedes Land hat seine Gebräuche.

Die Schwachheit ist ein Fehler, welchen man schwerlich verbessert.

Es gibt Fehler welche man sorgfältig verbirgt.

sterblich, mortal.

der Thor, the fool.

die ihr seyd, as you are.

indem ihr hoffet, to hope.

ohne zu geben, without giving.

euch, yourselves.

die Mühe, trouble.

könnet werden, can become.

gelehrt, learned.

weise, wise.

sagt oft, often said.

zu, to.

der Freund, the friend.

das Leben, life.

ist nicht so schätzbar, is not so valuable.

die Tugend, virtue.

der Körper, the body.

hinfällig, perishable.

aber, but.

die Seele, the soul.

wird ewig leben, will live for ever.

der Geschmack, the taste.

finde Vergnügen an, am pleased with.

das Gemälde, picture.

aus, (out) of.

niederländisch, Flemish.	die Leidenschaft, passion.
die Schule, school.	zweifle, question.
italiänischen, Italian.	daß, whether.
woher, whence.	habe besser gekannt, had a greater knowledge of.
der Unterschied, the difference.	Horaz, Horace.
da doch, since.	Land, country.
sonst, otherwise.	der Gebrauch, the custom.
die Neigung, inclination.	die Schwachheit, weakness.
beinahe ganz übereinstimmt, coincides almost entirely.	der Fehler, fault.
schöpft, draws.	man schwerlich verbessert, is with great difficulty corrected.
entweder, either.	Es giebt, there are.
das Glück oder das Unglück, the good or ill fortune.	man, we.
aus, from.	sorgfältig, carefully.
die Quelle, source.	verbirgt, conceals.

SECOND LESSON.

I know him. He knows them. She knows us. You know her. They know them. He gives it to them. We give it to him. She gives it to me. They give it to us. Tell it to him. He told it to them. We laugh at them. Take pity on (*of*) me. He is ashamed (*shames himself*) of thee. We remember (*ourselves of*) you. There are ten of us. There are six of them. Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself. I ascribe it to myself. He was not master of himself. When thy days are dark, then thy false friends depart from thee, but thy true friends forsake thee not.

That is not thy friend, it is mine.

They gave it not to my friend, but to thine.

They gave it not on account of your desert, but of ours.

That is not thy lot but mine. I mean this house.

This is the man (*this man is it*) of whom I speak.

Thou must do this, but not leave that undone.

This is his own estate.

He does as those people of the torrid zone, who shoot arrows at the sun.

Who is the most estimable among men? The most virtuous and discreet man.

What (*which*) man can promise himself constant good fortune?

Which season is the pleasantest?

know, *kenne*, him, (*Acc.*)
 knows, *kennt*.
 you know, *ihr kennet*.
 they—know, *kennen*.
 gives, *giebt*.
 give, *geben*.
 tell, *sage*.
 told, *sagte*.
 laugh at, *auslachen*.
 take pity, *erbarmet euch*.
 ashamed, *schämt*.
 remember, *erinnern*.
 shalt, *soldest*.
 neighbour, *Nachbar*.
 as, *als*.
 ascribe, *schreibe—zu*.
 was, *war*.
 of himself, *von sich*.
 when, *wenn*.
 day, *der Tag*, *m.* 2.
 dark, *dunkel*.
 are, *sind*.
 then, *dann*.
 depart, *weichen—ab*.
 false, *falsch*.
 friend, *Freund*, *m.* 2.
 from, *von*.
 thee, (*Dat.*) but, *aber*.
 true, *wahr*.
 forsake, *verlassen*.
 that, *daß*.
 gave, *gaben*.
 on account of, *um*.

desert, *Verdienst*, *m.* 2.
 sake, *Willen*.
 of, *um*.
 lot, *Loos*, *n.* 2.
 mean, *meine*.
 speak, *rede*.
 must, *mußt*.
 this, (*Acc. Neut.*) *dies*.
 do, *thun*.
 but, *aber*.
 that, *daß*.
 not leave, *nicht lassen*.
 estate, *Gut*, *n.* 5.
 does, *macht es*.
 as, *wie*.
 people, **Volk*, *n.* 5.
 torrid, *heiß*.
 zone, *Zone*, *f.* 3.
 arrow, *Pfeil*, *m.* 2.
 at, *gegen*.
 sun, *Sonne*, *f.* 3.
 to shoot, *abschießen*.
 estimable, *schätzbar*.
 among, *unter*.
 virtuous, *tugendhaft*.
 discreet, *vernünftig*.
 can, *kann*.
 himself, (*Dat.*) constant, *beständig*.
 happiness, *Glück*, *n.* 2.
 promise, *versprechen*.
 season, *Jahrzeit*, *f.* 3.
 pleasant, *angenehm*.

THIRD LESSON.

The Graces were goddesses; to whom men were indebted for refinement of manners, for beauty and elegance, all which (*which all*) were the effects of their power.

The Fates were called *Parcæ*; to them was assigned a spindle, upon which they spun the thread of life.

We cannot console ourselves for being deceived by our friends, and yet we are often contented to be so by ourselves.

Apply thyself to virtue, for this will never forsake thee.

Whoever is not diligent in his youth, will not know how to employ himself in his manhood.

Who did (*has done*) that? his brother or your sister. His sister and mine.

Which house do you mean?

For what book are you looking?

Who will get the prize? my cousin or his.

(*The*) Magistrates must be just towards every one, even towards their enemies.

Put these coins again in their places.

I know no one who is so happy as he.

We must give to every one his own.

graces, Grazie, *f. 3.*

goddess, Göttin, *f. 3.*

men were indebted for, verdankte man.

refinement, Verfeinerung, *f. 3.*

manner, Sitte, *f. 3.*

beauty, Schönheit, *f. 3.*

elegance, Anstand, *m. 2.*

which all, welches alles.

were, waren

effect, Wirkung, *f. 3.*

of, von.

power, *Macht, *f. 2.*

fate, Schicksal, *n. 2.*

Parcæ, Parzen.

were assigned, legte man bei.

spindle, Spinrocken, *m. 1.*

upon, auf, which, (*Dat. Masc.*)

thread, *Faden, *m. 1.*

life, leben, *n. 1.*

spun, spannen.

we can, wir können.

ourselves, uns.

not console, nicht trösten.

by, von.

our, unser, (*Dat.*)

enemy, Feind, *m. 2.*

for being deceived, betrogen zu seyn.

and yet, und doch.

we are, sind wir.

contented, zufrieden.

so, es.

by ourselves, durch uns selbst.

to be, zu seyn.

apply, befeißige.

virtue, Tugend, *f. 3.*

this, (*Fem.*) will, wird.

thee, dir.

never, nie.

forsake, verlassen.

is not, nicht—ist.

in, in; his, (*Fem. Dat.*)

youth, Jugend, *f. 3.*

will not know, wird nicht wissen.

manhood, das männliche Alter.

(*Dat.*)

how to employ himself, wie sich zu beschäftigen.

has, hat.

that, das.

done, gethan.

house, *Haus, *n. 5.*

do you mean, meinen Sie.

are you looking for, suchen Sie.

will, wird.

prize, Preis, *m. 2.*

get, davon tragen.

cousin, Vetter, *m. 1.*

magistrate, Obrigkeit, *f. 3.*

must, muß.

towards, gegen.

every one, jederman.

even, selbst, (*Acc.*)

just be, gerecht seyn.

put, leget.

coin, Münze, *f. 4.*

again, wieder,

in, auf; their, (*Acc.*)

place, *Platz, *n. 2.*

know, *kennen*.happy, *glücklich*.is, *ist*.we must, *man muß*.to every one, *jedem*.his own, *das Seinige*.give, *geben*.

CHAP. IV.

Division of Verbs.

Verbs are divided into regular and irregular, and then again into auxiliary, active, passive, neuter, compound, reflective, and impersonal.

Verbs are regular when the simple tenses are formed by the same general termination, in each tense, and retain their original letters in the infinitive, except, *en*, or *n*, at the end, which is changed into *te*, in the first person singular of the imperfect tense; and into *t* at the end, and * *ge* at the beginning of the verb, for the past participle; as,

<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>
Lieben, to love.	ich liebe.	ich liebte.

Participle.

† Geliebt, or geliebet.

Verbs are irregular when their terminations, as well as some of their original letters are varied; as,

<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Singen, to sing.	ich singe.	sang.	gesungen.

The verbs *ich habe, I have*; *ich bin, I am*; *ich werde*, also Englished *I am*; are called auxiliary, or helping verbs, because they help to conjugate other verbs in some of their tenses.

* It is to be observed that most participles of the irregular, as well as the regular verbs, begin with *ge*, but there is this difference, that the participles of the irregulars mostly terminate in *en*.

† When the infinitive begins with the syllables *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ver*, *zer*, or *ge*, then *ge* is omitted before the participles, except in *gegeben*, given; *gebetet*, prayed for; and some others.

An active verb expresses that sort of action, which passes over to an object; as, if we say, *er liebet*, *he loves*; we must add, or mean, he loves his child, or something else. A passive verb, on the contrary, expresses the suffering, or the receiving of an action. The passive verb in German is formed by, *ich werde*, (*Englished I am*;) and the perfect participle; as, *ich werde gelobt*, *I am praised*.

A verb neuter, simply expresses existence; as, *ich bin*, *I am*; existence in a particular state; as, *ich stehe*, *I stand*; or an action which does not pass over to an object; as, *ich gehe*, *I go*; *ich falle*, *I fall*; *ich laufe*, *I run*.

A compound verb is that which is compounded of a verb and a preposition, adverb, adjective, or substantive, &c.; as, *vornehmen*, *to intend*; *großthun*, *to boast*; *danke sagen*, *to thank*, &c.

* A verb is called reflective, when its subject and object are the same; as, *ich liebe mich*, *I love myself*.

A verb is called impersonal, when the agent, or nominative is unknown, or considered as such. This unknown agent is expressed in English, by the word *it*, and in German by *es*; as, *es regnet*, *it rains*.

§ I. AUXILIARY VERBS.

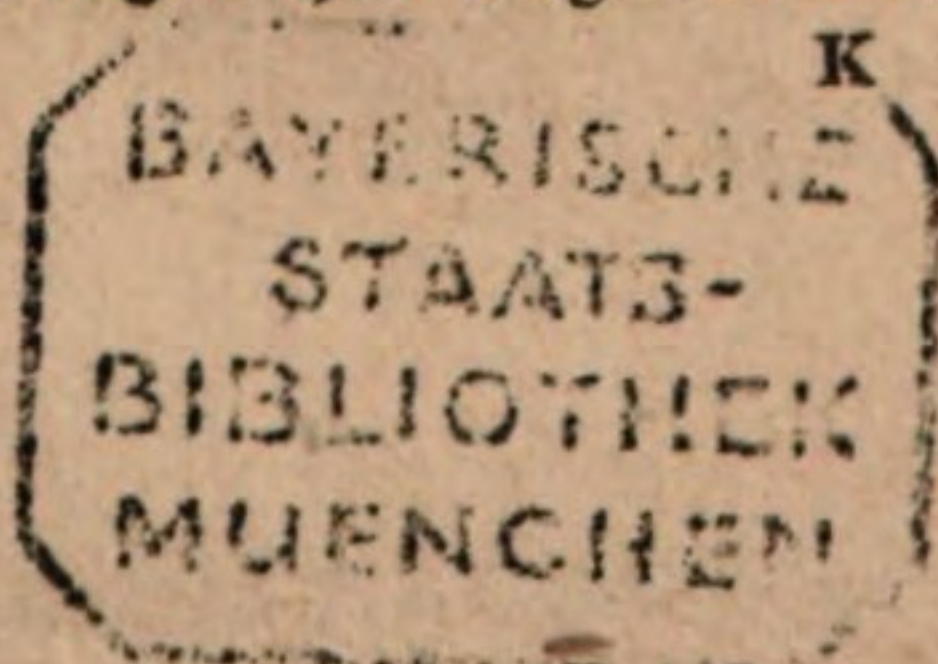
1. Conjugation of the auxiliary verb, *Seyn*, *to be*.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Part. Pres.</i>	<i>Part. Perf.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Seyn, to be.	Seyend, being.	gewesen, been.
<i>Pret.</i> Gewesen seyn, to have been.		

<i>Present.</i>	
<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>
Ich bin, I am.	Ich sey, I may be.
Du bist, thou art.	Du seyst, thou mayst be.
† Er, sie, or es ist, he, she, or it is.	Er sey, he may be.

* Properly speaking there is no reflective verb, but there are many verbs which reflect upon the agent.

† Er, sie, or es, may be used before any verb, (except impersonals) in the third person singular, throughout all the tenses.



Plural.

Wir find, we are.
Ihr send, you are.
Sie find, they are.

Plural.

Wir seyn, we may be.
Ihr send, you may be.
Sie seyn, they may be.

Imperfect.

Sing.

Ich war, I was.
Du warst, (or warest,) thou
wast.
Er war, he was.

Sing.

Ich wäre, I might be.
Du wärest, thou mightst be.
Er wäre, he might be.

Plural.

Wir waren, we were.
Ihr waret, you were.
Sie waren, they were.

Plural.

Wir wären, we might be.
Ihr wäret, you might be.
Sie wären, they might be.

Perfect.

Sing.

Ich bin gewesen, I have been.
Du bist gewesen, thou hast
been.
Er ist gewesen, he has been.

Sing.

Ich sey gewesen, I may have
been.
Du seyst gewesen, thou mayst
have been.
Er sey gewesen, he may have
been.

Plural.

Wir sind gewesen, we have
been.
Ihr send gewesen, you have
been.
Sie sind gewesen, they have
been.

Plural.

Wir seyn gewesen, we may
have been.
Ihr send gewesen, you may
have been.
Sie seyn gewesen, they may
have been.

Pluperfect.

Sing.

Ich war gewesen, I had
been.

Du warst gewesen, thou
hadst been.

Er war gewesen, he had
been.

Sing.

Ich wäre gewesen, I might
have been.

Du wärest gewesen, thou
mightst have been.

Er wäre gewesen, he might
have been.

Plural.

Wir waren gewesen, we
had been.

Ihr wäret gewesen, you
had been.

Sie waren gewesen, they
had been.

Plural.

Wir wären gewesen, we might
have been.

Ihr wäret gewesen, you might
have been.

Sie wären gewesen, they
might have been.

First Future.

Sing.

Ich werde seyn, I shall, or
will be.

Du wirst seyn, thou wilt be.

Er wird seyn, he will be.

Sing.

Ich werde seyn, I shall, or will
be.

Du werdest seyn, thou wilt be.

Er werde seyn, he will be.

Plural.

Wir werden seyn, we shall,
or will be.

Ihr werdet seyn, you will
be.

Sie werden seyn, they will
be.

Plural.

Wir werden seyn, we shall, or
will be.

Ihr werdet seyn, you will be.

Sie werden seyn, they will
be.

Second Future.

Sing.

Ich werde gewesen seyn, I
shall, or will have been.
Du wirst gewesen seyn, thou
wilt have been.
Er wird gewesen seyn, he
will have been.

Sing.

Ich werde gewesen seyn, I shall,
or will have been.
Du werdest gewesen seyn, thou
wilt have been.
Er werde gewesen seyn, he will
have been.

Plural.

Wir werden gewesen seyn,
we shall, or will have
been.
Ihr werdet gewesen seyn,
you will have been.
Sie werden gewesen seyn,
they will have been.

Plural.

Wir werden gewesen seyn, we
shall, or will have been.
Ihr werdet gewesen seyn, you
will have been.
Sie werden gewesen seyn, they
will have been.

Conditional.

*Simple.**Sing.*

Ich würde seyn, I should, or
would be.
Du würdest seyn, thou
wouldst be.
Er würde seyn, he would
be.

*Compound.**Sing.*

Ich würde gewesen seyn, I
should, or would have been.
Du würdest gewesen seyn, thou
wouldst have been.
Er würde gewesen seyn, he
would have been.

Plural.

Wir würden seyn, we should,
or would be.
Ihr würdet seyn, you would
be.
Sie würden seyn, they
would be.

Plural.

Wir würden gewesen seyn, we
should, or would have been.
Ihr würdet gewesen seyn, you
would have been.
Sie würden gewesen seyn, they
would have been.

Imperative.

*Sing.**Plural.*

Sey (du,) be, or be thou.

Lasset uns seyn, let us be.

Sey (er,) be he, or let him
be.

Seyd (ihr,) be, or be you.

Seyn sie, let them be, or be
they.

Seyn Sie, be, or be you.

Practice on the Auxiliary Verb, Seyn, to be.

This verb, as well as all others, may be conjugated in four forms; that is,

Affirmatively. Ich bin, I am.

Negatively. Ich bin nicht, I am not.

Interrogatively. Bin ich? am I?

Negatively interrogatively. Bin ich nicht? am I not?

So likewise through all the tenses, as in the following exercise:

PRES. IND. Art thou? Is he not? We are not. Are they not? They are not. Are you not? You are. Are we not?

IMP. Was I? Thou wast not. It was not. She was. Were we? Were we not? Were you not? You were not. Were they?

PERF. I have been. Have I been? I have not been. Have I not been? Hast thou been? She has been. Has she not been? It has been. He has not been. Have we been? Have you not been? They have been. They have not been. Have they not been?

PLUP. Had I been? I had not been. Thou hadst been. She had not been. Had he not been? Had he been? You had not been. They had not been. Had they been? Had they not been? We had not been. Had we not been?

1st. FUT. I shall not be. Wilt thou not be? He will be. Will she not be? It will not be. You will be. Will you not be? Shall we be? We shall not be. They will not be. Will they not be?

2nd. FUT. Shall I not have been? Wilt thou not have been? He will have been. Will she not have been? It will not have been. We shall have been. Shall we not have been? You will not have been. Will they not have been?

COND. SIMPLE *and* COMP. Should I be? Wouldst thou not be? It would be. Would she not be? He would not be. We should not be. Would you not be? You would not be. Would they not be? They would not be. I should not have been. Would it not have been? Should we not have been? We should not have been. Would you not have been? They would not have been.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES. I may not be. Thou mayst be. It may not be. He may not be. We may be. You may not be. They may not be.

IMP. I might not be. She might be. It might not be. We might not be. You might be. They might not be.

PERF. I may not have been. Thou mayst have been. He may have been. It may have been. We may not have been. You may have been. They may not have been.

PLUP. I might not have been. Thou mightst have been. She might not have been. We might have been. You might have been. They might not have been.

1st. FUT. I shall not be. Thou wilt be. He will not be. It will be. We shall not be. You will not be. They will not be.

2nd. FUT. I shall not have been. She will have been. We shall not have been. You will not have been. They will not have been.

IMPERATIVE.

Be (*thou*). Let him be. Let him not be. Let us not be. Be, *or* do you be. Do not be (*you*.) Let them not be.

II. Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb, Haben, to have.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Part. Pres.</i>	<i>Part. Perf.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Haben, to have.	Habend, having.	Gehabt, had.
<i>Pret.</i> Gehabt haben, to have had.		

<i>Present.</i>	
<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich habe, I have.	Ich habe, I may have.
Du hast, thou hast.	Du habest, thou mayst have.
Er, sie, or es hat, he, she, or it has.	Er, or sie habe, he, or she may have.

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Wir haben, we have.	Wir haben, we may have.
Ihr habt, or habet, you have.	Ihr habet, you may have.
Sie haben, they have.	Sie haben, they may have.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich hatte, I had.	Ich hätte, I might have.
Du hattest, thou hadst.	Du hättest, thou mightst have.
Er hatte, he had.	Er hätte, he might have.

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Wir hatten, we had.	Wir hätten, we might have.
Ihr hättet, you had.	Ihr hättet, you might have.
Sie hatten, they had.	Sie hätten, they might have.

<i>Perfect.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich habe gehabt, I have had.	Ich habe gehabt, I may have had.
Du hast gehabt, thou hast had.	Du habest gehabt, thou mayst have had.
Er hat gehabt, he has had.	Er habe gehabt, he may have had.

Plural.

Wir haben gehabt, we have had.

Ihr habt, or habet gehabt, you have had.

Sie haben gehabt, they have had.

Plural.

Wir haben gehabt, we may have had.

Ihr habet gehabt, you may have had.

Sie haben gehabt, they may have had.

Pluperfect.

Sing.

Ich hatte gehabt, I had had.

Du hättest gehabt, thou hadst had.

Er hatte gehabt, he had had.

Sing.

Ich hätte gehabt, I might have had.

Du hättest gehabt, thou mightst have had.

Er hätte gehabt, he might have had.

Plural.

Wir hatten gehabt, we had had.

Ihr hättet gehabt, you had had.

Sie hatten gehabt, they had had.

Plural.

Wir hätten gehabt, we might have had.

Ihr hättet gehabt, you might have had.

Sie hätten gehabt, they might have had.

First Future.

Sing.

Ich werde haben, I shall, or will have.

Du wirst haben, thou wilt have.

Er wird haben, he will have.

Sing.

Ich werde haben, I shall, or will have.

Du werdest haben, thou wilt have.

Er werde haben, he will have.

Plural.

Wir werden haben, we shall, or will have.

Ihr werdet haben, you will have.

Sie werden haben, they will have.

Plural.

Wir werden haben, we shall, or will have.

Ihr werdet haben, you will have.

Sie werden haben, they will have.

Second Future.

Sing.

Sch werde gehabt haben, I
shall, or will have had.

Du wirst gehabt haben, thou
wilt have had.

Er wird gehabt haben, he
will have had.

Sing.

Sch werde gehabt haben, I
shall, or will have had.

Du werdest gehabt haben, thou
wilt have had.

Er werde gehabt haben, he will
have had.

Plural.

Wir werden gehabt haben, we
shall, or will have had.

Ihr werdet gehabt haben, you
will have had.

Sie werden gehabt haben, they
will have had.

Plural.

Wir werden gehabt haben, we
shall, or will have had.

Ihr werdet gehabt haben, you
will have had.

Sie werden gehabt haben, they
will have had.

Conditional.

*Ind. and Sub.**Simple.**Sing.*

Sch würde haben, I should,
or would have.

Du würdest haben, thou
wouldst have.

Er würde haben, he would
have.

*Compound.**Sing.*

Sch würde gehabt haben, I
should, or would have had.

Du würdest gehabt haben, thou
wouldst have had.

Er würde gehabt haben, he
would have had.

Plural.

Wir würden haben, we
should, or would have.

Ihr würdet haben, you
would have.

Sie würden haben, they
would have.

Plural.

Wir würden gehabt haben, we
should, or would have had.

Ihr würdet gehabt haben, you
would have had.

Sie würden gehabt haben, they
would have had.

Imperative.

*Sing.**Plural.*

Habe du, have, or have
thou.

Habe er, have he, or let him
have.

Lasset uns haben, let us have.

Habt, or habet ihr, have you,
or do you have.

Haben sie, have they, or let
them have.

Haben Sie, have you, or do
you have.

Practice on the Auxiliary Verb, Haben, to have.

PRES. IND. Have I? Have I not? He has not. Hast thou? She has not. Have we? We have not. You have not. Have they? They have not. Have they not?

IMP. Had I? He had. Had she not? Had we not? Had you not? They had. Had they not?

PERF. Have I had? Hast thou not had? Has he not had? Have you not had? She has not had. Have they not had? We have not had. Have they had? They have not had. Have they not had?

PLUPERFECT. I had not had. Had I not had? Hadst thou had? She had not had. Had he not had? Had we had? They had not had. They had had. Had they not had?

1st. FUT. Shall I not have? Wilt thou have? I will not have. We shall not have. Will you not have? You will not have.

2nd. FUT. He will have had? They will not have had. Will they not have had? We shall have had. Will you not have had?

COND. SIMPLE. Should I have? Thou wouldst not have. Would he not have? We would not have. Should we have? Should we not have? You would not have. Would you not have? They would not have. Would they not have?

COND. COMP. I should not have had. Would he not have had? We should not have had. Would you have had? They would not have had.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. I may have. I may not have. Thou mayst not have. We may have. We may not have. They may have. They may not have.

IMP. Thou mightst not have. Hadst thou not. *Had we. Had we not. Had you not. Had they not. They might not have.

PERF. Thou mayst not have had. We may not have had. You may have had. They may not have had.

PLUP. I might not have had. Thou mightst have had. He might have had. He might not have had. We might not have had. They might not have had.

IMPER. Have (thou). Let us have. Have you. Have they, or let them have.

III. *The Irregular and Auxiliary Neuter Verb, Werden, to become.*

*Infinitive.**Participle Pres.*

Pres. Werden, to become. *Werdend*, becoming.

Perf. Geworden seyn, to have become. *Ein Werdender*, one who becomes.

Perf. Participle.

Pres. Geworden, become.

Present.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Sing.**Sing.*

Ich werde, I become.

Ich werde, I may become.

Du wirst, thou becomest.

Du werdest, thou mayst become.

Er, *sie*, or *es* wird, he, she, or it becomes.

Er, *sie*, or *es* werde, he, she, or it may become.

* *Had we*, is not interrogative, but has the same meaning as, *if we had*, in the subjunctive mood.

Plural.

Wir werden, we become.
 Ihr werdet, you become.
 Sie werden, they become.

Plural.

Wir werden, we may become.
 Ihr werdet, you may become.
 Sie werden, they may become.

Imperfect.

Sing.

Sch wurde, or ward, I be-
 came.

Sing.

Sch würde, I might become.

Du wurdest, or wardst, thou
 becamest.

Du würdest, thou mightst be-
 come.

Er wurde, or ward, he be-
 came.

Er würde, he might become.

Plural.

Wir wurden, we became.

Plural.

Wir würden, we might be-
 come.

Ihr wurdet, you became.

Ihr würden, you might be-
 come.

Sie wurden, they became.

Sie würden, they might be-
 come.

Perfect.

Sing.

Sch bin geworden, I have
 become.

Sing.

Sch sey geworden, I may have
 become.

Du bist geworden, &c.

Du seyst geworden, &c.

Pluperfect.

Sing.

Sch war geworden, I had
 become.

Sing.

Sch wäre geworden, I might
 have become.

Du wärest geworden, &c.

Du wärest geworden, &c.

First Future.

Indicative.

Sing.

Sch werde werden, I shall
 become.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Sch werde werden, I shall be-
 come.

Du wirst werden, &c.

Du werdest werden, &c.

Second Future.

Indicative.

Sing.

Ich werde geworden seyn,
I shall have become.

Du wirst geworden seyn,
&c.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Ich werde geworden seyn, I
shall have become.

Du werdest geworden seyn,
&c.

Conditional; Simple.

Sing.

Ich würde werden, I should,
or would become.

Du würdest werden, &c.

Plural.

Wir würden werden, we
should, or would become.

Ihr würdet werden, &c.

Conditional; Compound.

Sing.

Ich würde geworden seyn, I
should have become.

Du würdest geworden seyn,
&c.

Plural.

Wir würden geworden seyn,
we should, or would have
become.

Ihr würdet geworden seyn,
&c.

Imperative.

Sing.

Werde, or werde du, become
(*thou.*)

Werde er, let him become.

Plural.

Werdet (ihr,) become (*you.*)

Werden Sie, become (*you.*)

Werden sie, let them become.

Practice on the auxiliary, Werden.

PRES. IND. Does he become? Does she not become?
Thou dost not become. Do we become? Do you not be-
come? They do not become.

Obs. Ich werde, &c. when used as an auxiliary verb, is Englished by *I am, I shall, I will, I grow*; and the perfect participle as an auxiliary, becomes *worden*, instead of *geworden*.

IMP. I did not become. Did it not become? Did we become? She became. She did not become. Did we not become? Did you not become? They did not become.

PERF. I have become. Have I not become? Hast thou not become? She has not become. Have we not become? Have you not become? Have they become?

PLUP. I had become. Had I become? Had I not become? I had not become? Hadst thou become? He had not become. Had she not become? Had we become? Had you not become? They had become. They had not become. Had they become? Had they not become?

FIRST FUT. Shall I become? Shall we become? Wilt thou become? Wilt thou not become? He will become. She will not become. Will you become? They will not become.

SECOND FUT. I shall have become. Will he have become? Shall we have become? You will not have become. Will they have become? They will not have become. Will they not have become?

COND. SIMPLE. Should I become? Wouldst thou become? It would become. Should he not become? We should not become. Would you become? They would not become.

COND. COMP. I should have become. Would it have become? Should we have become? We should not have become. Would you not have become? You would have become. Would they have become?

PRES. SUB. I may not become. She may not become. Thou mayst become. He may not become. We may not become. They may become.

IMP. I might become. Thou mightst become. She might not become. We might not become. You might become. They might not become.

PERF. I may have become. He may not have become. You may have become. They may not have become.

PLUP. Thou mightst have become. She might not have become. It might not have become. You might have become. They might not have become.

IMPERAT. Become thou. Become (*you*) not. Become they, or let them become. Let them not become.

Recapitulatory Exercises on the Auxiliaries.

FIRST LESSON.

Die Griechen sind die Lehrer vieler Völker gewesen, und haben erst spät aufgehört es zu seyn.

Die Römer können sich nicht rühmen es gewesen zu seyn, denn sie waren die Schüler der Griechen.

Die Eigenliebe ist der größte von allen Schmeichlern; sie ist die Verführerin vieler Menschen gewesen, und wird es noch von vielen seyn, die nicht auf ihrer Hut sind.

Wir sind ihren Verführungen immer ausgesetzt, und wir müssen sie daher immer fliehen.

Wenn wir einmal von ihr verführt worden sind, so ist es schwer uns ihrer Herrschaft zu entziehen.

Als Hannibal von Scipio überwunden worden war, so fragte ihn Scipio, wer nach seiner Meinung wohl der größte Feldherr wäre? Hannibal nannte den Alexander. Wer ist aber wohl nach dem Alexander der größte Held gewesen? Hannibal sagte, daß es Pyrrhus sey! Wer aber der dritte? Hannibal erwiderte, ich bin es.

O ihr Spieler, welche Verschwender eures Geldes, eurer Zeit, und eurer Kräfte seyd ihr! Glaubet mir, ihr werdet nie glücklich seyn! Ihr würdet es aber seyn können, wenn ihr weiser seyn wolltet. Es ist nicht der Ort durch den wir weiser und vollkommen werden, sondern es hängt von unserm Willen ab, ob wir es werden wollen, und dann können wir es an jedem Orte werden.

der Grieche, the Greek.
der Lehrer, the teacher.
viele, many.
das Volk, the nation.
aufgehört, ceased.
erst spät, but lately.
die Römer, the Romans.

können sich nicht rühmen, cannot
boast.
es zu seyn, of being so.
denn, for.
der Schüler, scholar.
die Eigenliebe, self-love.
von, of.

der Schmeichler, the flatterer.	der Feldherr, commander.
Berführerin, seducer.	nannte, named.
vieler, of many.	der Held, the hero.
wird seyn, will be.	sagte, said.
von vielen, of many.	erwiderte, replied.
die, who.	ich bin es, it is I.
sind nicht, are not.	der Spieler, the gamester.
auf, upon.	der Verschwender, the squanderer.
Hut, guard.	das Geld, the money.
immer, always.	die Zeit, the time.
ausgesetzt, exposed.	die Kraft, the power.
die Berführung, seduction.	glaubet, believe.
müssen, must.	glücklich, happy.
daher, therefore.	würdet können, might.
fliehen, flee, or shun.	es, so.
wenn, when.	Ort, place.
einmal, once.	durch, by.
verführt, seduced.	weise, wise.
schwer, difficult.	vollkommen, perfect.
uns zu entziehen, to disengage	sondern, but.
ourselves.	hängt ab, depends.
die Herrschaft, dominion.	von, upon.
als, when.	der Wille, the will.
überwunden worden war, was	ob, whether.
conquered.	es werden wollen, will become so.
von, by.	dann können wir, then we can.
fragte, asked.	an, in.
nach, in.	jedem, every.
die Meinung, the opinion.	

SECOND LESSON.

Hast thou been lame?
 Was she not a sincere friend?
 Switzerland is a mountainous country.
 The people have been long free.
 We have not all equal talents.
 Have they had equal advantages?
 If he had always had the understanding which he now
 has, he would not have been so proud.
 Who is not mortal? There is no man who is not mortal.
 Thou art a man, and consequently art frail.
 Should any one be envious? Would he not then be un-
 happy? Be not therefore envious, if you wish not to be
 unhappy.
 Had he been contented, he would have been happy.

Many have had the greatest possessions, and yet have been unhappy, because they were not contented.

Become first contented, and then you may hope to be happy.

Observe. Put the participles and infinitives of the German to the end of the sentence.

lame, lahm.

sincere, aufrichtig.

Switzerland, die Schweiz.

mountainous, bergig.

country, *Land, n. 5.

people, *Volk, n. 3.

free, frei.

equal, gleich.

advantage, Vorthail, n. 2.

if, wenn.

understanding, Verstand, m. 2.

had had, gehabt hätte.

proud, stolz.

mortal, sterblich.

man, Mensch, m. 3.

consequently, folglich.

frail, hinfällig.

should, sollte.

any one, jemand.

envious, neidisch.

be, seyn.

then, dann.

unhappy, unglücklich.

not be, nicht seyn.

therefore, daher.

if you wish not to be, wenn du

nicht seyn willst.

contented, zufrieden.

many, viele, f. 3.

possession, Besizung, f. 3.

yet, doch.

because, weil.

not contented were, nicht zu-

frieden waren.

become, sey.

first, erst.

may you, magst du.

hope, hoffen.

happy, glücklich.

to be, zu seyn.

THIRD LESSON.

Alexander said, were I not Alexander, I should wish to be Diogenes.

The Romans had in the commencement kings, afterwards consuls, and lastly emperors.

Scarcely any (*almost no*) empire of the world has had so mean an (*a so mean*) origin, and has become so great as the Roman empire.

If Scipio had not been so great a general, Carthage would not (*so would Carthage not*) have been conquered by him.

How happy would every one have been, if all men had been what they should have been.

How much happier we should be than we are at present, if we had no inordinate passions.

The taste of the Romans was (*has been*) never so refined as that of the Greeks: this arose from their being imitators.

The cultivated Romans had also mostly been in Greece, and had brought with them from thence knowledge and taste.

said, sagte.	him (<i>Dat.</i>)
should wish, möchte gern.	conquered been, erobert worden.
Roman, Römer, <i>m.</i> 1.	how, wie.
in the commencement, An-	much, viel.
fangs.	at present, jetzt.
king, König, <i>m.</i> 2.	inordinate, unordentlich.
afterwards, nachher.	passion, Leidenschaft, <i>f.</i> 3.
lastly, zuletzt.	taste, Geschmack, <i>m.</i> 2.
emperor, Kaiser, <i>m.</i> 1.	refined, verfeinert; that, (<i>Mas.</i>)
almost, beinahe.	Greek, Grieche, <i>m.</i> 3.
empire, Reich, <i>n.</i> 2.	came thence, kam daher.
world, Welt, <i>f.</i> 3.	imitator, Nachahmer, <i>m.</i> 1.
mean, geringe.	cultivated, gebildet.
origin, Ursprung, <i>m.</i> 2.	also, auch.
as, als.	mostly, mehrentheils.
Roman, römisch.	Greece, Griechenland.
general, Feldherr, <i>m.</i> 3.	brought with them, mit gebracht.
Carthage, Carthago.	from thence, von da.
by, von.	knowledge, Kenntniß, <i>f.</i> 2. (<i>Pl.</i>)

§ II. The following verbs, *Wollen, Müssen, Können, Sollen*, &c. are generally used in German as in English, being sometimes auxiliary and sometimes principal verbs.

Observe. The use of the following verbs will be best understood by the examples. *Vide page 128, &c.*

Conjugation of the Verb Wollen, to be willing.

<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Part. Pres.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Wollen, to be willing.	Wollend, willing.
<i>Pret.</i> Gewollt haben, to have been willing, or to have willed.	
<i>Part. Past or Perf.</i>	
Gewollt, willed, or been willing.	
<i>Present.</i>	
<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich will, I will.	Ich wolle, I may be willing.
Du willst, thou wilt.	Du wollest, thou mayst &c.
Er will, he will.	Er wolle, he may &c.

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Wir wollen, we will.	Wir wollen,
Ihr wollet, or wollet, &c.	Ihr wollet, &c.

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich wollte, I would.	Ich wollte, I might be willing.
Du wolltest, &c.	Du wolltest, &c.

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Wir wollten, we would.	Wir wollten, we &c.
Ihr wolltet, &c.	Ihr wolltet, &c.

Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich habe gewollt, I have been willing.	Ich habe gewollt, I may have been willing.
Du hast gewollt, &c.	Du habest gewollt, &c.

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Wir haben gewollt, we &c.	Wir haben gewollt, &c.

Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich hatte gewollt, I had been willing.	Ich hätte gewollt, I might have been willing.
Du hättest gewollt, &c.	Du hättest gewollt, &c.

First Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich werde wollen, I shall be willing.	Ich werde wollen, I shall be willing.
Du wirst wollen, &c.	Du werdest wollen, &c.

Second Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich werde gewollt haben, I shall have been willing.	Ich werde gewollt haben, I shall have been willing.
Du wirst gewollt haben, &c.	Du werdest gewollt haben, &c.

Conditional.	
Simple.	Compound.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich würde wollen, I should be willing.	Ich würde gewollt haben, I should, or would have been willing.
Du würdest wollen, &c.	Du würdest gewollt haben, &c.
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Wir würden wollen, we should be willing.	Wir würden gewollt haben, we should, or would have been willing.
Ihr würdet wollen, &c.	Ihr würdet gewollt haben, &c.
No imperative.	

Conjugation of the Verb, Müssen, to be obliged.

<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Part. Pres.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Müssen, to be obliged.	No present part.
<i>Pret.</i> Gemußt haben, to have been obliged.	
<i>Part. Perf.</i>	
Gemußt, obliged.	
Present.	
Indicative.	Subjunctive.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich muß, I am obliged, or I must.	Ich müsse, I may be obliged.
Du mußt, thou must, &c.	Du müssest, thou &c.
Er, (sie) muß, he, or she &c.	Er, or sie müsse, &c.
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Wir müssen, we are obliged, &c.	Wir müssen, &c.
Ihr müisset, or müßt, &c.	Ihr müisset, &c.

Imperfect.

Sing.

Sch mußte, I was obliged.
Du mußttest, thou &c.
Er mußte, &c.

Sing.

Sch mußte, I might be obliged.
Du mußttest, thou &c.
Er mußte, &c.

Plural.

Wir mußten, we were obliged.
Ihr mußttest, &c.

Plural.

Wir mußten, we might be obliged.
Ihr mußttest, &c.

Perfect.

Sing.

Sch habe gemußt, I have been obliged.
Du hast gemußt, &c.

Sing.

Sch habe gemußt, I may have been obliged.
Du habest gemußt, &c.

Pluperfect.

Sing.

Sch hatte gemußt, I had been obliged.
Du hättest gemußt, &c.

Sing.

Sch hätte gemußt, I might have been obliged.
Du hättest gemußt, &c.

First Future.

Sing.

Sch werde müssen, I shall be obliged.
Du wirst müssen, &c.

Sing.

Sch werde müssen, I shall be obliged.
Du werdest müssen, &c.

Second Future.

Sing.

Sch werde gemußt haben, I shall have been obliged.
Du wirst gemußt haben, &c.

Sing.

Sch werde gemußt haben, I shall have been obliged.
Du werdest gemußt haben, &c.

Conditional.

Simple.

Sing.

Ich würde müssen, I should
be obliged.

Du würdest müssen, thou
wouldst be obliged.

Plural.

Wir würden müssen, we
should be obliged.

Ihr würdet müssen, you
would be obliged.

Compound.

Sing.

Ich würde gemußt haben, I
should, or would have
been obliged.

Du würdest gemußt haben,
&c.

Plural.

Wir würden gemußt haben,
we should, or would have
been obliged.

Ihr würdet gemußt haben, &c.

No imperative.

*Conjugation of the Verb, Können, to be able.**Infinitive.*

Pres. Können, to be able.

Perf. Gefonnt haben, to
have been able.

Participle Pres.

Könnend, being able:

Part. Perf.

Gefonnt, able.

Present.

Indicative.

Sing.

Ich kann, I can, or am
able.

Du kannst, thou canst.

Er, or sie kann, he, or she
can.

Plural.

Wir können, we can.

Ihr könnet, or könnt, you
can.

Sie können, they can.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Ich könne, I may be able.

Du könnest, thou &c.

Er, or sie könne, &c.

Plural.

Wir können, we may be able.

Ihr könnet, you &c.

Sie können, &c.

Imperfect.

Sing.

Sch konnte, I could, or I
was able.

Du konntest, thou couldst, &c. Du konntest, &c.

Sing.

Sch konnte, I might be able.

Perfect.

Sing.

Sch habe gekonnt, I have
been able.

Du hast gekonnt, &c.

Sing.

Sch habe gekonnt, I may have
been able.

Du habest gekonnt, &c.

Pluperfect.

Sing.

Sch hatte gekonnt, I had
been able.

du hättest gekonnt, &c.

Sing.

Sch hätte gekonnt, I might
have been able.

Du hättest gekonnt, &c.

First Future.

Sing.

Sch werde können, I shall be
able.

Du wirst können, &c.

Sing.

Sch werde können, I shall be
able.

Du werdest können, &c.

Second Future.

Sing.

Sch werde gekonnt haben, I
shall have been able.

Du wirst gekonnt haben,
&c.

Sing.

Sch werde gekonnt haben, I
shall have been able.

Du werdest gekonnt haben,
&c.

Conditional; Simple.

Sing.

Sch würde können, I should
be able.

Du würdest können, thou
wouldst &c.

Plural.

Wir würden können, we
should be able.

Ihr würdet können, &c.

Conditional; Compound.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Ich würde gekonnt haben, I should have been able.	Wir würden gekonnt haben, we should, or would have been able.
Du würdest gekonnt haben, &c.	Ihr würdet gekonnt haben, &c.

Conjugation of the Verb *Sollen, to be obliged.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Part. Pres.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Sollen, to be obliged.	Sollend, being obliged.
<i>Pret.</i> Gesollt haben, to have been obliged.	

Part. Perf.
Gesollt, been obliged.

Present.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich soll, I shall, or I must.	Ich solle, &c.
Du sollst, or sollt, thou shalt &c.	Du sollest, &c.
Er, or sie soll, he, or she shall, &c.	Er, or sie solle, &c.

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Wir sollen, we shall.	Wir sollen, &c.
Ihr sollet, or sollt, you shall.	Ihr sollet, &c.
Sie sollen, they shall.	Sie sollen, &c.

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich sollte, I should.	Ich sollte, &c.
Du solltest, &c.	Du solltest, &c.

* It is impossible to translate these German verbs literally through all the tenses.

das Zeichen, sign.	seyn mag, may be.
das Leben, life.	sagen, say.
kann nicht alles thun, cannot do every thing.	so sagen darf, may say so.
nur, (<i>but</i> ,) only.	er müsse leben, may he live.
die Macht, power.	glücklich, happy.
wenn, if.	ich wollte gerne, I should wish, or like,
so würde alles durch einander gehen, every thing would be in disorder.	an, to.
er fängt wieder an; he begins again.	schreiben, to write.
Paris soll seyn, Paris is said to be.	wissen, to know.
Ich kann nicht begreifen, I cannot imagine.	wo, where.
wer er, who he.	hingestellt hat, has put.
	das Schreibzeug, the inkstand.
	wagen, risk.
	Geld, money.

SECOND LESSON.

He could, would, must, might, should, ought to have done it.

Er hätte das thun können, wollen, müssen, mögen, sollen, dürfen.

Practice on the preceding Verbs.

He could not have paid all his debts, if I had helped him.

He should not have told all he knew of the matter.

They should not have made laws, only to (*in order to*) violate them.

They must have been very stupid, not to (*if they have not*) have understood it.

You might (*could*) have spoken to him in a more civil manner.

I should have wished to have seen it, (*I had it see may.*)

They would not have allowed it, if they had known it before.

They ought not to have given him that liberty, (*ought him that liberty not given have.*)

debt, Schuld, *f.*

to pay, bezahlen.

to help, helfen.

to tell, sagen.

to know, wissen.

of, von.

matter, Sache, *f.*

to make, machen.

law, Gesetz, *n.*

to violate, verletzen.

stupid, dumm.
to understand, verstehen.
to speak, sprechen.
in, auf.
civil, artig.
manner, Weise, *f*.

may, mögen.
allowed, erlaubt.
before, ehe.
ought, sollten.
liberty, Freiheit, *f*.

§ III. Of Regular Active Verbs.

In German as in English, there is but one conjugation of regular verbs, which has the terminations *te*, in the imperfect; and *t*, or *et*, in the participle, with *ge* before it.

Conjugation of the Regular Verb *Lieben*, to love.

Inf.

Part. Pres.

Pres. Lieben, to love.

Liebend, loving.

Pret. Geliebt, or geliebet
haben, to have loved.

Part. Perf.

Geliebt, loved.

Present.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Sing.

Ich liebe, I love, do love,
or am loving.

Ich liebe, I may love.

Du liebst, or liebest thou lo-
vest, dost love, or art loving.

Du liebest, thou mayst love.

Er, sie, or es liebt, or liebet,
he, she, or it loves, does
love, or is loving.

Er liebe, he may love.

Plural.

Plural.

Wir lieben, we love, do
love, or are loving.

Wir lieben, we may love.

Ihr liebt, or liebet, you love.

Ihr liebet, you may love.

Sie lieben, they love.

Sie lieben, they may love.

Imperfect.

Indicative.

Sing.

Sch liebte, I loved, or did
love.

Du liebtest, thou lovedst.

Er liebte, he loved.

Plural.

Wir liebten, we loved.

Ihr liebtet, you loved.

Sie liebten, they loved.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Sch liebete, I might love.

Du liebetest, thou mightst love.

Er liebete, he might love.

Plural.

Wir liebeten, we might love.

Ihr liebetet, you might love.

Sie liebeten, they might love.

Perfect.

Sing.

Sch habe geliebt, or geliebet,
I have loved.

Du hast geliebt, thou hast
loved.

Er hat geliebt, he has loved.

Sing.

Sch habe geliebt, I may have
loved.

Du habest geliebt, thou mayst
have loved.

Er habe geliebt, he may have
loved.

Plural.

Wir haben geliebt, we have
loved.

Ihr habt geliebt, you have
loved.

Sie haben geliebt, they
have loved.

Plural.

Wir haben geliebt, we may
have loved.

Ihr habet geliebt, you may
have loved.

Sie haben geliebt, they may
have loved.

Pluperfect.

Sing.

Sch hatte geliebt, I had
loved.

Du hättest geliebt, thou
hadst loved.

Er hatte geliebt, he had
loved.

Sing.

Sch hätte geliebt, I might
have loved.

Du hättest geliebt, thou
mightst have loved.

Er hätte geliebt, he might
have loved.

Indicative.

Plural.

Wir hatten geliebt, we had loved.

Ihr hattet geliebt, you had loved.

Sie hatten geliebt, they had loved.

Subjunctive.

Plural.

Wir hätten geliebt, we might have loved.

Ihr hättet geliebt, you might have loved.

Sie hätten geliebt, they might have loved.

First Future.

Sing.

Ich werde lieben, I shall, or will love.

Du wirst lieben, thou wilt love.

Er wird lieben, he will love.

Sing.

Ich werbe lieben, I shall, or will love.

Du werdest lieben, thou wilt love.

Er werde lieben, he will love.

Plural.

Wir werden lieben, we shall, or will love.

Ihr werdet lieben, you will love.

Sie werden lieben, they will love.

Plural.

Wir werden lieben, we shall, or will love.

Ihr werdet lieben, you will love.

Sie werden lieben, they will love.

Second Future.

Sing.

Ich werde geliebt haben, I shall have loved.

Du wirst geliebt haben, thou wilt have loved.

Er wird geliebt haben, he will have loved.

Sing.

Ich werde geliebt haben, I shall have loved.

Du werdest geliebt haben, thou wilt have loved.

Er werde geliebt haben, he will have loved.

Plural.

Wir werden geliebt haben, we shall have loved.

Ihr werdet geliebt haben, you will have loved.

Sie werden geliebt haben, they will have loved.

Plural.

Wir werden geliebt haben, we shall have loved.

Ihr werdet geliebt haben, you will have loved.

Sie werden geliebt haben, they will have loved.

Conditional.	
Simple.	Compound.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich würde lieben, I should, or would love.	Ich würde geliebt haben, I should have loved.
Du würdest lieben, thou wouldst love.	Du würdest geliebt haben, thou wouldst have loved.
Er würde lieben, he would love.	Er würde geliebt haben, he would have loved.
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Wir würden lieben, we should, or would love.	Wir würden geliebt haben, we should have loved.
Ihr würdet lieben, you would love.	Ihr würdet geliebt haben, you would have loved.
Sie würden lieben, they would love.	Sie würden geliebt haben, they would have loved.
Imperative.	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Liebe (du,) love (thou.)	Lasset uns lieben, let us love.
Liebe er, love he, or let him love.	Liebet, liebt (ihr,) or Lieben Sie, love you, or do you love.
	Lieben sie, love they, or let them love.

So decline, Loben, to praise ; Glauben, to believe.

Observations on the Formation of Regular Verbs.

All the tenses are formed from the infinitive, which always terminates in en ; as, lieben, to love ; glauben, to believe, & except when this termination is preceded by l, or r, then the frequently omitted ; as, lächeln, to smile ; hindern, to hinder, instead of lächelen, hinderen.

First and second Future.

Shall I not smile ?	lächeln, to smile.
Wilt thou not have improved?	bessern, to improve.
It will not drop,	tropfen, to drop.
She will have cleansed,	reinigen, to cleanse.
We shall not have mixed,	mischen, to mix.
You will have whetted,	weßen, to whet.
Will they have lighted ?	leuchten, to light.

Conditional ; simple and compound.

Should I not have stretched?	dehnen, to stretch.
Wouldst thou not lead ?	führen, to lead.
Would she not have polished?	poliren, to polish.
We would have sharpened,	schärfen, to sharpen.
You would not have quenched,	löschen, to quench.
They would have spared,	missen, to spare.

Subjunctive.

Present and Imperfect.

I may not weaken,	schwächen, to weaken.
Thou mayst not inherit,	erben, to inherit.
He may conquer,	erobern, to conquer.
She might explain,	erklären, to explain.
We might not hear,	hören, to hear.
You may hunt,	jagen, to hunt.
They might hew,	hauen, to hew.

Perfect and Pluperfect.

I may not have hoped,	hoffen, to hope.
Thou mightst have buttoned,	knöpfen, to button.
He may have learnt,	lernen, to learn.
She might not have loved,	lieben, to love.
We might have denied,	läugnen, to deny.
You may have lived,	leben, to live.
They might have mentioned,	melden, to mention.

Future and Conditional.

I shall mitigate,	mildern, to mitigate.
Thou wilt mean,	meinen, to mean.
He will not envy,	neiden, to envy.
She would profit,	nützen, to profit.
We should not plant,	pflanzen, to plant.
You will polish,	poliren, to polish.
They will prove,	prüfen, to prove.

Imperative.

Do not rob,	rauben, to rob.
Reckon,	rechnen, to reckon.
Paint they, or let them paint,	schildern, to paint.

§ IV. Conjugation of the Irregular Verb Sehen, to see.

Infinitive.

Part. Pres.

<i>Pres.</i> Sehen, to see.	Sehend, seeing; or ein Se-
<i>Pret.</i> Gesehen haben, to have seen.	hender, one who is seeing.

Part. Perf.

Gesehen, seen.

Present.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Sing.

Ich sehe, I see.	Ich sehe, I may see.
Du siehst, or siehst, thou seest.	Du sehest, thou mayst see.
Er sieht, he sees.	Er sehe, he may see.

Plural.

Plural.

Wir sehen, we see.	Wir sehen, we may see.
Ihr sehet, you see.	Ihr sehet, you may see.
Sie sehen, they see.	Sie sehen, they may see.

Imperfect.

Indicative.

Sing.

Ich sah, I saw.

Du sahest, or sahst, thou
sawest.

Er sah, he saw.

Plural.

Wir sahen, we saw.

Ihr sahet, you saw.

Sie sahen, they saw.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Ich sähe, I might see.

Du sähest, thou mightst see.

Er sähe, he might see.

Plural.

Wir sähen, we might see.

Ihr sähet, you might see.

Sie sähen, they might see.

Perfect.

*Sing.*Ich habe gesehen, I have
seen.Du hast gesehen, thou hast
seen.

Er hat gesehen, he has seen.

*Sing.*Ich habe gesehen, I may have
seen.Du habest gesehen, thou mayst
have seen.Er habe gesehen, he may have
seen.*Plural.*Wir haben gesehen, we have
seen.Ihr habet, or habt gesehen,
you have seen.Sie haben gesehen, they
have seen.*Plural.*Wir haben gesehen, we may
have seen.Ihr habet gesehen, you may
have seen.Sie haben gesehen, they may
have seen.

Pluperfect.

Sing.

Ich hatte gesehen, I had seen.

Du hättest gesehen, thou &c.

Er hatte gesehen, he, &c.

*Sing.*Ich hätte gesehen, I might
have seen.

Du hättest gesehen, thou &c.

Er hätte gesehen, he, &c.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir hatten gesehen, we had seen. Wir hätten gesehen, we might have seen.

Ihr hättet gesehen, you &c. Ihr hättet gesehen, you, &c.

Sie hatten gesehen, they, &c. Sie hätten gesehen, they, &c.

First Future.

*Sing.**Sing.*

Ich werde sehen, I shall see. Ich werde sehen, I shall see.

Du wirst sehen, thou wilt see. Du werdest sehen, thou wilt see.

Er wird sehen, he will see. Er werde sehen, he will see.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir werden sehen, we shall see. Wir werden sehen, we shall see.

Ihr werdet sehen, you will see. Ihr werdet sehen, you will see.

Sie werden sehen, they will see. Sie werden sehen, they will see.

Second Future.

*Sing.**Sing.*

Ich werde gesehen haben, I shall have seen. Ich werde gesehen haben, I shall have seen.

Du wirst gesehen haben, thou wilt have seen. Du werdest gesehen haben, thou wilt have seen.

Er wird gesehen haben, he, &c. Er werde gesehen haben, he, &c.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir werden gesehen haben, we shall have seen. Wir werden gesehen haben, we shall have seen.

Ihr werdet gesehen haben, you will have seen. Ihr werdet gesehen haben, you will have seen.

Sie werden gesehen haben, they, &c. Sie werden gesehen haben, they, &c.

Conditional.

Simple.

Sing.

Ich würde sehen, I should see.

Du würdest sehen, thou
wouldst see.Er würde sehen, he would
see.

Plural.

Wir würden sehen, we
should see.Ihr würdet sehen, you
would see.Sie würden sehen, they
would see.

Compound.

Sing.

Ich würde gesehen haben, I
should have seen.Du würdest gesehen haben,
thou wouldst have seen.

Er würde gesehen haben, &c.

Plural.

Wir würden gesehen haben,
we should have seen.Ihr würdet gesehen haben,
you would have seen.Sie würden gesehen haben,
they, &c.

Imperative.

Sing.

Sieh, or siehe (du,) see
(thou.)

Sehe er, let him see.

Plural.

Sehet (ihr,) see (ye, or you,)
or sehen Sie, see (ye, or
you.)

Sehen sie, let them see.

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

The Irregular Verbs form four Divisions.

FIRST DIVISION.

Verbs in this division take *te* in the imperfect, and *t* in the
participle; with some changes in the root; as,*Inf.* Brennen, to burn.*Ind. Pres.* Ich brenne, &c.*Subj. Pres.* Ich brenne, &c.*Part.* Gebrannt, burnt.*Imperf.* Ich brannte, &c.*Imperf.* Ich brennete, or bränn-
te, &c.

das Zeichen, sign.	seyn mag, may be.
das Leben, life.	sagen, say.
kann nicht alles thun, cannot do every thing.	so sagen darf, may say so.
nur, (<i>but</i> ,) only.	er müsse leben, may he live.
die Macht, power.	glücklich, happy.
wenn, if.	ich wollte gerne, I should wish, or like,
so würde alles durch einander gehen, every thing would be in disorder.	an, to.
er fängt wieder an, he begins again.	schreiben, to write.
Paris soll seyn, Paris is said to be.	wissen, to know.
Sch kann nicht begreifen, I cannot imagine.	wo, where.
wer er, who he.	hingestellt hat, has put.
	das Schreibzeug, the inkstand.
	wagen, risk.
	Geld, money.

SECOND LESSON.

He could, would, must, might, should, ought to have done it.

Er hätte das thun können, wollen, müssen, mögen, sollen, dürfen.

Practice on the preceding Verbs.

He could not have paid all his debts, if I had helped him.

He should not have told all he knew of the matter.

They should not have made laws, only to (*in order to*) violate them.

They must have been very stupid, not to (*if they have not*) have understood it.

You might (*could*) have spoken to him in a more civil manner.

I should have wished to have seen it, (*I had it see may.*)

They would not have allowed it, if they had known it before.

They ought not to have given him that liberty, (*ought him that liberty not given have.*)

debt, Schuld, *f*.
to pay, bezahlen.
to help, helfen.
to tell, sagen.
to know, wissen.

of, von.
matter, Sache, *f*.
to make, machen.
law, Gesetz, *n*.
to violate, verletzen.

stupid, dumm.

to understand, verstehen.

to speak, sprechen.

in, auf.

civil, artig.

manner, Weise, *f*.

may, mögen.

allowed, erlaubt.

before, ehe.

ought, sollten.

liberty, Freiheit, *f*.

§ III. Of Regular Active Verbs.

In German as in English, there is but one conjugation of regular verbs, which has the terminations *te*, in the imperfect; and *t*, or *et*, in the participle, with *ge* before it.

Conjugation of the Regular Verb Lieben, to love.

*Inf.**Part. Pres.**Pres.* Lieben, to love.

Liebend, loving.

Pret. Geliebt, or geliebet
haben, to have loved.*Part. Perf.*

Geliebt, loved.

*Present.**Indicative.**Subjunctive.**Sing.**Sing.*Ich liebe, I love, do love,
or am loving.

Ich liebe, I may love.

Du liebst, or liebest thou lo-
vest, dost love, or art loving.

Du liebest, thou mayst love.

Er, sie, or es liebt, or liebet,
he, she, or it loves, does
love, or is loving.

Er liebe, he may love.

*Plural.**Plural.*Wir lieben, we love, do
love, or are loving.

Wir lieben, we may love.

Ihr liebt, or liebet, you love.

Ihr liebet, you may love.

Sie lieben, they love.

Sie lieben, they may love.

Imperfect.

Indicative.

Sing.

Sch liebte, I loved, or did
love.

Du liebtest, thou lovedst.

Er liebte, he loved.

Plural.

Wir liebten, we loved.

Ihr liebtet, you loved.

Sie liebten, they loved.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Sch liebete, I might love.

Du liebetest, thou mightst love.

Er liebete, he might love.

Plural.

Wir liebeten, we might love.

Ihr liebetet, you might love.

Sie liebeten, they might love.

Perfect.

Sing.

Sch habe geliebt, or geliebet,
I have loved.

Du hast geliebt, thou hast
loved.

Er hat geliebt, he has loved.

Sing.

Sch habe geliebt, I may have
loved.

Du habest geliebt, thou mayst
have loved.

Er habe geliebt, he may have
loved.

Plural.

Wir haben geliebt, we have
loved.

Ihr habt geliebt, you have
loved.

Sie haben geliebt, they
have loved.

Plural.

Wir haben geliebt, we may
have loved.

Ihr habet geliebt, you may
have loved.

Sie haben geliebt, they may
have loved.

Pluperfect.

Sing.

Sch hatte geliebt, I had
loved.

Du hättest geliebt, thou
hadst loved.

Er hatte geliebt, he had
loved.

Sing.

Sch hätte geliebt, I might
have loved.

Du hättest geliebt, thou
mightst have loved.

Er hätte geliebt, he might
have loved.

Indicative.

Plural.

Wir hatten geliebt, we had
loved.

Ihr hattet geliebt, you had
loved.

Sie hatten geliebt, they had
loved.

Subjunctive.

Plural.

Wir hätten geliebt, we might
have loved.

Ihr hättet geliebt, you might
have loved.

Sie hätten geliebt, they might
have loved.

First Future.

Sing.

Ich werde lieben, I shall,
or will love.

Du wirst lieben, thou wilt
love.

Er wird lieben, he will love.

Sing.

Ich werbe lieben, I shall, or
will love.

Du werdest lieben, thou
wilt love.

Er werde lieben, he will love.

Plural.

Wir werden lieben, we shall,
or will love.

Ihr werdet lieben, you will
love.

Sie werden lieben, they will
love.

Plural.

Wir werden lieben, we shall,
or will love.

Ihr werdet lieben, you will
love.

Sie werden lieben, they will
love.

Second Future.

Sing.

Ich werde geliebt haben, I
shall have loved.

Du wirst geliebt haben, thou
wilt have loved.

Er wird geliebt haben, he
will have loved.

Sing.

Ich werde geliebt haben, I
shall have loved.

Du werdest geliebt haben, thou
wilt have loved.

Er werde geliebt haben, he will
have loved.

Plural.

Wir werden geliebt haben,
we shall have loved.

Ihr werdet geliebt haben,
you will have loved.

Sie werden geliebt haben,
they will have loved.

Plural.

Wir werden geliebt haben,
we shall have loved.

Ihr werdet geliebt haben, you
will have loved.

Sie werden geliebt haben, they
will have loved.

Conditional.	
Simple.	Compound.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich würde lieben, I should, or would love.	Ich würde geliebt haben, I should have loved.
Du würdest lieben, thou wouldst love.	Du würdest geliebt haben, thou wouldst have loved.
Er würde lieben, he would love.	Er würde geliebt haben, he would have loved.
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Wir würden lieben, we should, or would love.	Wir würden geliebt haben, we should have loved.
Ihr würdet lieben, you would love.	Ihr würdet geliebt haben, you would have loved.
Sie würden lieben, they would love.	Sie würden geliebt haben, they would have loved.
Imperative.	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Liebe (du,) love (<i>thou.</i>)	Lasset uns lieben, let us love.
Liebe er, love he, or let him love.	Liebet, liebt (ihr,) or Lieben Sie, love <i>you</i> , or do you love.
	Lieben sie, love they, or let them love.

So decline, Loben, to praise ; Glauben, to believe.

Observations on the Formation of Regular Verbs.

All the tenses are formed from the infinitive, which always terminates in en ; as, lieben, to love ; glauben, to believe, &c. ; except when this termination is preceded by l, or r, then the e is frequently omitted ; as, lächeln, to smile ; hindern, to hinder ; instead of lächelen, hinderen.

The following Table exhibits the terminations of the Regular Verbs.

Present.						
Indicative.				Subjunctive.		
	1. <i>Per.</i>	2. <i>Per.</i>	3. <i>Per.</i>	1. <i>Per.</i>	2. <i>Per.</i>	3. <i>Per.</i>
<i>S.</i>	e.	st, or est.	t.	e.	est.	e.
<i>Pl.</i>	en.	t, or et.	en.	en.	et.	en.

Imperfect.						
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>S. *</i>	te.	test.	te.	ete.	etest.	ete.
<i>Pl.</i>	ten.	tet.	ten.	eten.	etet.	eten.

Imperative.						
<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
		2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
	—	e.	e.	en.	et, or t.	en.

Infinitive.	Participle.
<i>Present.</i> en.	<i>Present,</i> end.
	<i>Preterite,</i> ge—et, or t.

* The perfect and pluperfect tenses are formed by the corresponding tenses of the verb *haben*, and the perfect participle; but some neuter verbs, of a particular description, take *seyn* instead of *haben*; the first future and simple conditional, are formed by *werden* and the present infinitive; the second future and compound of the conditional, by *werden* and the preterite infinitive.

Practice on the Regular Verbs.

Indicative Mood.

Present.

I esteem,	achten, to esteem.
Thou dost not labor,	arbeiten, to labor.
He banishes,	bannen, to banish.
We do not move,	bewegen, to move.
Do you build ?	bauen, to build.
Do they not fear ?	befürchten, to fear.

Imperfect.

I requested,	begehren, to request.
Thou didst not beg,	betteln, to beg.
Did it gleam ?	strahlen, to gleam.
We bled,	bluten, to bleed.
Did you form ?	bilden, to form.
They did not borrow,	borgen, to borrow.

Perfect.

Have I not invented ?	erdichten, to invent.
Hast thou suffered want ?	darben, to suffer want.
He has served,	dienen, to serve.
It has not threatened,	drohen, to threaten.
Has she failed ?	fehlen, to fail.
We have questioned,	fragen, to question.
You have not felt,	fühlen, to feel.
Have they not doubled ?	doppeln, to double.

Pluperfect.

I had not ended,	endigen, to end.
Thou hadst fettered,	fesseln, to fetter.
Had she borne ?	dulden, to bear.
Had he not listened ?	hören, to listen.
We had not believed,	glauben, to believe.
Had you rubbed ?	reiben, to rub.
Had they not spelt ?	buchstabieren, to spell.

First and second Future.

Shall I not smile ?	lächeln, to smile.
Wilt thou not have improved?	bessern, to improve.
It will not drop,	tropfen, to drop.
She will have cleansed,	reinigen, to cleanse.
We shall not have mixed,	mischen, to mix.
You will have whetted,	wezen, to whet.
Will they have lighted ?	leuchten, to light.

Conditional ; simple and compound.

Should I not have stretched?	dehnen, to stretch.
Wouldst thou not lead ?	führen, to lead.
Would she not have polished?	poliren, to polish.
We would have sharpened,	schärfen, to sharpen.
You would not have quenched,	löschen, to quench.
They would have spared,	missen, to spare.

Subjunctive.

Present and Imperfect.

I may not weaken,	schwächen, to weaken.
Thou mayst not inherit,	erben, to inherit.
He may conquer,	erobern, to conquer.
She might explain,	erklären, to explain.
We might not hear,	hören, to hear.
You may hunt,	jagen, to hunt.
They might hew,	hauen, to hew.

Perfect and Pluperfect.

I may not have hoped,	hoffen, to hope.
Thou mightst have buttoned,	knöpfen, to button.
He may have learnt,	lernen, to learn.
She might not have loved,	lieben, to love.
We might have denied,	läugnen, to deny.
You may have lived,	leben, to live.
They might have mentioned,	melden, to mention.

Future and Conditional.

I shall mitigate,
Thou wilt mean,
He will not envy,
She would profit,
We should not plant,
You will polish,
They will prove,

mildern, to mitigate.
meinen, to mean.
neiden, to envy.
nützen, to profit.
pflanzen, to plant.
poliren, to polish.
prüfen, to prove.

Imperative.

Do not rob,
Reckon,
Paint they, or let them paint,

rauben, to rob.
rechnen, to reckon.
schildern, to paint.

§ IV. Conjugation of the Irregular Verb Sehen, to see.

Infinitive.

Part. Pres.

Pres. Sehen, to see.

Sehend, seeing; or ein Se-

Pret. Gesehen haben, to
have seen.

hender, one who is seeing.

Part. Perf.

Gesehen, seen.

Present.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Sing.

Ich sehe, I see.

Ich sehe, I may see.

Du siehst, or siehst, thou seest.

Du sehest, thou mayst see.

Er sieht, he sees.

Er sehe, he may see.

Plural.

Plural.

Wir sehen, we see.

Wir sehen, we may see.

Ihr sehet, you see.

Ihr sehet, you may see.

Sie sehen, they see.

Sie sehen, they may see.

Imperfect.

Indicative.

Sing.

Ich sah, I saw.

Du sahst, or sahst, thou
sawest.

Er sah, he saw.

Plural.

Wir sahen, we saw.

Ihr sahet, you saw.

Sie sahen, they saw.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Ich sähe, I might see.

Du sähest, thou mightst see.

Er sähe, he might see.

Plural.

Wir sähen, we might see.

Ihr sähet, you might see.

Sie sähen, they might see.

Perfect.

*Sing.*Ich habe gesehen, I have
seen.Du hast gesehen, thou hast
seen.

Er hat gesehen, he has seen.

*Sing.*Ich habe gesehen, I may have
seen.Du habest gesehen, thou mayst
have seen.Er habe gesehen, he may have
seen.*Plural.*Wir haben gesehen, we have
seen.Ihr habet, or habt gesehen,
you have seen.Sie haben gesehen, they
have seen.*Plural.*Wir haben gesehen, we may
have seen.Ihr habet gesehen, you may
have seen.Sie haben gesehen, they may
have seen.

Pluperfect.

Sing.

Ich hatte gesehen, I had seen.

Du hättest gesehen, thou &c.

Er hatte gesehen, he, &c.

*Sing.*Ich hätte gesehen, I might
have seen.

Du hättest gesehen, thou &c.

Er hätte gesehen, he, &c.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Plural.

Plural.

Wir hatten gesehen, we had
seen.

Wir hätten gesehen, we might
have seen.

Ihr hättet gesehen, you &c.

Ihr hättet gesehen, you, &c.

Sie hatten gesehen, they, &c.

Sie hätten gesehen, they, &c.

First Future.

Sing.

Sing.

Ich werde sehen, I shall see.

Ich werde sehen, I shall see.

Du wirst sehen, thou wilt see.

Du werdest sehen, thou wilt see.

Er wird sehen, he will see.

Er werde sehen, he will see.

Plural.

Plural.

Wir werden sehen, we shall
see.

Wir werden sehen, we shall
see.

Ihr werdet sehen, you will
see.

Ihr werdet sehen, you will see.

Sie werden sehen, they will
see.

Sie werden sehen, they will
see.

Second Future.

Sing.

Sing.

Ich werde gesehen haben, I
shall have seen.

Ich werde gesehen haben, I
shall have seen.

Du wirst gesehen haben,
thou wilt have seen.

Du werdest gesehen haben, thou
wilt have seen.

Er wird gesehen haben, he, &c.

Er werde gesehen haben, he, &c.

Plural.

Plural.

Wir werden gesehen haben,
we shall have seen.

Wir werden gesehen haben, we
shall have seen.

Ihr werdet gesehen haben,
you will have seen.

Ihr werdet gesehen haben, you
will have seen.

Sie werden gesehen haben,
they, &c.

Sie werden gesehen haben,
they, &c.

Conditional.	
Simple.	Compound.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich würde sehen, I should see.	Ich würde gesehen haben, I should have seen.
Du würdest sehen, thou wouldst see.	Du würdest gesehen haben, thou wouldst have seen.
Er würde sehen, he would see.	Er würde gesehen haben, &c.

<i>Plural.</i>	
Wir würden sehen, we should see.	Wir würden gesehen haben, we should have seen.
Ihr würdet sehen, you would see.	Ihr würdet gesehen haben, you would have seen.
Sie würden sehen, they would see.	Sie würden gesehen haben, they, &c.

Imperative.	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Sieh, or siehe (du,) see (thou.)	Sehet (ihr,) see (ye, or you,) or sehen Sie, see (ye, or you.)
Sehe er, let him see.	Sehen sie, let them see.

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

The Irregular Verbs form four Divisions.

FIRST DIVISION.

Verbs in this division take *te* in the imperfect, and *t* in the participle; with some changes in the root; as,

<i>Inf.</i> Brennen, to burn.	<i>Part.</i> Gebrannt, burnt.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i> Ich brenne, &c.	<i>Imperf.</i> Ich brannte, &c.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i> Ich brenne, &c.	<i>Imperf.</i> Ich brennete, or bränn=te, &c.

So form :

Kennen, to know.

Senden, to send.

Nennen, to call, or name.

Wenden, to turn.

Rennen, to run.

Inf. Bringen, to bring. *Part.* Gebracht, brought.*Ind. Pres.* Ich bringe, &c. *Imperf.* Ich brachte, &c.*Sub. Imperf.* Ich brächte, &c.*Inf.* Denken, to think. *Part.* Gedacht, thought.*Ind. Pres.* Ich denke, &c. *Imperf.* Ich dachte, &c.*Sub. Imperf.* Ich dächte, &c.*Inf.* Dürfen, to dare. *Part.* Gedurft, dared.*Ind. Pres.* Ich darf, du darfst, er darf. *Plural.* Wir dürfen, ihr dürfet, sie dürfen. *Imperf.* Ich durste, &c.*Sub. Pres.* Ich dürfe, &c. *Imperf.* Ich dürste, &c.*Inf.* Wissen, to know. *Part.* Gewußt, known.*Ind. Pres.* Ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß. *Plural.* Wir wissen, ihr wisset, &c. *Imperf.* Ich wußte, &c.*Sub. Pres.* Ich wisse, &c. *Imperf.* Ich wüßte, &c.

SECOND DIVISION.

First Class.

These verbs have a in the infinitive and participle, ie in the imperfect ; the vowel a changed into ä, or ae in the second and third persons singular ; as,

Inf. Blasen, to blow. *Part.* Geblasen, blown.*Ind. Pres.* Ich blase, du blästest, er bläset, or bläst.*Plural.* Wir blasen, &c. *Imperf.* Ich blies, &c.*Sub. Imperf.* Ich bliese. *Imper.* Blase, &c.

So form :

Braten, to roast.

Laufen, to run.

Fallen, to fall.

Rathen, to advise.

Halten, to hold.

Schlafen, to sleep.

Lassen, to let.

Hauen, to hew, makes hieb in the imperfect.

Hangen, to hang; fangen, to catch; take i instead of ie in the imperfect. Falzen, to fold; salzen, to salt; spalten, to split, are regular except in the participle.

Second Class.

These verbs have a in the infinitive and participle; u in the imperfect; the vowel changed as before.

Inf. Graben, to dig. *Part.* Gegraben, dug.

Ind. Pres. Ich grabe, du gräbest, er gräbt; wir graben, &c. *Imp.* Ich grub, &c.

Sub. Pres. Ich grabe. *Imperf.* Ich grübe, &c.

So form:

Backen, to bake.

Schaffen, to create.

Fahren, to go, to move.

Tragen, to carry.

Laden, to load.

Wachsen, to grow.

Schlagen, to beat.

Waschen, to wash.

Mahlen, to paint, is regular; but mahlen, to grind, is irregular.

Third Class.

These verbs have e in the infinitive and participle, and take a in the imperfect, &c.; as,

Inf. Essen, to eat. *Part.* Geessen, eaten.

Ind. Pres. Ich esse, du issest, er isset, or ißt; wir essen, ihr esset, sie essen. *Imperf.* Ich aß, du aßest, er aß; wir aßen, &c.

Sub. Pres. Ich esse. *Imperf.* Ich äße. *Imper.* Iß, &c.

So form:

Fressen, to devour, or eat.

Treten, to tread.

Geben, to give.

Bergeffen, to forget.

Messen, to measure.

Sehen, to see; lesen, to read; take ie instead of i, in the indicative present and imperative; so likewise geschehen, to happen, in the present; but it is seldom used in the imperative. Genesen, to recover, is regular in the indicative present.

THIRD DIVISION.

In this division the imperfect and participle have the same vowel.

First Class.

These verbs have *ei* in the infinitive, and *i* in the imperfect and participle; as,

Inf. Sich *besfleiß*en, to apply, to be diligent. *Part.* *Beflissen*, applied. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich *besfließ*, &c.

So form :

Beißen, to bite.

Schleichen, to sneak.

Erbleichen, to grow pale.

Schmeißen, to fling.

Gleichen, to equal.

Streichen, to stroke.

Greifen, to seize.

Weichen, to yield.

Reißen, to tear.

Some double the consonant of the root ; as,

Inf. *Reifen*, to chide. *Part.* *Gefiffen*, chidden *Ind. Imperf.* *Riff*, &c.

So form :

Gleiten, to glide.

Pfeifen, to whistle.

Greifen, to seize.

**Schleifen*, to grind.

Kneifen, to pinch ; or,

Schreiten, to stride.

Kneipen, to pinch.

Streiten, to contend.

Reiten, to ride.

Leiden, to suffer, and *schneiden*, to cut, change the *d* of the infinitive into *tt* ; as, *Imperf.* *Litt*, &c. *Part.* *Gelitten*, suffered, &c.

Some take *ie* instead of *i* ; as,

Inf. *Bleiben*, to remain. *Part.* *Geblichen*, remained.

Ind. Imperf. Ich *blieb*, &c. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich *bleibe*, &c.

* *Schleifen*, to drag, is regular.

So form :

Gedeihen, to prosper.	Schreiben, to write.
Leihen, to lend.	Schreien, to cry.
Meiden, to avoid.	Schweigen, to be silent.
Preisen, to praise.	Steigen, to mount.
Reiben, to rub.	Treiben, to drive.
Scheinen, to appear.	Weisen, to show.
Scheiden, to part.	Zeihen, to accuse of.

Second Class.

These verbs have *ie*, or *i*, and sometimes *ü*, in the infinitive, *o* in the imperfect and participle: *ö* in the imperfect subjunctive; as,

Inf. Betriegen, or betrügen, to deceive. *Part.* Betrogen, deceived. *Ind. Pres.* Ich betriege, du betriegest, er betriegt, (ich betrüge, du betrügst, er betrügt,) &c. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich betrog, &c. *Subj. Imperf.* Ich betröge, &c. *Imper.* Betriege, in poetry betrüge.

So form :

*Biegen, to bend. †Part. Gebogen.	Lügen, to lie.
Biethen, or bieten, to bid.	Riechen, to smell.
Fliegen, to fly.	Schieben, to push, shove.
Fliehen, to flee.	Schießen, to shoot.
Fließen, to flow.	Schließen, to slip.
Frieren, to freeze.	Schließen, to shut.
Gebiethen, to command.	Sprießen, to sprout, shoot.
Genießen, to enjoy.	Stieben, to rise, to fly rapidly.
Gleissen, to glisten.	Triegen, to cheat.
Glimmen, to glimmer.	Verlieren, to lose.
Klimmen, to climb.	Verwirren, to confuse.
Kleben, to cleave.	Wiegen, to weigh.
Kriechen, to creep.	Ziehen, to draw.

* Some few, which have *ie* in the infinitive, change the *ie* in the second and third persons of the present indicative into *eu* in poetry, and in a higher style of writing; as, *Ind. Pres.* du beugst, (instead of du biegt,) or beugt, (instead of er biegt.)

† These verbs (like most others) take the augment *ge* for the participle; as, *Inf.* Biegen, to bend. *Part.* Gebogen, bent.

Sieden, to boil, changes the *ö* into *tt* ; as,
Ind. Imperf. Ich *sott*, &c. *Part.* *Gesotten*.

Third Class.

These verbs have *e*, *ä*, or *ö*, in the infinitive, *i* in the second and third persons singular of the present, *o* in the imperfect and participle : *ö* in the imperfect subjunctive, *i* in the imperative ; as,

Inf. *Fechten*, to fight. *Part.* *Gefochten*.

Ind. Pres. Ich *fechte*, du *fichst*, er *ficht* ; wir *fechten*, &c.
Imperf. Ich *focht*.

Subj. Imperf. Ich *föchte*, &c. *Imper.* *Ficht*, (or *fechte*.)

So form :

**Bellen*, to bark.

Scheren, to shear.

Dreschen, to thresh.

Schmelzen, to melt.

Erlöschen, to extinguish.

Schwellen, to swell.

Flechten, to plait.

Verlöschen, to expire.

Quellen, to spring.

The following neither change in the present indicative, nor in the imperative.

Bewegen, to move.

Melken, to milk.

Erwägen, to weigh or consider.

Pflegen, to nurse.

Schwären, to fester.

Gären, to ferment.

Schwören, to swear.

Heben, to heave.

Wägen, to weigh.

FOURTH DIVISION.

In this division the infinitive, imperfect and participle, have different vowels.

* *Bellen*, is regular in low German.

First Class.

These verbs have *e* in the infinitive, *i* in the second and third persons of the present indicative, *a* in the imperfect: *o* in the participle, *â*, or *û* in the imperfect subjunctive, and *i* in the imperative; as,

Inf. Bergen, to conceal. *Part.* Geborgen, concealed.

Ind. Pres. Ich berge, du birgst, er birgt; wir bergen, &c.

Imperf. Ich barg, &c.

Sub. Imperf. Ich bârge, &c. *Imper.* Birg.

So form:

Brechen, to break.

Sprechen, to speak.

Erschrecken, to frighten.

Treffen, to hit.

Stechen, to stab.

Nehmen, to take; makes nimm in the imperative.

The following verbs have either * *ô*, or *â* in the subjunctive; as,

Gelten, to be worth. *Imperf. Subj.* Gölte, or gâlte.

So form:

Bersten, to burst.

Schelten, to scold.

Gebâhren, to bear, or bring forth.

Stehlen, to steal.

The following verbs change the *â* into *û*; as,

Helfen, to help. *Imperf. Subj.* Hülfe, (or hâlfe.)

So form:

Sterben, to die.

Werben, to sue for.

Verbergen, to conceal.

Werden, to become.

Verderben, to spoil.

Werfen, to throw.

Second Class.

These verbs have *i* in the infinitive, *a* in the imperfect indicative, *ô* in the imperfect subjunctive, and *o* in the participle; as,

* The vowels, *a*, *o*, *u*, in the imperfect indicative, are generally changed into *â*, *ô*, *û* respectively, in the imperfect subjunctive.

Inf. Rinnen, to run, to drop. *Part.* Geronnen, run.
Ind. Imperf. Ich rann, &c. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich rönne, or
 ränne.

So form :

Beginnen, to begin.	Schwimmen, to swim.
Befinnen, to bethink.	Sinnen, to think, or meditate.
Gewinnen, to gain.	Spinnen, to spin.

But most verbs that have the infinitive in i, have the imperfect subjunctive in ä ; as,

Inf. Binden, to bind. *Part.* Gebunden, bound.
Ind. Imper. Ich band, &c. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich bände, &c.

So form :

Dringen, to press.	Schwingen, to swing.
Empfinden, to perceive.	Singen, to sing.
Finden, to find.	Sinken, to sink.
Gelingen, to succeed.	Springen, to spring.
Klingen, to sound.	Stinken, to stink.
Klingen, to wrestle.	Trinken, to drink.
Schlingen, to swallow.	Winden, to wind.
Schwinden, to disappear.	Zwingen, to force.

Schinden, to flea, takes ü instead of ä in the imperfect subjunctive ; as,

Subj. Imperf. Ich schünde, &c. so also dingen, to bargain, but it is generally regular.

The following Verbs come under no particular Rule.

Inf. Bitten, to pray. *Part.* Gebeten, prayed.
Ind. Imperf. Ich bat, &c. *Subj. Imperf.* Ich bâte.
 Erschallen, to resound. *Part.* Erschollen, resounded.
Ind. Imperf. Ich erscholl, &c. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich erschölle,
 &c.

Gehen, to go. *Part.* Gegangen, gone.

Heißen, to bid. *Part.* Geheißen, bidden. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich hieß, &c.

Kommen, to come. *Part.* Gekommen, come. *Ind. Pres.* Ich komme, du kommst, er kommt. *Imp.* Ich kam, &c. *Subj.* Ich käme. *Imperf.* Komm.

Liegen, to lie. *Part.* Gelegen, lain. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich lag, &c. *Subj. Imperf.* Ich läge.

Rufen, to call. *Part.* Gerufen, called. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich rief, &c.

Saufen, to drink. *Part.* Gesoffen, drunk. *Ind. Pres.* Ich saufe, du säufst, er säuft; wir saufen, &c. *Imperf.* Ich soff, &c. *Subj. Imperf.* Ich söffe, &c. *Imper.* Sauf.

Saugen, to suck. *Part.* Gesogen, sucked. *Ind. Pres.* Ich sauge, du säugst, er säugt; wir saugen, &c. *Imperf.* Ich sog, &c. *Subj. Ind.* Ich söge, &c. *Imperf.* Sauge.

Schrauben, to screw. *Part.* Geschroben, screwed. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich Schrob, &c. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich schrobe, &c.

Seyn, to be. *Part.* Gewesen, been. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich war, &c. *Subj. Imperf.* Ich wäre, &c. (see the auxiliaries, page 97.)

Sitzen, to sit. *Part.* Gesessen, sat. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich saß, &c. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich säße, &c.

Stehen, to stand. *Part.* Gestanden, stood. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich stand, &c. *Subj.* Ich stände, (or stünde,) &c.

Stoßen, to thrust. *Part.* Gestoßen, thrust. *Ind. Pres.* Ich stoße, du stößest, er stößt; wir stoßen, &c. *Imperf.* Ich stieß, &c. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich stieße, *Imper.* Stoß.

Thun, to do, or to make. *Part.* Gethan, done, or made. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich that, &c. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich thäte, &c.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
	<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>		
B.						
Bäcken, to bake. . .	ich bäcke, du bäckst, er bäckt, I bake, thou bakes, he bakes.		ich buck, or bäcke, I ba- ked.	ich bücke, I might bake	ibäcke (du,) bake or do thou bake	gebäcken, ba- ked.
Bedingen, to contract. . .	ich bedinge, du bedingst, er bedingt.		ich bedung . .	ich bedünge . .	bedinge	bedungen.
Befehlen, to com- mand.	ich befehle, du befehlst, er befehlt.		ich befaht	ich beföhle. . . .	befiehl	befohlen.
Befleissen, (sich <i>reflec- tive</i>) to study, or apply oneself.	ich befeisse, du befeisest, er befeist.		ich befiß	ich befiße . .	befleiß	befissen.
Beginnen, to begin.	ich beginne, &c.		ich begann, or begann . .	ich begänne, or begönnte . .	beginne	begonnen.
Beissen, to bite.	ich beiße, &c.		ich biß	ich biße . . .	beiß, or beiße. .	gebissen.
Bergen, to conceal.	ich berge, du birgst, er birgt.		ich barg	ich barge, or bürge	birg, or birge. .	geborgen.
Bersten, to burst.	ich berste, du berstest, or birstest, er berstet, or birst.		ich barst, or borst	ich härste, or hörste	birst, or berste geborsten.	
Besinnen, (sich <i>reflec- tive</i>) to recollect.	ich besinne, du besinnst, &c.		ich besann . .	ich besänne . .	besinn	besonnen.
Betrogen, or, betrü- gen, to cheat, or to deceive.	ich betriege, du betriegst, er betriegt, gen, to cheat, or to deceive.		ich betrog. . . .	ich betröge . .	betriege, or be- trüge	betrogen.

Infinitive.	Present. Indicative.	Imperfect.		Imperative.	Participle.
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Bewegen, to move, to induce.	ich bewege, &c.	ich bewog	ich bewöge	bewege	bewogen.
Biegen, to bend, to bow.	ich biege, &c.	ich bog	ich böge	biege	gebogen.
Bieten, to bid, to offer.	ich biete, &c.	ich bot	ich böte	biете	geboten.
Binden, to bind. . . .	ich binde, &c.	ich band	ich bände	binde	gebunden.
Bitten, to beg, to ask . .	ich bitte, &c.	ich bat	ich bäte	bitte	gebeten.
Blasen, to blow. . . .	ich bläse, du bläsest, er bläset, or bläst	ich blies	ich bliese	blase	geblasen.
Bleiben, to remain. . . .	ich bleibe, &c.	ich blieb	ich bliebe	bleibe, or bleib	geblieben.
Bleichen, to bleach. . . .	ich bleiche, &c.	ich blich	ich bliche	blich	geblichen.
Braten, to roast. . . .	ich brate, du bratest, er brätet, (or ich brate, du brätst, er brät.)	ich bratete, or briet	ich bratete, or briete	brate, or brat	gebraten.
Brechen, to break. . . .	ich breche, du brichst, er bricht	ich brach	ich bräche	brich	gebrochen.
Brennen, to burn. . . .	ich brenne, &c.	ich brannte	ich brennete, or brännte	brenne	gebrannt.
Bringen, to bring. . . .	ich bringe, &c.	ich brachte	ich brächte	bringe	gebracht.
Denken, to think. . . .	ich denke, &c.	ich dachte	ich dächte	denke	gedacht.
Dingen, to bargain, to hire.	ich dinge, &c.	ich dung	ich dünge	dinge	gedungen.
Dreschen, to thresh. . . .	ich dresche, du drischest, er drischt	ich drasch, or drosch	ich drätsche, or drösch	drisch	gedroschen.

Dringen, to press, to urge.....	ich drang, or brung	ich dränge, or brünge	ich bringe	gebrungen.
Dürfen, to dare.	ich darf, du darfst, er darf, wir dürfen	ich durfte	ich dürste	gedurft.
E				
Empfangen, to re- ceive.....	ich empfangt, er empfängt	ich empfang	ich empfang	empfangen.
Empfehlen, to recom- mend.....	ich empfehle, du empfehlst, er empfiehlt	ich empfahl, or empfohl	ich empföhle	empfohlen.
Empfinden, to feel, to perceive.....	ich empfinde, &c.	ich empfand	ich empfinde	empfund.
Entrinnen, to escape.	ich entrinne, &c.	ich entrann	ich entränne	entronnen.
Erbleichen, to grow pale.	ich erbleiche, &c.	ich erblich	ich erbliche	erblichen.
Erküren, to choose.	ich erküre, &c.	ich erkor	ich erküre	erforen.
Erlöschten, to extin- guish, or to be- come extinct.	ich erlösch, du erloschest, or erlischest, er erlöscht, or erlischt	ich erlosch	ich erlösche	erloschen.
Erschallen, to resound	ich erschalle, &c.	ich erscholl	ich erschälle	erschollen.
Erschrecken, to frighten	ich erschrecke, du erschrickst, er erschrickt	ich erschraß	ich erschreße	erschrocken.
Essen, to eat	ich esse, du issest, er isst	ich aß	ich äße	gegessen.
F				
Fahren, to ride, to go.	ich fahre, du fährst, er fährt	ich fuhr	ich führe	gefahren.
Fallen, to fall.....	ich falle, du fällst, er fällt	ich fiel	ich fiele	gefallen.
Fangen, to catch	ich fange, du fängst, er fängt	ich fing	ich finge	gefangen.
Fechten, to fight.....	ich fechte, du fichtst, er ficht	ich focht	ich föchte	gefochten.

Genießen, to enjoy ..	ich genieße, &c.	ich genoss ..	ich genosse ..	genieß ..	genossen.
Geschehen, to happen ..	es geschieht ..	es geschah ..	es geschähe ..	geschehe ..	geschehen.
Gewinnen, to gain, to win ..	ich gewinne, &c.	ich gewann ..	ich gewönne, or gewänne ..	gewinne ..	gewonnen.
Gießen, to pour, to spill ..	ich gieße, &c.	ich goß ..	ich gösse ..	gieße, or gieß ..	gegossen.
Gleichen, to resemble ..	ich gleiche, &c.	ich gleich ..	ich gleiche ..	gleich ..	geglichen.
Gleiten, to glide ..	ich gleite, &c.	ich glitt ..	ich glitte ..	gleite ..	geglitten.
Glimmen, to shine, to glimmer ..	ich glimme, &c.	ich glomm ..	ich glömm ..	glimm ..	geglommen.
Graben, to dig ..	ich grabe, du gräbst, er gräbt ..	ich grub ..	ich grube ..	grabe ..	gegraben.
Greifen, to seize, to grasp ..	ich greife, &c.	ich griff ..	ich griffe ..	greife, or greif ..	gegriffen.
H					
haben, to have ..	ich habe, du hast, er hat ..	ich hatte ..	ich hätte ..	habe ..	gehabt.
halten, to hold ..	ich halte, du hältst, er hält ..	ich hielt ..	ich hielte ..	halte, or halt ..	gehalten.
hängen, to hang ..	ich hänge, du hängst, er hängt ..	ich hing ..	ich hinge ..	hänge ..	gehungen.
hauen, to hew ..	ich haue, du haußt, er haut ..	ich hieb ..	ich hiebe ..	haue, or hau ..	gehauen.
heben, to heave ..	ich hebe, du hebst, er hebt ..	ich hob ..	ich höbe, or hübe ..	hebe ..	gehoben.
heissen, to bid ..	ich heiße, du heissest, er heißt ..	ich hieß ..	ich hiesse ..	heiße, or heiß ..	geheißen.
helfen, to help ..	ich helfe, du hilffst, er hilft ..	ich half ..	ich hülfe ..	helf ..	geholfen.
K					
Reifen, to chide ..	ich reise, &c.	ich riss ..	ich risse ..	reise, or reis ..	geissen.
Rennen, to know ..	ich kenne, &c.	ich kannte ..	ich kennete ..	kenne ..	gekannt.
Kleben, to cleave ..	ich klebe, &c.	ich klob ..	ich klöbe ..	klebe ..	gekleben.
Klimmen, to climb ..	ich klimme, &c.	ich klonn ..	ich klömm ..	klimme ..	geklommen.

Infinitive.	Present.		Imperfect.		Imperative.	Participle.
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Klingen, to sound .	ich klinge, &c.		ich klang	ich klänge	Klinge	geklungen.
Kneifen, or Kneipen, to pinch	ich kneife, or kneipe, &c.		ich kniff, or knipp	ich kniffe, or knippe	kneife, or kneipe	gekneiffen, or gekneipen.
Kommen, to come ..	ich komme, du kommst, &c.		ich kam	ich käme	Komm	gekommen.
Können, to be able ..	ich kann, du kannst, er kann		ich konnte	ich könnte	—————	gekonnt.
Kriechen, to creep ..	ich kriech, du kriechst, &c.		ich kroch	ich kröche	Krieche, or kriech	gekrochen.
L						
Laden, to load	ich lade, du lädest, or lädst, er lädet, or lädt		ich lud	ich lüde	lade	geladen.
Lassen, to let	ich lasse, du lässest, er läßt, or er läßt		ich ließ	ich ließe	lasse, or laß ..	gelaßen.
Laufen, to run	ich laufe, du läuffst, er läuft		ich lief	ich liefe	laufe, or lauf ..	gelaufen.
Leiden, to suffer	ich leide, &c.		ich litt	ich litte	leide	gelitten.
Leihen, to lend	ich leihe, &c.		ich lieh	ich liehe	leihe	geliehen.
Lesen, to read	ich lese, du liesest, er liest		ich las	ich läse	lies	gelesen.
Liegen, to lie down ..	ich liege, &c.		ich lag	ich läge	liege	gelegen.
Lügen, to lie, to utter a falsehood	ich lüge, &c.		ich log	ich löge	lüge	gelogen.
M						
*Mahlen, to grind ..	ich mahle, du mahlest, er mahlt		ich mahlte ..	ich mahlete ..	mahle	gemahlen.
Meiden, to avoid ..	ich meide, &c.		ich mied	ich miede	meide	gemieden.

* Mahlen, to paint, is regular.

Messen, to milk	ich melcke, du melckst, er melket, or du milckst, er milcket	ich mólck	melcke, or milck	gemolcken.
Messen, to measure	ich messe, du missest, er misset, or mißt	ich máße	miß	gemessen.
Mißfallen, to displease	ich mißfalle, du mißfällst, er mißfällt	ich mißfiel	mißfalle	mißfallen.
Mögen, to be willing	ich mag, du magst, er mag	ich möchte	möge	gemocht.
to be able, to like	ich muß, du mußt, er muß, wir müssen, &c.	ich mußte	—	gemußt.
N.				
Nehmen, to take	ich nehme, du nimmst, er nimmt	ich nahm	nimm	genommen.
Nennen, to name	ich neane, &c.	ich nannte	nenne, or nenn	genannt.
P.				
Pfeifen, to whistle	ich pfeife, &c.	ich pfiß	pfeife, or pfeif	gepfiffen.
Pflegen, to cherish	ich pflege, &c.	ich pflog	pflege	gepflogen.
Preisen, to extol, to praise	ich preise, &c.	ich pries	preise	gepriesen.
Q.				
Quellen, to spring forth, to gush, (of fluids)	ich quelle, du quillst, er quillt	ich quólle	quelle, or quill	gequollen.
R.				
Rathen, to advise	ich rathe, du rathst, er rath	ich riethe	rathe, or rath	gerathen.
Reiben, to rub	ich reibe, &c.	ich riebe	reibe	gerieben.
Reißen, to tear	ich reiße, &c.	ich riß	reiße, or reiße	gerissen.
Reiten, to ride	ich reite, &c.	ich ritt	reite, or reit	geritten.
Rennen, to run	ich renne, &c.	ich rannte, or rennte	renne	gerannt.

Infinitive.	Present.		Imperfect.		Imperative.	Participle.
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Riechen, to smell	ich rieche, &c.		ich roch	ich röche	rieche, or ried	gerochen.
Ringen, to wrestle	ich ringe, &c.		ich rang	ich ränge	ringe	gerungen.
Rinnen, to run, to drop, (of fluids)	ich rinne, &c.		ich rann	ich ränne, or rönne	rinne	geronnen.
Rufen, to call	ich rufe, &c.		ich rief	ich riese	rufe	gerufen.
S.						
Saufen, to drink hard, to tipple	ich saufe, du säuffst, er säuft		ich soff	ich söffe	saufe, or sauf	gesoffen.
Saugen, to suck	ich sauge, du saugst, er saugt		ich sog	ich söge	saug	gesogen
Schaffen, to create	ich schaffe, du schaffst, &c.		ich schuf	ich schüfe	schaffe, or schaff	geschaffen
Scheiden, to separate, to part	ich scheide, &c.		ich schied	ich schiede	scheide	geschieden
Scheinen, to appear, to shine	ich scheine, &c.		ich schien	ich schiene	scheine	geschienen
Schelten, to scold, to chide	ich schelte, du schiltst, er schilt		ich schalt	ich schälte	schilt	gescholten
Scheren, to shear	ich schere, du scherst, er schert		ich schor	ich schöre	schere	geschoren.
Schieben, to push, to shove	ich schiebe, du schiebst, er schiebt		ich schob	ich schöbe	schiebe, or schieb	geschoben.
Schießen, to shoot	ich schieße, &c.		ich schoß	ich schöffe	schieße, or schieß	geschossen.
Schinden, to slay	ich schinde, &c.		ich schund	ich schünde	schinde	geschunden.
Schlafen, to sleep	ich schlafe, du schläfst, er schläft		ich schlief	ich schliefe	schlase, or schlaf	geschlafen.

erschlagen, to beat, to strike	ich schlug	ich schlug	geschlagen.
erschleichen, to sneak	ich schleich	ich schleiche	geschlichen.
erschleifen, to grind, to sharpen	ich schliß	ich schleife	geschliffen.
erschleußen, to split, to slit	ich schloß	ich schließe	geschloffen.
erschlingen, to sling	ich schlang	ich schlinge	geschlungen.
erschmeißen, to throw	ich schmiß	ich schmeiße	geschmissen.
erschmelzen, to melt	ich schmolz	ich schmelze, du schmelzest, &c.	geschmolzen.
erschneiden, to cut	ich schnitt	ich schneide, &c.	geschnitten.
erschrauben, to screw	ich schraub	ich schraube, &c.	geschraubt.
erschreiben, to write	ich schrieb	ich schreibe, &c.	geschrieben.
erschreien, to cry	ich schrie	ich schreie, &c.	geschrien.
erschreiten, to stride	ich schritt	ich schreite, &c.	geschritten.
erschwären, to fester, to suppurate	ich schwor	ich schwöre, &c.	geschworen.
erschweigen, to be silent	ich schwieg	ich schweige, &c.	geschwiegen.
erschwellen, to swell	ich schwoll	ich schwell	geschwollen.
erschwimmen, to swim	ich schwamm	ich schwimme, &c.	geschwommen.
erschwinden, to vanish	ich schwand	ich schwinde, &c.	geschwunden.
erschwingen, to swing	ich schwang	ich schwing	geschwungen.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
	<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>		
<i>Schwören, to swear.</i>	ich schwöre, &c.	ich schwor, or schwur	ich schwöre, or schwüre	ich schwöre	schwöre	geschworen.
<i>Sehen, to see</i>	ich sehe, du siehst, er sieht	ich sah	ich sähe	ich sehe	siehe, or sieh	gesehen.
<i>Senden, to send</i>	ich sende, &c.	ich sandte	ich sendete	ich sende	sende	gesandt.
<i>Seyn, to be</i>	ich bin, du bist, er ist	ich war	ich wäre	ich sey	sey	gewesen.
<i>Sieden, to boil</i>	ich siede, &c.	ich kochte	ich kötte	ich siede	siede	gekochten.
<i>Singen, to sing</i>	ich singe, &c.	ich sang	ich sänge	ich singe	singe	gesungen.
<i>Sinken, to sink</i>	ich sinke, &c.	ich sank	ich sänke	ich sinke	sinke	gesunken.
<i>Sinnen, to think, to meditate</i>	ich sinne, &c.	ich sann	ich sänne	ich sinne	sinne	gesonnen.
<i>Eigen, to sit</i>	ich sitze, &c.	ich saß	ich säße	ich sitze	sitze	gesehen.
<i>Gollen, to be obliged.</i>	ich soll, du sollst, er soll	ich sollte	ich sollte	ich soll	—	gesollt.
<i>Speyen, or speien, to spit</i>	ich speye, &c.	ich spie	ich spie	ich speye	speye, or spey	gespien.
<i>Spinnen, to spin</i>	ich spinne, &c.	ich spann	ich spanne	ich spinne	spinne	gesponnen.
<i>Splesßen, to split, or to cleave</i>	ich spleiße, &c.	ich spalt	ich spalte	ich spleiße	spleiße	gesplissen.
<i>Spredhen, to speak</i>	ich spreche, du sprichst, er spricht	ich sprach	ich spräche	ich spreche	sprich	gesprochen.
<i>Spriesßen, to sprout</i>	ich sprieße, &c.	ich sproß	ich spröße	ich sprieße	sprieße	gesprossen.
<i>Springen, to spring, to leap</i>	ich springe, &c.	ich sprang	ich spränge	ich springe	springe	gesprungen.
<i>Stechen, to sting, to prick</i>	ich steche, du stichst, er sticht	ich stach	ich stäche	ich steche	stich	gestochen.

Stechen, to stick	ich stecke, &c.	ich steckte, or stat	ich steckte, or stäte	gesteckt.
Stehen, to stand	ich stehe, &c.	ich stand, or stund	ich stände, or stünde	gestanden.
Stehlen, to steal	ich stehle, du stiehst, er stiehlt	ich stahl	ich stähle	gestohlen.
Steigen, to mount, to ascend	ich steige, &c.	ich stieg	ich stiege	gestiegen.
Sterben, to die	ich sterbe, du stirbst, er stirbt	ich starb	ich stürbe	gestorben.
Stieben, to dust, to scatter	ich stiebe, &c.	ich stob	ich stöbe	gestoben.
Stinken, to stink	ich stinke, &c.	ich stank	ich stänke	gestunken.
Stoßen, to push	ich stoße, du stoßest, er stößt	ich stieß	ich stieße	gestoßen.
Streichen, to stroke, to slide along	ich streiche, &c.	ich strich	ich striche	gestrichen.
Streiten, to strive, to contend	ich streite, &c.	ich stritt	ich stritte	gestritten.
T.				
Thun, to do	ich thue, du thust, er thut	ich that	ich thäte	gethan.
Tragen, to carry	ich trage, du trägst, er trägt	ich trug	ich trüge	getragen.
Treffen, to hit	ich treffe, du triffst, er trifft	ich traf	ich träfe	getroffen.
Treiben, to drive	ich treibe, &c.	ich trieb	ich triebe	getrieben.
Treten, to tread	ich trete, du trittst, er tritt	ich trat	ich träte	getreten.
Triegen, to deceive	ich triege, &c.	ich trog	ich tröge	getrogen.
Trinken, to drink	ich trinke, &c.	ich trank	ich tränke	getrunken.
V.				
Verbergen, to conceal	ich verberge, du verbirgst, er verbirgt	ich verbarg	ich verbärge	verborgen.

Infinitive.	Present. Indicative.	Imperfect.		Imperative	Participle.
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Verbieten, to forbid ..	ich verbiete, &c.	ich verbot	ich verböte ..	verbiete	verboten.
Verbleichen, to fade ..	ich verbleiche, &c.	ich verblüch	ich verblüche ..	verbleiche	verblüchen.
Verderben, to spoil, to corrupt	ich verderbe, du verderbst, er verderbt	ich verderb	ich verderbe ..	verdirb	verdorben.
Verdriessen, to offend	es verdriest, &c. <i>only used in the 3d. per.</i>	es verdross	es verdresse ..	verdrieße	verdrossen.
Vergeffen, to forget ..	ich vergesse, du vergiffest, er vergißt	ich vergaß	ich vergäße ..	vergiß	vergeffen.
Vergleichen, to com- pare	ich vergleiche, &c.	ich verglich	ich vergliche ..	vergleiche	verglüchen.
Verlassen, to leave ..	ich verlasse, du verlässest, er verläßt	ich verließ	ich verliesse ..	verlaß	verlassen.
Verlieren, to lose ..	ich verliere, &c.	ich verlor	ich verlöre ..	verliere	verloren.
Verlöschén, to extin- guish	ich verlösche, &c.	ich verlosch	ich verlösche ..	verlösche	verloschen.
Vermeiden, to avoid ..	ich vermeide, &c.	ich vermied	ich vermiede ..	vermeide	vermieden.
Verwirren, to perplex, to confound	ich verwirre, &c.	ich verwirrte, or ich verwirr	ich verwirrete, or ich verwirrte	verwirre	verwirret, or verwirren.
Verzeihen, to forgive	ich verzeihe, &c.	ich verzieh	ich verziehe ..	verzeih	verziehen.
W.					
Wachsen, to grow ..	ich wachse, du wachsest, er wächst	ich wuchs	ich wüchse	wachse	gewachsen.
Wägen, or Wiegen, to weigh	ich wiege, du wiegst, er wiegt, or ich wäge, du wägst, er wägt	ich wog	ich wöge	wäge	gewogen.
Waschen, to wash ..	ich wasche, du wäschest, er wäscht	ich wusch	ich wüschse	wasche	gewaschen.
Weichen, to yield	ich weiche, &c.	ich wich	ich wüchse	weiche	gewichen.

Zeigen, to show	ich weise, &c.	ich wies	ich wiese	weise	gewiesen.
Werben, to sue for, to enroll	ich werbe, du wirbst, er wirbt	ich warb	ich wäre	wirb	geworben.
Werden, to become	ich werde, du wirst, er wird	ich ward	ich würde	werde	geworden.
Werfen, to throw	ich werfe, du wirfst, er wirft	ich warf	ich wäre	wirf	geworfen.
Binden, to wind, to turn	ich winde, &c.	ich wand	ich wände	winde	gewunden.
Wissen, to know	ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß	ich wußte	ich wüßte	wisse	gewußt.
Wollen, to be willing, to wish	ich will, du willst, er will; wir wollen, &c.	ich wollte	ich wollte	wolle	gewollt.
Z.					
Zeihen, to accuse of	ich zeihe, &c.	ich zieh	ich ziehe	ziehe	geziehen.
Ziehen, to draw, to pull	ich ziehe, &c.	ich zog	ich zöge	ziehe, or zieh	gezogen.
Zwingen, to force, to compel	ich zwinge, &c.	ich zwang	ich zwänge	zwinge	gezwungen.

Obs. The following Verbs are regular if they are used as Actives, and irregular if they are used as Neuters.

Infinitive.	Present. Indicative.	Imperfect.		Imperative.	Participle.
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
<i>Regular Active</i>	ich erschrecke, I frighten	ich erschreckte	ich erschreckete	erschrecke	erschrecket.
<i>Irreg. Neuter</i>	ich erschrecke, I am frightened	ich erschraß	ich erschraße	erschrick	erschrocken.
<i>Reg. Active</i>	ich scheide, I separate	ich scheide	ich scheide	scheide	gescheidet.
<i>Irreg. Neuter</i>	ich scheide, I depart	ich schied	ich schiede	scheide	geschieden.
<i>Reg. Active</i>	ich schmelze, I melt	ich schmelzte	ich schmelzete	schmelze	geschmolzet.
<i>Irreg. Neuter</i>	ich schmelze, I am melted, or I melt	ich schmolz	ich schmolze	schmilz	geschmolzen.
<i>Reg. Active</i>	ich schweige, I silence	ich schweigte	ich schweigte	schweige	geschweiget.
<i>Irreg. Neuter</i>	ich schweige, I am silent	ich schwieg	ich schwiege	schweige	geschwiegen.
<i>Reg. Active</i>	ich verderbe, I spoil	ich verderbte	ich verderbete	verderbe	verderbet.
<i>Irreg. Neuter</i>	ich verderbe, I perish	ich verdarb	ich verdarbe	verdirb	verdorben.
<i>Reg. Active</i>	ich weiche, I soften	ich weichte	ich weichte	weiche	geweicht.
<i>Irreg. Neuter</i>	ich weiche, I give way, or yield	ich wich	ich wiche	weiche	gewichen.

The following are also to be distinguished.

Gaugen, to suck, <i>irreg.</i>	Gäugen, to suckle, <i>regular.</i>
Schwimmen, to swim, <i>ir.</i>	Schwemmen, to wash away, <i>reg.</i>
Sinken, to sink, <i>ir.</i>	Senken, to sink, to let down, <i>reg.</i>
Springen, to spring, <i>ir.</i>	Sprenken, to sprinkle, <i>reg.</i>
Trinken, to drink, <i>ir.</i>	Tränken, to drink, <i>reg.</i>

Promiscuous practice on the Irregular Verbs.

Indicative.

Present.	Infinitive.
I know,	wissen.
Do I dare?	dürfen.
I must not,	müssen.
Can I not?	können.
Thou fallest,	fallen.
Dost thou catch?	fangen.
Thou dost not hold,	halten.
Dost thou not hang?	hängen.
He must,	müssen.
Can he?	können.
He does not let,	lassen.
Does he not sleep?	schlafen.
She advises,	rathen.
Does she go?	fahren.
She does not dig,	graben.
Does she not strike?	schlagen.
It grows,	wachsen.
Does it see?	sehen.
It does not eat,	essen.
Does it not happen?	geschehen.
We give,	geben.
Do we step?	treten.
We do not forget,	vergessen.
You read,	lesen.
Do you measure?	messen.
You do not hew,	hauen.
Do you not carry?	tragen.
They see,	sehen.
Do they remain?	bleiben.
They do not seize,	greifen.
They do not go?	gehen.

Imperfect.

Infinitive.

I might,	mögen.
Did I eat?	essen.
I did not dig,	graben.

Imperfect.

Did I not step ?
 Thou remainedst,
 Didst thou lend ?
 Thou didst not avoid,
 Didst thou not fight ?
 He moved,
 Did he heave, or lift ?
 He did not conceal,
 Did he not take ?
 He commanded,
 Did she speak ?
 She did not write,
 Did she not praise ?
 It bit,
 Did it glide ?
 It did not drive,
 Did it not bark ?

Infinitive.

treten.
 bleiben.
 leihen.
 meiden.
 fechten.
 bewegen.
 heben.
 bergen.
 nehmen.
 befehlen.
 sprechen.
 schreiben.
 preisen.
 beißen.
 gleiten.
 treiben.
 bellen.

Perfect.

I have begun.
 Hast thou spoken ?
 Has he not deceived ?
 She has not fled,
 It has not flowed,
 We have not sheared,
 Have you not broken ?
 They have not recom-
 mended,

Infinitive.

beginnen.
 sprechen.
 betriegen.
 fliehen.
 fließen.
 scheren.
 brechen.
 empfehlen.

Pluperfect.

I had not stolen,
 Hadst thou commanded ?
 He had valued,
 She had not given,
 Had it not begun ?
 He had helped,
 We had prayed, or begged,
 You had called,
 Had they not thrust ?

Infinitive.

stehlen.
 befehlen.
 gelten.
 geben.
 beginnen.
 helfen.
 bitten.
 heißen.
 stoßen.

First and second Future.

I shall lose,
 I shall have lost,

verlieren.

Wilt thou shoot ?
 Wilt thou have shot ?
 He will win,
 Will he not have won ?
 She will spin,
 Will she not have spun ?
 It will boil,
 It will have boiled,
 We shall see,
 We shall have seen,
 You will not grow,
 You will not have grown,
 They will rub,
 Will they not have rubbed ?

schießen.

 gewinnen.

 spinnen.

 kochen.

 sehen.

 wachsen.

 reiben.

Conditional; Simple and Compound.

I should not seize,
 I should not have seized,
 Wouldst thou bend ?
 Wouldst thou have bent ?
 He would beat,
 He would have beaten,
 She would drink,
 She would have drank,
 It would not sink,
 Would it not have sunk ?
 Should we sue for ?
 We should not have sued for it,
 You would throw,
 You would have thrown,
 They would perceive,
 Would they not have perceived ?

greifen.

 biegen.

 schlagen.

 trinken.

 sinken.

 werben.

 werfen.

 empfinden.

Imperative.

Read (*thou*,)
 Give,
 Take,
 Do not step,
 Eat, or do you eat,
 Do not forget,
 Let him come,
 Let him not give,

lesen.
 geben.
 nehmen.
 treten.
 essen.
 vergessen.
 kommen.
 geben.

Let us go,
 Speak, or do you speak,
 Let them enjoy,
 Do not speak,

gehen.
 sprechen.
 genießen.
 sprechen.

Subjunctive.

Present.

I may fall,
 I may not be able,
 Thou mayst not,
 Thou must,
 He may be willing,
 We may beat,
 They may not bear,

fallen.
 können.
 mögen.
 müssen.
 wollen.
 schlagen.
 tragen.

Imperfect.

I might dig,
 I might not die,
 Thou mightst break,
 Thou mightst not command,
 He might conceal,
 She might not help,
 It might eat,
 It might not sting,
 We might not lose,
 You might not creep,
 They might not confuse,
 They might not spoil,

graben.
 sterben.
 brechen.
 befehlen.
 bergen.
 helfen.
 essen.
 stechen.
 verlieren.
 kriechen.
 verwirren.
 verderben.

§ V. Conjugation of a regular Passive Verb.

PASSIVE VERBS, regular and irregular, are formed from the actives, and are conjugated throughout in all their tenses, with the auxiliary werden, (*Englished, to be;*) added to the participle; as, *ich werde geliebt*, I am loved; *ich werde gesehen*, I am seen.

*Conjugation of the Regular Passive Verb Geliebt werden,
to be loved.*

<i>Inf.</i>	<i>No Part. Pres.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Geliebt werden, to be loved.		Geliebt worden, been loved.
<i>Perf.</i> Geliebt, wor= den seyn, to have been loved.		

INDICATIVE; Present.

Singular.

Ich werde geliebt, I am loved.
Du wirst geliebt, thou art loved.
Er, sie, or es wird geliebt, he, she, or it is loved.

Plural.

Wir werden geliebt, we are loved.
Ihr werdet geliebt, you are loved.
Sie werden geliebt, they are loved.

Imperfect.

Singular.

Ich wurde, or ward geliebt, I was loved.
Du wurdest geliebt, thou wast loved.
Er wurde geliebt, he was loved.

Plural.

Wir wurden geliebt, we were loved.
Ihr wurdet geliebt, you were loved.
Sie wurden geliebt, they were loved.

Perfect.

Singular.

Ich bin geliebt worden, I have been loved.
Du bist geliebt worden, thou hast been loved.
Er ist geliebt worden, he has been loved.

Plural.

Wir sind geliebt worden, we have been loved.
Ihr seyd geliebt worden, you have been loved.
Sie sind geliebt worden, they have been loved.

Pluperfect.

Singular.

Ich war geliebt worden, I had been loved.

Du warst geliebt worden, thou hadst been loved.

Er war geliebt worden, he had been loved.

Plural.

Wir waren geliebt worden, we had been loved.

Ihr waret geliebt worden, you had been loved.

Sie waren geliebt worden, they had been loved.

First Future.

Singular.

Ich werde geliebt werden, I shall, or will be loved.

Du wirst geliebt werden, thou wilt be loved.

Er wird geliebt werden, he will be loved.

Plural.

Wir werden geliebt werden, we shall, or will be loved.

Ihr werdet geliebt werden, you will be loved.

Sie werden geliebt werden, they will be loved.

Second Future.

Singular.

Ich werde geliebt worden seyn, I shall have been loved.

Du wirst geliebt worden seyn, thou wilt have been loved.

Er wird geliebt worden seyn, he will have been loved.

Plural.

Wir werden geliebt worden seyn, we shall have been loved.

Ihr werdet geliebt worden seyn, you will have been loved.

Sie werden geliebt worden seyn, they will have been loved.

Conditional ; Simple.

Singular.

Ich würde geliebt werden, I should, or would be loved.

Du würdest geliebt werden, thou wouldst be loved.

Er würde geliebt werden, he would be loved.

Plural.

Wir würden geliebt werden, we should, or would be loved.

Ihr würdet geliebt werden, you would be loved.

Sie würden geliebt werden, they would be loved.

Conditional; Compound.

Singular.

Ich würde geliebt worden seyn, I should have been loved.
Du würdest geliebt worden seyn, thou wouldst have &c.
Er würde geliebt worden seyn, he would have been loved.

Plural.

Wir würden geliebt worden seyn, we should have been loved.
Ihr würdet geliebt worden seyn, you would have been loved.
Sie würden geliebt worden seyn, they would have been loved.

Imperative.

Singular.

2. Werde (du) geliebt, be thou loved.
3. Werde er geliebt, let him be loved.

Plural.

1. Lasset uns geliebt werden, let us be loved.
2. Werdet (ihr) geliebt, be ye, or you loved; or
Werden Sie geliebt, be you loved, or do you be loved.
3. Werden sie geliebt, let them be loved.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Singular.

Ich werde geliebt, I may be loved.
Du werdest geliebt, thou mayst be loved.
Er werde geliebt, he may be loved.

Plural.

Wir werden geliebt, we may be loved.
Ihr werdet geliebt, you may be loved.
Sie werden geliebt, they may be loved.

Imperfect.

Singular.

Ich würde geliebt, I might be loved.
Du würdest geliebt, thou mightst be loved.
Er würde geliebt, he might be loved.

Imperfect.

Plural.

Wir würden geliebt, we might be loved.

Ihr würdet geliebt, you might be loved.

Sie würden geliebt, they might be loved.

Perfect.

Singular.

Ich sey geliebt worden, I may have been loved.

Du seyst geliebt worden, thou mayst have been loved.

Er sey geliebt worden, he may have been loved.

Plural.

Wir seyn geliebt worden, we may have been loved.

Ihr seyd geliebt worden, you may have been loved.

Sie seyn geliebt worden, they may have been loved:

Pluperfect.

Singular.

Ich wäre geliebt worden, I might have been loved.

Du wärest geliebt worden, thou mightst have been loved.

Er wäre geliebt worden, he might have been loved.

Plural.

Wir wären geliebt worden, we might have been loved.

Ihr wäret geliebt worden, you might have been loved.

Sie wären geliebt worden, they might have been loved.

First Future.

Singular.

Ich werde geliebt werden, I shall, or will be loved.

Du werdest geliebt werden, thou wilt be loved.

Er werde geliebt werden, he will be loved.

Plural.

Wir werden geliebt werden, we shall, or will be loved.

Ihr werdet geliebt werden, you will be loved.

Sie werden geliebt werden, they will be loved.

Second Future.

Singular.

Ich werde geliebt worden seyn, I shall have been loved.

Du werdest geliebt worden seyn, thou wilt have been loved.

Er werde geliebt worden seyn, he will have been loved.

Second Future.

Plural

Wir werden geliebt worden seyn, we shall have been loved.
 Ihr werdet geliebt worden seyn, you will have been loved.
 Sie werden geliebt worden seyn, they will have been loved

*Conjugation of the Irregular Passive Verb sehen, to see.**Inf.**Participle Pret.*

Pres. Gesehen werden, to be seen. Gesehen worden, been seen.

Pret. Gesehen worden seyn, to have been seen. Ein Gesehener, one who has been seen.

Present.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Sing.**Sing.*

Sch werde gesehen, I am seen. Sch werde gesehen, I may be seen.

Du wirst gesehen, thou art seen, &c. Du werdest gesehen, thou mayst, &c.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir werden gesehen, we are seen, &c. Wir werden gesehen, we may be seen, &c.

Imperfect.

Sch wurde gesehen, I was seen, &c. Sch würde gesehen, I might be seen, &c.

Perfect.

Sch bin gesehen worden, I have been seen, &c. Sch sey gesehen worden, I may have been seen, &c.

Pluperfect.

Sch war gesehen worden, I had been seen, &c. Sch wäre gesehen worden, I might have been seen, &c.

First Future.

Sch werde gesehen werden, I shall be seen, &c. Sch werde gesehen werden, I shall be seen, &c.

Second Future.

<i>Ich werde gesehen worden</i>	<i>Ich werde gesehen worden seyn,</i>
<i>seyn, I shall have been</i>	<i>I shall have been seen, &c.</i>
<i>seen, &c.</i>	

Conditional ; Simple.

*Sing.**Plural.*

<i>Ich würde gesehen werden,</i>	<i>Wir würden gesehen werden,</i>
<i>I should be seen, &c.</i>	<i>we should be seen, &c.</i>

Conditional ; Compound.

*Sing.**Plural.*

<i>Ich würde gesehen worden</i>	<i>Wir würden gesehen worden</i>
<i>seyn, I should have been</i>	<i>seyn, we should have been</i>
<i>seen, &c.</i>	<i>seen, &c.</i>

Imperative.

*Sing.**Plural.*

<i>Werde du gesehen, be thou</i>	<i>Werdet ihr gesehen, be you</i>
<i>seen.</i>	<i>seen ; or, werden Sie gese-</i>
	<i>hen, be you seen.</i>
<i>Werde er gesehen, let him</i>	<i>Werden sie gesehen, let them</i>
<i>be seen.</i>	<i>be seen.</i>

Practice on the Passive Verbs Regular and Irregular.

Indicative present.

<i>Am I not praised ?</i>	<i>Loben, to praise.</i>
<i>Is it not lost ?</i>	<i>Verlieren, to lose.</i>
<i>Are they not rubbed ?</i>	<i>Reiben, to rub.</i>

Imperfect.

<i>Was I not beaten ?</i>	<i>Schlagen, to beat.</i>
<i>We were not taught,</i>	<i>Lehren, to teach.</i>
<i>Were you not hired ?</i>	<i>Miethen, to hire.</i>
<i>They were read,</i>	<i>Lesen, to read.</i>

Perfect.

I have been chosen,	wählen, to choose.
Thou hast been blamed,	tadeln, to blame.
He has been bitten,	beißen, to bite.
We have been carried,	tragen, to carry.
You have not been punished,	strafen, to punish.
Have they been laden?	laden, to load.

Pluperfect.

Had I not been advised?	rathen, to advise.
Thou hadst been created,	schaffen, to create.
Had it been measured?	messen, to measure.
We had been hindered,	hindern, to hinder.
They had not been given,	geben, to give.

Futures.

I shall be weakened,	schwächen, to weaken.
Shall we not be seized?	greifen, to seize.
Will they not be washed?	waschen, to wash.
You will have been seen,	sehen, to see.
Will they not have advised?	rathen, to advise.

Conditionals.

Should I not be shunned?	meiden, to shun.
He would not be revenged,	rächen, to revenge.
Would it not be stolen?	stehlen, to steal.
Should we not have been caught?	fangen, to catch.
You would not have been hidden,	bergen, to hide.
They would not have been begun,	beginnen, to begin.

§ VI. As far as regards the formation of their tenses, all verbs which do not admit of a passive form, are considered neuter, and are conjugated in the same manner as verbs active; except that in the perfect and pluperfect tenses; some are conjugated with *seyn*, instead of *haben*.

I. CONJUGATION OF NEUTER VERBS.

Conjugation of the Regular Verb Leben, to live, with the Auxiliary Verb Haben.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Part. Pres.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Leben, to live.	Lebend, living.
<i>Pret.</i> Gelebt haben, to have lived.	Ein Lebender, one who lives.

Part. Perf.
Gelebt, lived.

Present.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich lebe, I live.	Ich lebe, I may live.
Du lebst, (lebest,) thou livest.	Du lebest, thou mayst live.
Er, sie, or es lebt, he, she, or it lives.	Er lebe, he may live.

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Wir leben, we live.	Wir leben, we may live.
Ihr lebet, or lebt, you live.	Ihr lebet, you may live.
Sie leben, they live.	Sie leben, they may live.

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich lebte, I lived.	Ich lebete, I might live.
Du lebtest, thou livedst.	Du lebestest, thou mightst live.
Er lebte, he lived.	Er lebete, he might live.

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Wir lebten, we lived.	Wir lebeten, we might live.
Ihr lebetet, you lived.	Ihr lebetet, you might live.
Sie lebten, they lived.	Sie lebeten, they might live.

Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Ich habe gelebt, I have lived.	Ich habe gelebt, I may have lived.
Du hast gelebt, thou &c.	Du habest gelebt, thou &c.

Pluperfect.

Indicative.

Sing.

Ich hatte gelebt, I had
lived.

Du hattest gelebt, thou &c.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Ich hätte gelebt, I might
have lived.

Du hättest gelebt, thou &c.

First Future.

Sing.

Ich werde leben, I shall live.

Du wirst leben, thou &c.

Sing.

Ich werde leben, I shall live.

Du werdest leben, thou &c.

Second Future.

Sing.

Ich werde gelebt haben, I
shall have lived.

Du wirst gelebt haben, &c.

Sing.

Ich werde gelebt haben, I shall
have lived.

Du werdest gelebt haben, &c.

Conditional.

Simple.

Sing.

Ich würde leben, I should
live.

Du würdest leben, thou &c.

Compound.

Sing.

Ich würde gelebt haben, I
should have lived.

Du würdest gelebt haben, &c.

Plural.

Wir würden leben, we
should live.

Ihr würdet leben, you &c.

Plural.

Wir würden gelebt haben, we
should have lived.

Ihr würdet gelebt haben, &c.

So decline reden, to speak; beten, to pray.

II. Conjugation of the Irregular Verb Kommen, to come, with the Auxiliary Seyn.

Infinitive.

Pres. Kommen, to come.

Pret. Gefommen seyn, to
be come.

Part. Pres.

Kommend, coming.

Part. Perf.

Gefommen, come.

Present.

Indicative.

Sing.

Ich komme, I come.

Du kommst, or kommst, thou comest.

Er kommt, or kommt, he comes.

Plural.

Wir kommen, we come.

Ihr kommt, or kommet, you come.

Sie kommen, they come.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Ich komme, I may come.

Du kommest, thou mayst come.

Er komme, he may come.

Plural.

Wir kommen, we may come.

Ihr kommet, you may come.

Sie kommen, they may come.

Imperfect.

Sing.

Ich kam, I came.

Du kamst, thou camest.

Er kam, he came.

Sing.

Ich kame, I might come.

Du kamest, thou mightst come.

Er kame, he might come.

Plural.

Wir kamen, we came.

Ihr kamet, you came.

Sie kamen, they came.

Plural.

Wir kamen, we might come.

Ihr kamet, you might come.

Sie kamen, they might come.

Perfect.

Sing.

Ich bin gekommen, I am come.

Du bist gekommen, thou art come.

Er ist gekommen, he is come.

Sing.

Ich sey gekommen, I may be come.

Du seyest gekommen, thou &c.

Er sey gekommen, he &c.

Plural.

Wir sind gekommen, we are come.

Ihr seyd gekommen, you &c.

Sie sind gekommen, they &c.

Plural.

Wir seyn gekommen, we may be come.

Ihr seynd gekommen, you &c.

Sie seyn gekommen, they &c.

Pluperfect.

Indicative.

Sing.

Ich war gekommen, I was
come.

Du warst gekommen, thou, &c.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Ich wäre gekommen, I might
be come.

Du wärest gekommen, thou, &c.

First Future.

Sing.

Ich werde kommen, I shall
come.

Du wirst kommen, thou
wilt, &c.

Sing.

Ich werde kommen, I shall
come.

Du werdest kommen, thou,
&c.

Second Future.

Sing.

Ich werde gekommen seyn,
I shall be come.

Du wirst gekommen seyn,
thou, &c.

Sing.

Ich werde gekommen seyn,
I shall be come.

Du werdest gekommen seyn,
thou, &c.

Conditional.

Simple.

Sing.

Ich würde kommen, I should
come.

Du würdest kommen, &c.

Compound.

Sing.

Ich würde gekommen seyn, I
should be come.

Du würdest gekommen seyn,
thou, &c.

Plural.

Wir würden kommen, we
should come.

Ihr würdet kommen, you &c.

Plural.

Wir würden gekommen seyn,
we should be come.

Ihr würdet gekommen seyn,
you, &c.

Neuter verbs, in German, are distinguished from those in English, by nothing but the auxiliaries *haben, to have,* and *seyn, to be.*

In the following Exercise is given a List of those Verbs, which take *Haben*, and those which take *seyn*.

Practice on Neuter Verbs taking Haben.

I have thirsted,	dürsten, to thirst.
Have I been zealous?	eifern, to be zealous.
I have not been angry,	zürnen, to be angry.
Have I not trembled?	zittern, to tremble.
Thou hast quaked,	beben, to quake.
Thou hast not waked,	wachen, to wake.
Hast thou been giddy?	schwindeln, to be giddy.
Hast thou not been slovenly?	fudeln, to be slovenly.
It has thundered,	donnern, to thunder.
He has not murmured,	brummen, to murmur.
Has she enquired?	forschen, to enquire.
Has she not been penurious?	hargen, to be penurious.
We have labored,	arbeiten, to labor.
Have we not slept?	schlafen, to sleep.
Have you not suffered?	leiden, to suffer.
You have not lived,	leben, to live.
They have not blossomed,	blühen, to blossom.
Had I not starved?	darben, to starve.
Hast thou pined?	schmachten, to pine.
Thou hadst not rested,	ruhen, to rest.
It had been worth,	taugen, to be worth.
Had she lain?	liegen, to lie.
He had not stood,	stehen, to stand.
Had he not sat?	sitzen, to sit.
It had not frozen,	frieren, to freeze.
We had not dreamt,	träumen, to dream.
They had been called,	heißen, to be called.
They had not grown old,	altern, to grow old.
Had they hungered?	hungern, to hunger.

Practice on the Neuter Verbs taking Seyn.

I have staid,	bleiben, to stay.
Have I not staid?	.....
I have not staid,	.....

Hast thou run?	rennen, to run.
Thou hast not climbed,	klimmen, to climb.
Thou hast travelled,	reisen, to travel.
He has stumbled,	stolpern, to stumble.
Has he sailed?	segeln, to sail.
He is not come,	kommen, to come.
Is he not gone?	gehen, to go.
Has she followed?	folgen, to follow.
It has not burst,	bersten, to burst.
We have proceeded,	fortfahren, to proceed.
Have we run?	laufen, to run.
We have not wandered,	wandern, to wander.
Have we not slid?	gleiten, to slide.
You have swum,	schwimmen, to swim.
Have you swum?	.....
You have not crept,	kriechen, to creep.
Have you not embarked?	einschiffen, to embark.
They have ridden,	reiten, to ride.
Have they ridden?	.....
They have not ridden,	.....
Have they not ridden?	.....
I had walked,	gehen, to walk.
Had I drawn near?	näher rücken, to draw near.
I had not fled,	fliehen, to flee.
Had I not fallen?	fallen, to fall.
Thou hadst slipped,	schlupfen, to slip.
Hadst thou sunk?	sinken, to sink.
Thou hadst not penetrated,	dringen, to penetrate.
He had departed,	scheiden, to depart.
Had he not departed?	.....
It had darted,	schießen, to dart.
Had it not slipped?	schlupfen, to slip.
We had not pressed,	dringen, to press.
You had not recovered,	genesen, to recover.
They had not slunk.	schleichen, to slink.

Observations on the Neuter Verbs.

The use of the auxiliaries, in German, before the participle, depends upon the signification of the verb.

In English, the auxiliary *to have* is not only put before every verb which expresses a direct action, but also before such as ex-

press motion, or the continuation of a state: and *to be*, only in cases where an immediate state of rest is implied. Consequently those verbs which take *haben* in German, mostly take *have* in English; but also many which take *seyn* in German, are Englished by *have*. Upon this general rule, are founded the following special rules:

I. Neuters take *Haben*, to *have*.

(a) Which express physical actions; as,

Zittern, to tremble.

Bellen, to bark.

Donnern, to thunder.

Schallen, to sound, Ex.

Ich habe gezittert, I have trembled.

Es hat gedonnert, it has thundered, &c.

(*But erschallen*, to resound, takes *seyn*.)

(b) Which denote the completion of an action or a state; as,

Ausblühen, to finish blowing.

Ausbrennen, to burn out.

Ausstehen, to endure, Ex.

Der Baum hat ausgeblühet, the tree has finished blowing.

Das Feuer hat ausgebrannt, the fire has burnt out.

Ich habe ausgestanden, I have endured, or stood out, &c.

(c) Which denote a continued state, whether of motion, or of rest; as,

Liegen, to lie.

Sitzen, to sit.

Ruhen, to rest.

Träumen, to dream.

Schlafen, to sleep, &c. Ex.

Ich habe geschlafen, I have slept.

Er hat geruhet, he has rested, &c.

Several of these verbs are translated by *have*, and a *participle*, or *have been*, and an *adjective* similar in signification to the verb, as:

Dürsten, to thirst, or to be thirsty.

Hungern, to hunger, or to be hungry, &c. Ex.

Ich habe gedürstet, I have thirsted, or have been thirsty.

Ich habe gehungert, I have hungered, or have been hungry, &c.

II. Neuter verbs take *seyn*, in German.

(a) Which denote a falling into any state, as,

Abarten, to degenerate, or deviate.

Begegnen, to meet with.

Bersten, to burst.

Ausarten, to degenerate.

Entschlafen, to expire.

Erblaffen, to turn pale.

Erkranken, to fall ill.

Erröthen, to blush.

Fallen, to fall.

Genesen, to recover.

Geschehen, to happen.

Gerathen, to fall upon.

Scheitern, to wreck.

Sinken, to sink.

Sterben, to die.

Stürzen, to plunge.

Verhungern, to starve, &c.

Although the above verbs take *seyn*, they are mostly Englished by the verb *have*, but sometimes by *be*, Ex.

Der Sohn ist von dem Vater abgeartet, the son *has* degenerated from the father.

Sie sind geborsten, they *are* burst, or *have* burst.

Er ist gestorben, he *has* died, or *is* dead.

Sie sind ihm begegnet, they *have* met him, or met with him.

Es ist geschehen, it *has* happened.

Sie sind gefallen, they *are* fallen, or *have* fallen.

(b) Which denote a change of place, as :

Aufstehen, to rise.

Ankommen, to arrive.

Dringen, to press.

Fahren, to ride in a carriage.

Folgen, to follow.

Gehen, to go.

Gelangen, to attain.

Kommen, to come.

Laufen, to run.

Reiten, to ride.

Einschiffen, to embark.

Schreiten, to stride.

Schwimmen, to swim, &c.

These verbs, like the preceding, are Englished by *have* and sometimes by *be*, Ex.

Ich bin gefolgt, I *have* followed.

Sie sind gelangt, they *have* attained.

Er ist gegangen, he *is* gone, or *has* gone.

Sie sind gelaufen, they *have* run.

(c) To the above may be added the following,

Bleiben, to remain.

Bemühen, or befeissen, to endeavour.

Ich bin geblieben, I *have* remained.

Beharren, to persevere.

Gefinnen, to be disposed.

Gelingen, to succeed, Ex.

Ich bin bemühet, I *have* endeavoured.

III. Some Neuter Verbs in German take both *haben*, and *seyn*, according to their signification.

(a) Some take *haben*, to denote the completion of an action, or a state, and *seyn* to denote the condition of a thing, Ex.

Das Feuer hat ausgebrannt, the fire *has* burnt out.
 Die Stadt ist ausgebrannt, the city *is* burnt down.
 Die Kohlen haben ausgedampft, the coals *have* smoked out.
 Die Feuchtigkeit ist ausgedampft, the damp *is* evaporated.

(b) Verbs expressive of motion, take *seyn*, when the place, or the manner of the motion is referred to; but *haben*, when the simple action is designated, as:

Ich bin in die Stadt geritten, I *have* ridden, or rode into the city.
 Ich bin langsam geritten, I *have* ridden, or rode slowly.
 Ich bin den ganzen Tag geritten, I *have been* riding the whole day.

Ich habe das Pferd geritten, I *have* ridden that horse.
 Der Feind ist in die Stadt gedrungen, the enemy *has* penetrated into the city.

Er hat in mich gedrungen, he *has* pressed upon me.
 Wir sind in die Stadt geeilet, we *have* hastened into the city.
 Wir haben mit der Sache geeilet, we *have* hastened with the affair.
 Wir sind fortgefahren, we *have* gone forward.
 Wir haben fortgefahren zu arbeiten, we *have* continued to labor.
 Der Vogel ist in das Feld geflattert, the bird *has* fluttered into the field.

Er hat lange geflattert, it *has been* long fluttering.
 Er ist ihm gefolgt, he *has* followed him.
 Er hat meinen Lehren gefolgt, he *has* followed my precepts.
 Die Erde ist gefroren, the earth *is* frozen.
 Wir haben gefroren, we *have been* chilled.
 Es hat gefroren, it *has* frozen.

Ich bin vor ihm gekniet, I *have* kneeled before him.
 Er hat eine ganze Stunde gekniet, he *has been* kneeling a whole hour.

Wir sind nach Leipzig geritten, we *have* ridden to Leipzig.
 Wir haben uns müde geritten, we *have* tired ourselves with riding.
 Er hat mit dem Kopfe an die Wand geschlagen, he *has* struck his head against the wall.

Die Flamme ist in die Höhe geschlagen, the flame *has* mounted.
 Der Donner hat in den Baum geschlagen, the thunder *has* struck the tree.

Die Vögel haben geschlagen, the birds *have* warbled.
 Das Schiff ist vorbei gesegelt, the ship *has* sailed past.
 Die Reiter sind schon aufgesessen, the horsemen *are* already seated.
 Ich bin die ganze Nacht aufgesessen, I *have* sat up the whole night.
 Ich bin in das Haus gegangen, I *have* gone into the house.
 Ich habe mich müde gegangen, I *have* tired myself with walking.

(c) Some verbs expressive of motion require *seyn*, when taken in the proper sense, and *haben* in the figurative sense; as,

Das Blut ist gesprungen, the blood *has* flowed.
 Die Fontäne hat gesprungen, the fountain *has* played; so,
 Wir sind gelaufen, we *have* run, but,
 Das Faß hat gelaufen, the cask *has* run.
 Wir sind nach dem Ziele geronnen, we *have* run towards the goal,
 or we *have* run a race.
 Die Augen haben geronnen, the eyes *have* streamed.
 Die Thränen sind herabgeflossen, the tears *have* flowed down, but,
 Die Röhre hat geflossen, the pipe *has* run.

As it may sometimes be found difficult to distinguish (*by the preceding definitions*) those verbs which take *haben*, from those which take *seyn*, a list of both is subjoined.

NEUTER VERBS WITH *Haben*.

The following neuters are to be conjugated with the auxiliary verb *Haben*.

I. *Regular Verbs*.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect Indicative.</i>
Ächzen, to groan.	Ich habe geächzet, I have groaned.
Ältern, to grow old.	 geältert.
Angeln, to angle.	 geangelt.
Ankern, to anchor.	 geankert.
Atmen, to breathe.	 geathmet.
(Sich) balgen, to fight.	 gebalget.
Beten, to pray.	 gebetet.
Betteln, to beg alms.	 gebettelt.
Blinzeln, to blink.	 geblinzelt.
Blühen, to bloom.	 geblühet.
Brummen, to grumble.	 gebrummt.
Bürgen, to bail.	 gebürget.
Büßen, to suffer for.	 gebüßet.
Dauern, to last, to endure	 gedauret.
Donnern, to thunder.	 gedonnert.
Dürsten, to be thirsty, or to thirst.	 gedürstet.
Eifern, to be zealous.	 geeifert.
Eilen, to hasten.	 geeilet.
Eitern, to suppurate.	 geeitert.
Entsagen, to renounce.	 entsagt.
Erben, to be one's heir.	 geerbet.
Faulen, to putrefy.	 gefaulet.
Fehlen, to fail.	 gefehlt.
Flecken, to stain.	 gefleckt.
Fluchen, to curse.	 gefluchet.
Forschen, to enquire.	 geforschet.

Gunkeln, to glimmer,	Sch habe gefunkelt.
Gähnen, to yawn.	 gegähnet.
Gaukeln, to juggle.	 gegaukelt.
Geizen, to covet.	 gegeizet.
Handeln, to trade.	 gehandelt.
Harren, to wait for.	 geharret.
Handthieren, to trade, to bustle.	 gehandthieret.
Hausiren, to hawk about.	 gehausiret.
Herrſchen, to govern.	 geherrſchet.
Hinken, to limp.	 gehinket.
Horchen, to listen.	 gehorchet.
Hungern, to hunger.	 gehungert.
Hüpfen, to leap.	 gehüpſet.
Huſten, to cough.	 gehuſtet.
Irren, to err.	 geirret.
Jauchzen, to shout.	 gejauchzet.
Kalben, to calve.	 gekalbet.
Kämpfen, to combat.	 gekämpft.
Kargen, to be penurious.	 gekarget.
Keimen, to shoot out, or bud.	 gekeimet.
Kirren, to creak, or coo.	 gekirret.
Klaſſen, to clap, cleave.	 geklaſſet.
Klagen, to complain.	 geklaget.
Klatſchen, to clap.	 geklatſchet.
Kleben, to cleave, or ſtick.	 geklebet.
Klügen, to refine.	 geklügelt.
Knacken, to crack.	 geknacket.
Knarren, to creak.	 geknarret.
Knickern, to haggle, to act niggardly.	 geknickert.
Knien, to kneel.	 gekniet.
Kollern, to be unruly, to roll.	 gekollert.
Krähen, to crow.	 gekrähet.
Krahen, to trade.	 gekrahmet.
Kranken, to be ill.	 gekranket.
Kreben, to catch crabs.	 gekrebet.
Kriegen, to obtain.	 gekriegt.
Lachen, to laugh.	 gelachet.
Landen, to land.	 gelandet.
Lärmen, to make a noiſe.	 gelärmet.
Lauren, to watch.	 gelauret.
Läuten, or Lauten, to ſound.	 geläutet, or gelaudet.
Leben, to live.	 gelebet.
Mangeln, to want.	 gemangelt.
Meinen, to mean.	 gemeinet.
Murmeln, to grumble.	 gemurmelt.
Orgeln, to play on the organ.	 georgelt.
Raſen, to be mad.	 geraſet.

Rasten, to rest.	Ich habe gerastet.
Rauchen, to smoke.	 gerauchet.
Räumen, to remove.	 geräumt.
Räuspern, to hawk, to clear the throat.	 geräuspert.
Rauschen, to rush.	 gerauschet.
Rechnen, to reckon.	 gerechnet.
Rechten, to go to law.	 gerechtet.
Reden, to speak.	 geredet.
Reifen, to ripen.	 gereifet.
Reimen, to rhyme.	 gereimet.
Rudern, to row.	 gerudert.
Säumen, to tarry.	 gesäumt.
Sausen, to whiz.	 gesauset.
Schaden, to hurt.	 geschadet.
Schaffen, to procure.	 geschafft.
Sich schämen, to be ashamed.	 geschämt.
Schaudern, to shiver.	 geschaudert.
Scherzen, to joke.	 gescherzet.
Schimmeln, to mould.	 geschimmelt.
Schlucken, to swallow.	 geschluckt.
Schmachten, to languish.	 geschmachtet.
Schmaßen, to smack.	 geschmaßt.
Schmähen, to scold.	 geschmälet.
Schmausen, to feast.	 geschmauset.
Schmutzen, to soil, to dirty.	 geschmutzet.
Schnäbeln, to bill.	 geschnäbelt.
Schnarchen, to snore.	 geschnarchet.
Schnattern, to gabble.	 geschnattert.
Schwärmen, to swarm.	 geschwärmet.
Schwindeln, to grow giddy.	 geschwindelt.
Schweizen, to sweat.	 geschwizet.
Segeln, to sail.	 gefsegelt.
Seufzen, to sigh.	 geseufzet.
Sorgen, to care.	 gesorget.
Spazieren, to take a walk.	 spazieret.
Spielen, to play.	 gespielt.
Steuern, to steer a ship.	 gesteuert.
Studiren, to study.	 studirt.
Stürmen, to storm.	 gestürmet.
Stutzen, to butt at.	 gestuzet.
Sudeln, to dirty.	 gesudelt.
Summen, to hum.	 gesummet.
Sündigen, to sin.	 gesündigt.
Tappen, to grope.	 getappet.
Thronen, to be enthroned.	 gethronet.
Toben, to rage.	 getobet.
Tönen, to sound.	 getönet.
Trachten, to endeavour.	 getrachtet.

Trauern, to mourn.	Sch habe getrauert.
Triumphiren, to triumph.	 triumphiret.
Trödeln, to sell old things.	 getröbelt.
Wachen, to wake, or to be awake.	 gewachet.
Weinen, to cry.	 geweinet.
Willfahren, to comply.	 gewillfahret.
Zagen, to despair, to despond.	 gezaget.
Zanken, to quarrel.	 gezanket.
Zielen, to aim.	 gezielet.
Zotteln, to stagger.	 gezottelt.
Zürnen, to be angry.	 gezürnet.

The following are the Irregular Verbs which take Haben.

Fechten, to fight.	Sch habe gefochten, I have fought.
Gefallen, to please.	 gefallen.
Gleichen, to resemble.	 geglichen.
Reifen, to scold.	 gekiffen.
Klingen, to sound.	 geklungen.
Leiden, to suffer.	 gelitten.
Reiten, to ride.	 geritten.
Ringen, to wrestle.	 gerungen.
Saufen, to drink hard.	 gesoffen.
Scheinen, to appear.	 geschienen.
Schlafen, to sleep.	 geschlafen.
Schleifen, to cleave.	 geschliffen.
Schnauben, to snort.	 geschnoben.
Schreien, to cry.	 geschrien.
Schweigen, to be silent.	 geschwiegen.
Schwimmen, to swim.	 geschwommen.
Schwinden, to be reduced, to dwindle away.	 geschwunden.
Schwören, to swear.	 geschworen.
Sinnen, to think, to meditate.	 gesonnen.
Sitzen, to sit.	 geseßen.
Streiten, to fight.	 gestritten.
Verbrechen, to commit a crime.	 verbrochen.

NEUTER VERBS WITH Seyn.

The following require the Auxiliary Verb Seyn;

Regular Verbs.

Arten, to resemble.	Sch bin geartet, I have resembled.
---------------------	------------------------------------

Begegnen, to meet.	Sch bin begegnet, I have met.
Beharren, to continue.	 beharret.
Ergrimmen, to grow angry.	 ergrimmet.
Erkalten, to grow cold.	 erkaltet.
Erstaunen, to be astonished.	 erstaunet.
Erstarren, to be chilled.	 erstarret.
Flattern, to flit, to flutter.	 geflattert.
Gelangen, to get, to attain.	 gelanget.
Gewöhnen, to be accustomed.	 gewohnet.
Klettern, to climb.	 geklettert.
Reisen, to travel.	 gereiset.
Rennen, to run.	 gerannt.
Segeln, to sail.	 gesegelt.
Stolpern, to stumble.	 gestolpert.
Stranden, to strand.	 gestrandet.
Straucheln, to trip.	 gestrauchelt.
Stußen, to start.	 gestuſet.
Traben, to trot.	 getrabet.
Veraltern, to grow old.	 veraltert.
Verarmen, to grow poor.	 verarmet.
Verblinden, to grow blind.	 verblindet.
Verkrummen, to grow crooked.	 verkrummet.
Verlahmen, to grow lame.	 verlahmet.
Versäuern, to grow sour, to sour.	 versauert.
Verstummen, to grow dumb.	 verstummet.
Verwesen, to decay.	 verweset.
Verwildern, to grow wild.	 verwildert.
Verzagen, to despond.	 verzaget.
Wandeln, to walk.	 gewandelt.
Wandern, to wander.	 gewandert.

Irregular Neuter Verbs taking Seyn.

Abfallen, to fall down.	Sch bin abgefallen.
Befleissen, to be studious.	 beflissen.
Bersten, to burst.	 geborsten.
Bleiben, to remain.	 geblieben.
Erfrieren, to freeze to death.	 erfroren.
Erschallen, to resound.	 erschollen.
Erschrecken, to be terrified.	 erschrocken.
Fahren, to fare.	 gefahren.
Fallen, to fall.	 gefallen.
Fliegen, to fly.	 geflogen.
Fliehen, to flee.	 geflohen.
Fließen, to flow.	 geflossen.
Frieren, to freeze.	 gefroren.

Gedeihen, to prosper.	Sich bin gediehen.
Gehen, to go.	 gegangen.
Genesen, to recover.	 genesen.
Gleiten, to slide, to slip.	 geglitten.
Klimmen, to climb.	 geklommen.
Kommen, to come.	 gekommen.
Kriechen, to creep.	 gekrochen.
Laufen, to run.	 gelaufen.
Reiten, to ride.	 geritten.
Rinnen, to leak, to run.	 geronnen.
Schleichen, to sneak.	 geschlichen.
Schreiten, to stride.	 geschritten.
Schwellen, to swell.	 geschwollen.
Schwimmen, to swim.	 geschwommen.
Schwinden, to shrink.	 geschwunden.
Sitzen, to sit.	 geseffen.
Springen, to jump.	 gesprungen.
Stehen, to stand.	 gestanden.
Steigen, to mount.	 gestiegen.
Sterben, to die.	 gestorben.
Verbleichen, to grow pale.	 verblichen.
Verlöschen, to extinguish.	 verloschen.
Verschwinden, to disappear.	 verschwunden.
Wachsen, to grow.	 gewachsen.
Weichen, to yield.	 gewichen.
Werden, to become.	 geworden.

N. B.—Those verbs which occur in both lists, are sometimes conjugated with *haben*, and sometimes with *seyn*. (*Vide the observations from page 120 to 125.*)

COMPOUND VERBS.

§ VII. Simple verbs being regular, or irregular, their compounds are the same.

Compound verbs are compounded either with separable, or inseparable prepositions.

The separable prepositions are separated from the verbs in the simple tenses; but are joined to them in the infinitive and participle, as in the following example:

*Conjugation of the separable Compound Verb Aufhalten,
to detain, or stop.*

*Infinitive.**Part. Pres.*

Pres. Aufhalten, to detain. Aufhaltend, detaining.
Pret. Aufgehalten haben, Ein Aufhaltender, one who de-
to have detained. tains.

Part. Perf.

Aufgehalten, detained.

ACTIVE.

Present.

Indicative.

Sing.

Ich halte auf, I detain, am Ich halte auf, I may detain.
detaining, or do detain.
Du hältst auf, thou de- Du haltest auf, thou mayst
tainest. detain.
Er, sie, oder es hält auf, he, Er, sie, oder es halte auf, he,
she, or it detains. she, or it may detain.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Plural.

Plural.

Wir halten auf, we detain. Wir halten auf, we may detain.
Ihr haltet auf, you detain. Ihr haltet auf, you may detain.
Sie halten auf, they detain. Sie halten auf, they may de-
tain.

Imperfect.

Sing.

Sing.

Ich hielt auf, I detained. Ich hielte auf, I might detain.
Du hieltest auf, thou de- Du hieltest auf, thou mightst
tainedst. detain.
Er hielt auf, he detained. Er hielte auf, he &c.

Plural.

Plural.

Wir hielten auf, we detained. Wir hielten auf, we might &c.
Ihr hieltet auf, you detained. Ihr hieltet auf, you might &c.
Sie hielten auf, they detained. Sie hielten auf, they &c.

Perfect.

Indicative.

Sing.

Sch habe aufgehalten, I have detained.

Du hast aufgehalten, &c.

Plural.

Wir haben aufgehalten, we have detained.

Ihr habt aufgehalten, &c.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Sch habe aufgehalten, I may have detained.

Du habest aufgehalten, &c.

Plural.

Wir haben aufgehalten, we may have detained.

Ihr habet aufgehalten, &c.

Pluperfect.

Sing.

Sch hatte aufgehalten, I had detained.

Du hättest aufgehalten, &c.

Plural.

Wir hatten aufgehalten, we had detained.

Ihr hättet aufgehalten, &c.

Sing.

Sch hätte aufgehalten, I might have detained.

Du hättest aufgehalten, &c.

Plural.

Wir hätten aufgehalten, we might have detained.

Ihr hättet aufgehalten, &c.

First Future.

Sing.

Sch werde aufhalten, I shall, or will detain.

Du wirst aufhalten, thou wilt detain.

Er wird aufhalten, he &c.

Plural.

Wir werden aufhalten, we shall, or will detain.

Ihr werdet aufhalten, &c.

Sing.

Sch werde aufhalten, I shall, or will detain.

Du werdest aufhalten, thou wilt detain.

Er werde aufhalten, he &c.

Plural.

Wir werden aufhalten, we shall, or will detain.

Ihr werdet aufhalten, you &c.

Second Future

Sing.

Sch werde aufgehalten haben, I shall have detained.

Du wirst aufgehalten haben, thou wilt have detained.

Er wird aufgehalten haben, he will have detained.

Sing.

Sch werde aufgehalten haben, I shall have detained.

Du werdest aufgehalten haben, thou wilt have detained.

Er werde aufgehalten haben, he will have detained.

Plural.

Wir werden aufgehalten haben, we shall have detained.

Ihr werdet aufgehalten haben, you will have detained.

Sie werden aufgehalten haben, they will have detained.

Plural.

Wir werden aufgehalten haben, we shall have detained.

Ihr werdet aufgehalten haben, you will have detained.

Sie werden aufgehalten haben, they will have detained.

Conditional.

Simple.

Sing.

Ich würde aufhalten, I should, or would detain.

Du würdest aufhalten, thou wouldst detain.

Er würde aufhalten, he would detain.

Compound.

Sing.

Ich würde aufgehalten haben, I should, have detained.

Du würdest aufgehalten haben, thou wouldst have detained.

Er würde aufgehalten haben, he would have detained.

Plural.

Wir würden aufhalten, we should, or would detain.

Ihr würdet aufhalten, you would detain.

Sie würden aufhalten, they would detain.

Plural.

Wir würden aufgehalten haben, we should have detained.

Ihr würdet aufgehalten haben, you would have detained.

Sie würden aufgehalten haben, they would have detained.

Imperative.

Sing.

Halte (du) auf, detain (thou.)
Halte er auf, let him detain.

Plural.

Haltet (ihr) auf, detain (you.)
Halten Sie auf, detain, or do you detain.

Halten sie auf, let them detain.

So conjugate :

Aufnehmen, to take up.	Aussprechen, to pronounce.
Beggeben, to give away.	Vorkommen, to come before.
Abholen, to fetch.	Einbringen, to bring in.

Practice on the separable Compound Verbs.

INDICATIVE ; Present.

I take off,	abnehmen, to take off.
Thou acceptest,	annehmen, to accept.
It devolves,	anheimfallen, or heimfallen, to devolve.
We give up,	aufgeben, to give up.
You except,	ausnehmen, to except.
They assist,	beistehen, to stand by, to assist.

Imperfect.

I presented,	darreichen, to present.
Thou rankest off,	davon laufen, to run off.
He took in,	einnehmen, to take in.
We pursued,	fortsetzen, to pursue.
You sent home,	heimschicken, to send home.
They came hither,	herkommen, to come hither.

Perfect.

I *have run down,	herablaufen, to run down.
Thou *hast come near,	herankommen, to come near.
He *has come up,	heraufkommen, to come up.
We *have come out,	herauskommen, to come out.
You have brought near,	herbeibringen, to bring near.
They *have come in,	hereinkommen, to come in.

Pluperfect.

I had produced,	hervorbringen, to produce.
Thou *hadst gone off,	hingehen, to go off.
She *had gone down,	hinabgehen, to go down.
We *had mounted upwards,	hinaufsteigen, to mount up.
You had gone out,	hinausgehen, to go out.
They *had gone over,	hinübergehen, to go over.

* Where the mark * is used, translate have by seyn ; as, I have run down, ich bin herabgelaufen.

First and second Future.

I shall leap down,	hinunterspringen, to leap down.
Thou wilt bring with thee,	mitbringen, to bring with.
He will imitate,	nachahmen, to imitate.
We shall *have fallen down,	niederfallen, to fall down.
You will apply,	anwenden, to apply.
They will prescribe,	vorgeben, to prescribe.

Conditionals ; simple and compound.

*I should have walked forward,	vorangehen, to walk forward.
*Thou wouldst presuppose,	voraussetzen, to presuppose.
*He would have passed by,	vorübergehen, to pass by.
*We should have agreed,	übereinkommen, to agree.
You would have taken away,	wegnehmen, to take away.
They would restore,	wiedergeben, to restore.

Imperative.

Look (<i>thou</i>) to,	zusehen, to look to.
Keep (<i>you</i>) back,	zurückhalten, to keep back.

Infinitive.

To keep back,	zurückhalten, to keep back.
To have kept back,	.....

Participles.

Composing,	zusammensetzen, to compose.
Composed,	.....

The inseparable particles in compound verbs, are always joined to the verbs, and the ge of the participles, is dropped.

Conjugation of the inseparable compound verb Behalten, to retain.

<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Part. Pres.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Behalten, to retain.	Behaltend, retaining.
<i>Perf.</i> Behalten haben, to have retained.	Ein Behaltender, one who retains.

Perf. Part.

Behalten, retained.

Present.

Indicative.

Sing.

Ich behalte, I retain.
 Du behältst, thou retainest.
 Er behält, he retains.

Plural.

Wir behalten, we retain.
 Ihr behaltet, you retain.
 Sie behalten, they retain.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Ich behalte, I may retain.
 Du behaltest, thou mayst &c.
 Er behalte, he may &c.

Plural.

Wir behalten, we may retain.
 Ihr behaltet, you may retain.
 Sie behalten, they may retain.

Imperfect.

Sing.

Ich behielt, I retained.
 Du behieltest, thou retain-
 edst &c.

Sing.

Ich behielte, I might retain.
 Du behieltest, thou mightst
 retain &c.

Perfect.

Sing.

Ich habe behalten, I have re-
 tained.
 Du hast behalten, thou hast
 retained, &c.

Sing.

Ich habe behalten, I may have
 retained.
 Du habest behalten, thou
 mayst &c.

Pluperfect.

Sing.

Ich hatte behalten, I had re-
 tained.
 Du hattest behalten, thou
 hadst retained, &c.

Sing.

Ich hätte behalten, I might
 have retained.
 Du hättest behalten, thou, &c.

First Future.

Sing.

Ich werde behalten, I shall
 retain.
 Du wirst behalten, thou
 wilt retain, &c.

Sing.

Ich werde behalten, I shall re-
 tain.
 Du werdest behalten, thou
 wilt retain, &c.

Second Future.

Sing.

Ich werde behalten haben, I
 shall have retained, &c.

Sing.

Ich werde behalten haben, I
 shall have retained, &c.

Conditional; Simple.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Ich würde behalten, I should retain, &c.	Wir würden behalten, we should retain, &c.

Conditional; Compound.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Ich würde behalten haben, I should have retained, &c.	Wir würden behalten haben, we should have retained, &c.

Imperative.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Behalte (du) retain (thou)	Laßt uns behalten, let us retain.
Behalte er, retain he, or let him retain.	Behaltet ihr, or behalten Sie, retain ye, or you.
	Behalten sie, retain they, or let them retain.

Practice on the inseparable compound Verbs.

Indicative.

Present.

I remark,	bemerken, to remark.
Thou backbitest,	afterreden, to backbite.
He escapes,	entgehen, to escape.
Do we not acquire?	erwerben, to acquire.
Do you not light upon?	gerathen, to light upon.
They leave behind,	hinterlassen, to leave behind.

Imperfect.

Did I mistrust?	mißtrauen, to mistrust.
Did he conceal?	verbergen, to conceal.
We concerted,	verabreden, to concert.
You neglected,	vernachlässigen, to neglect.
They dishonored,	verunehren, to dishonor.

Perfect.

I have withstood,	widerstehen, to withstand.
Hast thou distracted?	zerrütten, to distract.
Has he backbitten?	afterreden, to backbite.
We have not remarked,	bemerken, to remark.
You * have not escaped,	entgehen, to escape.
They have acquired,	erwerben, to acquire.

Pluperfect.

I had not left behind,	hinterlassen, to leave behind.
Hadst thou distrusted?	mißtrauen, to distrust.
He had concealed,	verbergen, to conceal.
We had concerted,	verabreden, to concert.
Had you neglected?	vernachlässigen, to neglect.
They had not dishonored.	verunehren, to dishonor.

First and Second Future.

I shall withstand,	widerstehen, to withstand.
Thou wilt distract,	zerrütten, to distract.
Will he have backbitten?	afterreden, to backbite.
Shall we not have remarked?	bemerken, to remark.
*You will not have escaped,	entgehen, to escape.
They will have acquired,	erwerben, to acquire.

Conditional ; Simple and Compound.

I should withstand,	widerstehen, to withstand.
Would he acquire?	erwerben, to acquire.
I should have left behind,	hinterlassen, to leave behind.
Would you not have distrust- ed?	mißtrauen, to distrust.
They would not have con- cealed,	verbergen, to conceal.

Subjunctive and Imperative.

I may conceal. Thou mightst concert. We may not neglect. You might not dishonor. They might not acquire. Do not withstand. Distract ye not.

* Translate *have* by *seyn*.

Infinitive and Participles.

To backbite. To have remarked. Escaping. Acquired.

Observations on the Compound Verbs.

1. The compound verbs generally follow the conjugation of the simple verbs, some of which are regular, and others irregular; thus, *anreden*, to address, and *bereden* to persuade, from *reden*, to speak, are *regular*; *anschreiben*, to write down, and *beschreiben*, to describe, are *irregular*; from *schreiben*, to write; but *rennen*, to run is *irregular*; and *berennen*, to invest, *regular*; *schaffen*, to create, *irregular*, and *verschaffen*, to procure, *regular*; *bleichen*, to bleach, is *regular*; *erbleichen*, to grow pale, *irregular*; *gleich*, to resemble, is *irregular*; *abgleich*, to equal, *regular*; *löschen*, to quench, *regular*; *erlöschen*, to become extinct, *irregular*.

2. All separable particles have a distinct meaning, when taken by themselves, and are therefore easily resolvable when used in composition; as,

Ab, off, or down.

An, on, or at.

Auf, up, or upon.

Aus, out of.

Bei, or *ben*, at, by, near.

Dar, there.

Ein, in, or into.

Mit, with.

Nach, after, &c.

Examples.

Absetzen, to dispose,

Aussprechen, to address,

Aufstehen, to arise,

Aussetzen, to expose,

Beistehen, to assist, to

stand by,

Einschließen, to inclose,

Mitgehen, to accompany,

Nachfolgen, to succeed,

from setzen, to put, and *ab*, down.

.... *sprechen*, to speak, *an*, to.

.... *stehen*, to stand, *auf*, up.

.... *setzen*, to put, *aus*, out.

.... *stehen*, to stand, *bei*, by, or

near.

.... *schließen*, to lock, *ein*, in.

.... *gehen*, to go, *mit*, with.

.... *folgen*, to follow, *nach*, after,

&c.

Hin, *thither*, or *there*, and *her*, *hither*, or *here*, are oftener employed in German than in English, the first to express motion from an object, the second motion to an object; thus, *hinkommen*, signifies to get, or arrive there, in opposition to *herkommen*, to come hither; as, *Ich konnte nicht hinkommen*, I could not get there; *Kommen Sie her*, come here.

3. The inseparable particles, *as their name announces*, are used only in composition, of which the following are the principal:

1st. *Be* in composition with verbs, denotes an expansion of the action over an object; as, *bewachsen*, to overgrow; *bestreuen*, to bestrew; *beräuchern*, to besmoke, *or* smoke. By the use of this particle, many neuter verbs are formed into actives: as, *arbeiten*, to work, *ein Stück Holz bearbeiten*, to work at a piece of wood; *reiten*, to ride, *ein Pferd bereiten*, to ride a horse; *folgen*, to follow, *einen Rath befolgen*, to follow a council; *sprechen*, to speak, *etwas besprechen*, to bespeak a thing, &c.

2nd. In composition with nouns, and other parts of speech, it denotes a communication of one object, *or* quality to another; as, *besflügeln*, to wing, *or* provide with wings, from *Flügel*, a wing; *bebändern*, to adorn with ribbons, from *Band*, ribbon; *beaugen*, to give an eye to, from *Auge*, eye; *belauben*, to cover with leaves, from *Laub*, leaf; *bereichern*, to enrich, from *reich*, rich, &c. In the application of this particle, there is but little difference between the two languages, and there is no difference in its signification.

Ent denotes 1st. removal from a place, and nearly corresponds to the English *from*, *or* *away*; as, *entfliegen*, to fly away; *entfernen*, to remove; *entlassen*, to send away, *or* dismiss.

2nd. Deprivation; as, *entehren*, to dishonor; *entbinden*, to unbind; *entfesseln*, to unfetter; *enthaupten*, to behead; *enthüllen*, to unveil.

3rd. It sometimes denotes the commencement of an action; as, *entbrennen*, to kindle; *entzünden*, to set on fire; *entschlafen*, to fall asleep; *entspringen*, to spring; *entstehen*, to arise.

Emp is sometimes substituted for *ent*, for the sake of euphony, before words beginning with *f*; as, *empfehlen*, to recommend; but *emp* generally signifies *in*, *or* *internally*; as, *empfinden*, to feel, to be endowed with inward feeling, from *finden*, to find.

Er denotes 1st. elevation, answering to the particle *auf*, up; as, *erheben*, to elevate, *or* lift up; *erbauen*, to build up; *erziehen*, to bring up; *erwachsen*, to grow up.

2nd. Obtaining by means of exertion, *or* trouble; as, *erfechten*, to obtain by fighting; *erschmeicheln*, to wheedle; *erfischen*, to fish out; *erarbeiten*, to work for; *erkaufen*, to purchase; *erfahren*, to learn, by experience; thus, *Er hat einen Sieg erfochten*, he has obtained a victory; *Er hat seine Gunst erschmeichelt*, he has wheedled himself into favour, &c. So likewise in regard to mental exertions; as, *ersinnen*, to devise; *erdenken*, to contrive; *erfinden*, to invent, &c.; thus, *Er hat etwas Neues ersinnet*, he has

devised something new; *Sie haben einen Anschlag erdacht*, they have contrived a scheme, &c.

3rd. Taking out, bringing out, coming out, answering to the particle *aus*, out; *ermählen*, to elect, or choose out of; *ernennen*, to nominate; *ergießen*, to flow out; *erlassen*, to issue; *erschöpfen*, to exhaust; *erbrechen*, to break open, or break out from.

4th. A bringing or coming into a condition, and when compounded of adjectives, it becomes possessed of the same qualities; as, *erweitern*, to enlarge, from *weit*, wide, or large; *erwärmen*, to warm, from *warm*, warm; *ergrauen*, to grow grey, from *grau*, grey; *erhärten*, to harden, from *hart*, hard; *erbleichen*, to turn, or to grow pale, from *bleich*, pale; *erblinden*, to grow blind, from *blind*, blind; *erfalten*, to grow cold, from *kalt*, cold; *erröthen*, to redden, or blush, from *roth*, red; *erarmen*, to impoverish, from *arm*, poor; *erklären*, to explain, or clear up, from *klar*, clear; also with some verbs and nouns; as, *erfrieren*, to freeze, from *frieren*, to freeze; *erzürnen*, to be angry, from *Zorn*, anger; *ersterben*, to expire, from *sterben*, to die, &c.

Ge gives simply an extension to the primitive; as, *brauchen*, to use, *gebrauchen*, to employ; *denken*, to think, *gedenken*, to think of, or bear in mind; *frieren*, to freeze, *gefrieren*, to congeal; *dulden*, to bear, *sich gedulden*, to endure, or have patience with; *reuen*, to repent, *sich gereuen*, to repent of; *langen*, to reach; *gelangen*, to arrive at, or come to, &c.

Ver denotes 1st. removal, answering to the particle *away*; as, *verjagen*, to drive away; *verschenken*, to give away; *verrücken*, to move away; *verpflanzen*, to transplant; *versetzen*, to transpose; *verwechseln*, to change; *verkaufen*, to sell, or what is equivalent to away, such as, waste, loss, or consumption; Ex. *vertrinken*, to drink away, to spend by drinking; *verspielen*, to game away; *verlieren*, to lose; *verarbeiten*, to work up; *verblühen*, to fade away; *verrauchen*, to evaporate; *verschmachten*, to pine; *verbluten*, to bleed to death; *verwelken*, to wither away.

2nd. Putting out of order, or doing wrong, answering generally to *mis*; as, *verlegen*, to mislay; *verführen*, to seduce; *verschreiben*, to write wrong; *verbrehen*, to pervert; *versältschen*, to adulterate; *versalzen*, to oversalt; *vergeffen*, to forget; *verschieben*, to dislocate; *vernachlässigen*, to neglect, *verrechnen*, to miscalculate.

3rd. Putting in the way of, obstructing; as, *verbieten*, to forbid; *versagen*, to deny; *verbitten*, to refuse; *verwehren*, to prohibit; *verhindern*, to prevent; as, *verschießen*, to lock up; *verdammen*, to dam up; *versiegeln*, to seal up; *versperren*, to bar up, or out; *vermauern*, to wall up, &c.

4th. Putting into a condition; as, *veralten*, to grow obsolete, from *alt*, old; *verlängern*, to lengthen, from *lang*, long; *verkürzen*,

to shorten, from *kurz*, short; *verarmen*, to impoverish, from *arm*, poor; *veredeln*, to ennoble, from *edel*, noble; *vergöttern*, to deify, from *Gott*, God; *verbrüdern*, to fraternize, from *Bruder*, brother; *verschwägern*, to be affined, from *Schwager*, a brother-in-law, &c. Sometimes it adds force to the primitive; as, *verehren*, to venerate, from *ehren*, to honor; *verspotten*, to mock, from *spotten*, to joke with; *verlachen*, to deride, from *lachen*, to laugh; *verleihen*, to lend out, from *leihen*, to lend, &c.

Zer denotes a thorough separation of the parts; as, *zerbrechen*, to break in pieces; *zerschmettern*, to dash in pieces; *zerrütten*, to shake in pieces; *zerstreuen*, to dissipate; *zerstören*, to destroy; *zerschneiden*, to hack.

The particles *wider*, against, and *hinter*, behind, though inseparable in composition, are employed as distinct words. Verbs compounded with *miß*, which answers to the English *mis* and *dis*; take the augment *ge* and the preposition *zu* before the participle and infinitive, when employed either in an active, or a transitive sense; as, *mißbilligen*, to disapprove, *ge-mißbilliget*, disapproved, *zu mißbilligen*, to disapprove; *mißbrauchen*, to misuse, *gemißbraucht*, misused; *mißleiten*, to mislead, *mißgeleitet*, misled, *zu mißleiten*, to mislead; but neuters take the *ge* in the middle; as, *mißarten*, to degenerate, *mißgeartet*, degenerated; *mißleiten*, to mislead, *mißgeleitet*, misled; *mißtreten*, to slip, *mißgetreten*, slipped; *mißgreifen*, to mistake, or take wrong, *mißgegriffen*, mistook, &c.; but in *mißbegreifen*, to misconceive; *ge* is left out in the participle Ex. *mißbegriffen*, misconceived.

Some few neuters drop the participial augment *ge*; as, *mißfallen*, to displease, *es hat mir mißfallen*, it has displeased me; *mißlingen*, to fail, *es ist mißlungen*, it has failed; *mißrathen*, to miscarry, *es ist mißrathen*, it has miscarried; *mißverstehen*, to misunderstand, *man hat es mißverstanden*.

3rd. Some prepositions are both separable and inseparable, namely *durch*, through; *um*, about; *über*, over; and *unter*, under; to which may be added *wieder*, again. They are separable in the intransitive, and inseparable in the transitive sense; as, *durchbrechen*, to break through, or make one's way through; *er bricht durch*, (*separable*) he breaks through; *durchgebrochen*, broken through; *etwas durchbrechen*, to break through any thing; *er durchbricht eine Mauer*, (*inseparable*) he breaks through a wall; *durchbrochen*, broken through; *umlaufen*, to go, or run round; *er läuft um*, (*separable*) he runs round; *umgelaufen*, run round; *etwas umlaufen*, to run round a thing, or go the round of a thing; *er umläuft*, (*inseparable*) he runs about; *umlaufen*, run round; *übersetzen*, to leap, or pass over; *er setzt über*, (*separable*) he leaps over; *übergesetzt*, passed over; *übersetzen*, to translate; *er übersetzt aus dem Deutschen*, (*inseparable*) he translates from German;

übersetzt, translated; unterhalten, to hold under, er hält unter, he holds under (*separable*) untergehalten, held under; unterhalten, to support, er unterhält, he supports, (*inseparable*) unterhalten, supported: we say, er brach hier durch, he broke through here, or without mentioning any place, er brach durch, he broke through; but die Sonne durchbricht die Wolken, the sun breaks through the clouds; er hat den Wald durchbrochen, he has broken through the wood; er ist umgelaufen, he has gone a round; but er umläuft die Stadt, he goes the circuit of the city: der Reiter springt über, the horseman leaps over; but der Schüler übersetzt Sprachen, the scholar translates languages; er hält die Hände unter, he holds the hands under, or underneath; but er unterhält die Hände, he supports the hands. Wieder in composition is separable in the proper sense but inseparable in the figurative sense; as, wieder holen, to fetch back (*separable*); ich habe es wieder geholt, I have fetched it back, but wiederholen, to repeat (*inseparable*); ich habe die Worte wiederholt, I have repeated the words. In the above verbs the accent is laid upon the particle when it is separable, but upon the verb when it is inseparable: this remark applies as a rule to all other such verbs.

4th. Verbs compounded with nouns, or adverbs, are mostly inseparable; but take the augment ge in the participle; as,

Infinitive.

Rathschlagen, to consult.

Antworten, to answer.

Pres. Ind.

Ich rathschlage.

Ich antworte.

Participle.

Gerathschlaget.

Geantwortet.

So the following:

Argwohnen, to suspect.

Frohlocken, to exult.

Frühstücken, to breakfast.

Fuchsschwänzen, to fawn.

Handhaben, to handle.

Heirathen, to marry.

Hohnlachen, to laugh to scorn.

Liebäugeln, to ogle.

Liebkosen, to caress.

Muthmassen, to conjecture.

Quacksalbern, to quack.

Radbrechen, to break on the wheel.

Rechtfertigen, to justify.

Tagewerken, to work by the day.

Urtheilen, to judge.

Urkunden, to testify.

Weissagen, to prophesy.

Wetteifern, to emulate.

Willfahren, to gratify.

Those compounded with voll drop the augment ge; as, vollenden, to finish: *Perf.* ich vollende, I finished; *Part.* vollendet, finished; so, vollbringen, to bring about; vollziehen, to execute; vollstrecken, to accomplish; vollführen, to consummate; but voll

may be separated from some verbs; as, voll gießen, to pour full; voll machen, to make full, &c. Some other verbs, which are not genuine compounds, are mostly separated; as, Dank sagen, to give thanks; Haus halten, to keep house; ich sage Dank, I give thanks; Dank gesagt, thanks given; ich halte Haus, I keep house; Haus gehalten, kept house; so likewise freisprechen, to acquit; losreißen, to tear asunder; gleich kommen, to equal; wahr sagen, to prognosticate.

List of the principal Particles with which Compound Verbs are formed.

1. The following particles are not to be separated from the verbs.

after.	as, afterreden,	to backbite.
be.	.. bedenken,	.. reflect, consider.
emp.	.. empfangen,	.. receive.
ent.	.. entstehen,	.. arise.
er.	.. erfinden,	.. invent.
ge.	.. gedeihen,	.. prosper.
hinter.	.. hinterbleiben,	.. remain behind.
mis.	.. missfallen,	.. displease.
ver.	.. verzehren,	.. consume.
verab.	.. verabfolgen,	.. deliver.
vernach.	.. vernachlässigen,	.. neglect.
verun.	.. verunehren,	.. dishonor.
voll.	.. vollbringen,	.. complete.
über.	.. übergeben,	.. surrender.
ur.	.. urtheilen,	.. judge.
zer.	.. zerstören,	.. destroy.

2. The following are the principal particles, which, in some tenses of the conjugation, are to be separated from the verbs.

ab.	an.	anheim.
auf.	aus.	bei, dabei.
davon.	dafür.	davor.
darunter.	dawider.	dazwischen.
durch.	ein.	einher.
fort.	für.	gleich.
heim.	hin.	her.
herab.	herauf.	heraus.
herbei.	herdurch.	herein.
hernach.	herüber.	herum.
herunter.	hervor.	herzu.
hinab.	hinan.	hinauf.

hinauß.	hinüber.	hinzu.
innen.	mit.	nach.
nieder.	ob.	über.
überein.	unter.	voll.
vor.	voran.	voraus.
vorüber.	vorbei.	weg.
wieder.	zu.	zuwider.

The above particles have a meaning of themselves, independent of the verbs with which they are connected; some of their meanings may be seen in the following examples:

Abschreiben, to copy,	from, schreiben, to write, ab, from.
Ausschreiben, to extract,	... schreiben, to write, auß, out of, or from.
Unterschreiben, to sign,	 schreiben, to write, unter, under.
Aufbauen, to erect,	 bauen, to build, auf, up.
Nachgehen, to go after,	 gehen, to go, nach, after.
Mitnehmen, to take along with,	 nehmen, to take, mit, with.
Niederrennen, to run down,	 rennen, to run, nieder, down.
Herbringen, to bring hither, (or here,)	 bringen, to bring, her, hither.
Hervorbringen, to bring forth,	 bringen, to bring, hervor, forth.
Hinhelfen, to forward,	 helfen, to help, hin, forth.
Hinüberkommen, to come over,	 kommen, to come, hinüber, over.
Unterfinken, to go to the bottom,	 finken, to sink, unter, under.
Ueberfließen, to overflow	 fließen, to flow, über, over.
Vorreden, to speak before,	 reden, to speak, vor, before.
Vorangehen, to go before,	 gehen, to go, voran, before.
Vorbeigehen, to pass by,	 gehen, to go, vorbei, by.
Wegnehmen, to take away,	 nehmen, to take, weg, away.
Wiederkommen, to come again	 kommen, to come, wieder, again.
Zubeißen, to bite at,	 beißen, to bite, zu, at.

§. VIII. Of Verbs when they reflect upon the Agent, commonly called *Reflective Verbs*.

Reflective verbs are formed with the pronouns *mich, dich, sich, uns, euch, sich*, answering to the English pronouns,

myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves; they are conjugated like active verbs, and are either regular, or irregular.

Conjugation of the Reflective Verb sich lieben, to love one's-self.

Present.

Indicative

Sing.

Ich liebe mich, I love myself.

Du liebst dich, thou lovest thyself.

Er liebt sich, he loves himself.

Sie liebt sich, she loves herself.

Plural.

Wir lieben uns, we love ourselves.

Ihr liebet euch, you love yourselves.

Sie lieben sich, they love themselves.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Ich liebe mich, I may love myself.

Du liebest dich, thou mayst love thyself.

Er liebe sich, he may love himself.

Sie liebe sich, she may love herself.

Plural.

Wir lieben uns, we may love ourselves.

Ihr liebet euch, you may love yourselves.

Sie lieben sich, they may love themselves.

Imperfect.

Sing.

Ich liebte mich, I loved myself.

Du liebtest dich, thou &c.

Plural.

Wir liebten uns, we loved ourselves.

Ihr liebtet euch, you, &c.

Sing.

Ich liebete mich, I might love myself.

Du liebetest dich, thou, &c.

Plural.

Wir liebeten uns, we might love ourselves.

Ihr liebetet euch, you, &c.

Perfect.

Sing.

Ich habe mich geliebt, I have loved myself.

Du hast dich geliebt, &c.

Sing.

Ich habe mich geliebt, I may have loved myself.

Du habest dich geliebt, &c.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir haben uns geliebt, we
have loved ourselves.

Wir haben uns geliebt, we
may have loved ourselves.

Ihr habt euch geliebt, &c.

Ihr habet euch geliebt, &c.

Pluperfect.

*Sing.**Sing.*

Ich hatte mich geliebt, I had
loved myself.

Ich hätte mich geliebt, I might
have loved myself.

Du hättest dich geliebt, &c.

Du hättest dich geliebt, &c.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir hatten uns geliebt, we
had loved ourselves.

Wir hätten uns geliebt, we
might have loved ourselves.

Ihr hättet euch geliebt, &c.

Ihr hättet euch geliebt, &c.

First Future.

*Sing.**Sing.*

Ich werde mich lieben, I
shall, or will love myself.

Ich werde mich lieben, I shall,
or will love myself.

Du wirst dich lieben, &c.

Du werdest dich lieben, &c.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir werden uns lieben, we
shall, or will love ourselves.

Wir werden uns lieben, we
shall, or will love ourselves.

Ihr werdet euch lieben, &c.

Ihr werdet euch lieben, &c.

Second Future.

*Sing.**Sing.*

Ich werde mich geliebt haben,
I shall have loved myself.

Ich werde mich geliebt haben,
I shall have loved myself.

Du wirst dich geliebt haben,
thou, &c.

Du werdest dich geliebt haben,
thou, &c.

Plural.

Wir werden uns geliebt haben, we shall have loved ourselves.

Ihr werdet euch geliebt haben, &c.

Plural.

Wir werden uns geliebt haben, we shall have loved ourselves.

Ihr werdet euch geliebt haben, &c.

*Conditional.**Simple.**Sing.*

Ich würde mich lieben, I should love myself.

Du würdest dich lieben, thou, &c.

*Compound.**Sing.*

Ich würde mich geliebt haben, I should have loved myself.

Du würdest dich geliebt haben, &c.

Plural.

Wir würden uns lieben, we should love ourselves.

Ihr würdet euch lieben, &c.

Plural.

Wir würden uns geliebt haben, we should have loved ourselves.

Ihr würdet euch geliebt haben, you &c.

*Imperfect.**Sing.*

Liebe dich, love thyself.

Liebe er sich, let him love himself.

Plural.

Liebt, or liebet euch, love yourselves.

Lieben sie sich, let them love themselves.

*Practice on the Reflective Verbs.**INDICATIVE ; Present.*

I am ashamed,

Thou art conceited,

He blames himself,

We unite together,

You forget yourselves,

They assume to themselves,

sich schämen, to be ashamed.

sich einbilden, to be conceited.

sich tadeln, to blame one's-self.

sich vereinigen, to unite.

sich vergessen, to forget.

sich anmaßen, to assume.

Imperfect.

We rejoiced,	sich freuen, to rejoice.
He betook himself,	sich begeben, to betake one's-self.
We got leisure.	sich abmüßigen, to get leisure.
You prepared yourselves,	sich anschicken, to prepare.
They helped themselves,	sich helfen, to help.

Perfect.

I have been vexed,	sich ärgern, to be vexed.
Thou hast been mistaken,	sich irren, to be mistaken.
He has been shy,	sich scheuen, to be shy.
It has appeared,	sich äußern, to appear.
We have recovered ourselves,	sich erholen, to recover one's-self.
You have been mortified, or hurt.	sich kränken, to be mortified.
They have complained,	sich beklagen, to complain.

Pluperfect.

I had found myself,	sich befinden, to find one's-self.
Thou hadst rejoiced,	sich freuen, to rejoice.
He had been vexed,	sich ärgern, to be vexed.
She had hesitated, or be- thought herself,	sich bedenken, to hesitate.
We had been cautious,	sich hüten, to be cautious.
You had been afraid,	sich fürchten, to be afraid.
They had applied themselves,	sich befleißigen, to apply one's-self.

Imperative.

Do not offend,	sich vergehen, to offend, to <i>fail in one's duty.</i>
Grieve not,	sich grämen, to grieve.
Do not complain,	sich beklagen, to complain.
Do not burn yourself,	sich verbrennen, to burn.
Be not afraid,	sich fürchten, to be afraid.

Observations on the Reflective Verbs.

1. Reflective verbs are always active, and require the auxiliary *haben* in the compound tenses ; although the verbs be otherwise neuter, and require *seyn* ; as, *ich habe mich müde geritten*, I have ridden myself weary, *or* I have wearied myself with riding ; but *reiten*, otherwise requires *seyn* ; as, *ich bin geritten*, I have ridden.

2. There are many reflective verbs in German, which are not so in English ; as, *sich erbarmen*, to pity ; *sich grämen*, to grieve ; and many others, as in the above practice. Some are only employed in the reflective form ; as,

sich begeben, to repair to.

sich bedanken, to thank.

sich bemächtigen, to get possession of.

sich grämen, to be grieved.

sich freuen, to rejoice.

sich berüñmen, *or* *rühmen*, to boast one's-self, &c.

sich ärgern, to be vexed.

Some are employed in both forms ; as,

Irren, to err, *or* *sich irren*, to be mistaken.

Zanken, to quarrel, *or* *sich zanken*, to embroil one's-self.

Scheuen, to shun, *or* *sich scheuen*, to be shy.

3. Most reflective verbs take the pronoun in the accusative ; as, *Ich erbarme mich*, I pity ; *Ich besinne mich*, I reflect ; but some few admit the pronoun in the dative ; as, *ich maße mir nicht an*, I do not assume ; *ich bilde mir nicht ein*, I do not fancy ; *ich getraue mir*, I am bold.

4. When the reflective pronoun is in the accusative plural, the proper reflective verbs admit of *sich* only ; as, *sie entschließen sich*, they resolve ; but those verbs which may be used reciprocally, or otherwise, admit either *sich*, or *einander* ; as, *sie schlagen sich*, *or* *einander*, they beat one another ; *sie lieben sich*, *or* *sie lieben einander wie Kinder*, they love one another as children ; *Sie sind sich alle gleich*, they are all alike, *or* they are all like each other ; *wir sehen alle einander gleich*, we all look like each other. Here the German differs from the English, in making no distinction between *sich* and *einander*, they beat themselves, and they beat one another, are distinct things in English, though both may be translated into German by the same phrase ; but you cannot say in German *Sie schämen einander*, because *schämen*, to be ashamed, is not a transitive verb ; but *beschämen*, is transitive.

§. IX. *Of Impersonal Verbs.*

The impersonal verbs are regular or irregular, and are

formed with the pronoun *es*, in the third person singular only ; as in the following examples.

*Conjugation of the Regular Verb Regnen, to rain.**

Present.

Indicative.

Es regnet, it rains.

Subjunctive.

Es regne, it may rain.

Imperfect.

Es regnete, it rained.

Es regnete, it might rain.

Perfect.

Es hat geregnet, it has rained. *Es habe geregnet*, it may have rained.

Pluperfect.

Es hatte geregnet, it had rained. *Es hätte geregnet*, it might have rained.

First Future.

Es wird regnen, it will rain. *Es werde regnen*, it will rain.

Second Future.

Es wird geregnet haben, it will have rained. *Es werde geregnet haben*, it will have rained.

Conditional.

Simple.

Es würde regnen, it would rain.

Compound.

Es würde geregnet haben, it would have rained.

Obs. There is no imperative, or participle.

* *Regnen*, to rain, is conjugated like the regular verb *lieben*, to love, in the third person singular.

The following verbs may be conjugated in a similar manner.

Donnern, to thunder.

Blitzen, to lighten.

Schneien, to snow.

Thauen, to thaw, &c.

Hageln, or schloßen, to hail.

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb Frieren, to freeze.

Present.

Indicative.

Imperative.

Es friert, it freezes.

Es friere, it may freeze.

Imperfect.

Es fror, it froze.

Es fröre, it might freeze.

Perfect.

Es hat gefroren, it has frozen.

Es habe gefroren, it may have frozen.

Pluperfect.

Es hatte gefroren, it had frozen.

Es hätte gefroren, it might have frozen.

First Future.

Es wird frieren, it will freeze. Es werde frieren, it will freeze.

Second Future.

Es wird gefroren haben, it will have frozen.

Es werde gefroren haben, it will have frozen.

Conditional.

Simple.

Compound.

Es würde frieren, it would freeze.

Es würde gefroren haben, it would have frozen.

Observe. There is no imperative, or participle.

Some verbs are reflective, as well as impersonal, as in the following example.

*Conjugation of the Impersonal Reflective Verb sich ärgern,
to be vexed.*

Present.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Sing.

Es ärgert mich, I am vexed,
or it vexes me, &c.

Es ärgert dich, thou art vex-
ed, or it vexes thee.

Es ärgert ihn, or sie, he, or
she is vexed, or it vexed
him, or her.

Es ärgere mich, I may be
vexed, or it may vex me.

Es ärgere dich, thou mayst
be vexed, or it may vex thee.

Es ärgere ihn, he may be
vexed, or it may vex him.

Plural.

Plural.

Es ärgert uns, we are vex-
ed, or it vexes us.

Es ärgert euch, you are
vexed, or it vexes you.

Es ärgert sie, they are vex-
ed, or it vexes them.

Es ärgere uns, we may be
vexed, or it may vex us.

Es ärgere euch, you may be
vexed, or it may vex you.

Es ärgere sie, they may be
vexed, or it may vex them.

Imperfect.

Sing.

Sing.

Er ärgerte mich, I was vexed,
or it vexed me, &c.

Es ärgerte mich, I might be
vexed, or it might vex me,
&c.

Perfect.

Sing.

Sing.

Es hat mich geärgert, I have
been vexed, or it has vex-
ed me, &c.

Es habe mich geärgert, I
may have been vexed, or
it may have vexed me, &c.

Pluperfect.

Sing.

Sing.

Es hatte mich geärgert, I
had been vexed, or it had
vexed me, &c.

Es hätte mich geärgert, I
might have been vexed, or
it might have vexed me, &c.

First Future.

Indicative.

Sing.

Es wird mich ärgern, I shall
be vexed, or it will vex me,
&c.

Subjunctive.

Sing.

Es werde mich ärgern, I shall
be vexed, or it will vex me,
&c.

Second Future.

Sing.

Es wird mich geärgert ha=
ben, I shall have been
vexed, or it will have vex=
ed me, &c.

Sing.

Es werde mich geärgert ha=
ben, I shall have been vex=
ed, or it will have vexed
me, &c.

Conditional.

Simple.

Sing.

Es würde mich ärgern, I
should be vexed, or it
would vex me.

Compound.

Sing.

Es würde mich geärgert ha=
ben, I should have been
vexed, or it would have
vexed me.

Observe. This verb has no imperative, or participle.

Practice on the Impersonals.

Present.

I am hungry,
It freezes,
We are thirsty,
They are sleepy,

(sich) hungern, to be hungry.
frieren, to freeze.
(sich) dursten, to be thirsty.
(sich) schlâfern, to be sleepy.

Imperfect.

It rained,
It thawed,
We were grieved,
You were grieved,
They were chagrined,

regnen, to rain.
thauen, to thaw.
sich grâmen, to grieve.
.....
(sich) verdrießen, to be cha=
grined.

Perfect.

I have been giddy,	(sich) schwindeln, to be giddy.
Thou hast been hungry,	(sich) hungern, to be hungry.
It has hailed,	hageln, to hail.
We have been glad,	sich freuen, to be glad.
You have been grieved,	sich grämen, to be grieved.

Future.

It will be a hoarfrost.	reisen, to be a hoarfrost.
We shall be hungry,	(sich) hungern, to be hungry.
You will be thirsty,	(sich) dursten, to be thirsty.
They will be vexed,	sich ärgern, to be vexed.

Conditional.

I should be surprised,	sich wundern, to be surprised.
You would be chagrined,	sich verdrießen, to be chagrined.
It would behove,	(sich) gebühren, to behove.

Observations on the Impersonals.

1. The proper impersonals are those verbs which are used only in the third person singular, and mostly express the operations of nature, as :

Es regnet, it rains.	Es frieret, it freezes.
Es schneiet, it snows.	Es thauet, it thaws.
Es hagelt, it hails.	Es wittert, (es stürmet) it storms.
Es donnert, it thunders.	Es wehet, it blows.
Es blißet, it lightens.	Es taget, it dawns.
Es schauert, it showers.	Es währet, (es dauert) it lasts.

So the following.

Es ist warm, it is warm.	Es ist trocken, it is dry.
Es ist heiß, it is very warm.	Es ist windig, it is windy.
Es ist licht, it is light.	Es ist frostig, it is frosty.
Es ist kalt, it is cold.	Es ist stürmisch, it is stormy.
Es ist dunkel, it is dark.	Es ist wolkicht, it is cloudy.
Es ist naß, it is wet.	Es ist kothig, it is dirty.
Es ist neblig, it is foggy.	Es ist klar, it is clear.
Es ist regnigt, it is rainy.	Es ist schön Wetter, it is fine weather.
Es ist schlecht (bö) Wetter, it is dirty, (bad) weather.	

2. The following verbs govern a dative case of the personal pronouns ; (*viz.*) *mir, dir, ihm, (ihr,) uns, euch, ihnen* ; as,

<i>Es beliebt, or es gefällt mir, dir, ihm, &c.</i> it pleases me, thee, him, &c.	<i>Es mangelt mir,</i> it is wanting to me.
<i>Es gebühret mir,</i> it becomes me.	<i>Es mißfällt mir,</i> it displeases me.
<i>Es eßelt mir,</i> I am disgusted, or it disgusts me.	<i>Es mißlingt mir,</i> I do not succeed in it.
<i>Es fehlt mir,</i> I want.	<i>Es träumt mir,</i> I dream, (<i>it dreams to me.</i>)
<i>Es kömmt mir vor,</i> it appears to me.	<i>Es ziemt, or es geziemt mir,</i> it becomes me.
<i>Es ist mir warm,</i> I am warm.	<i>Es scheint mir,</i> it seems to me.
<i>Es ist mir kalt,</i> I am cold.	<i>Es ist mir Angst,</i> I am afraid.
<i>Es bekömmt mir,</i> it agrees with me.	<i>Es ist mir wohl,</i> I am well.

3. The following govern the accusative case of the pronouns ; *viz. mich, dich, ihn, or sich, (ihr,) uns, euch, sie, or sich* ; as,

<i>Es hungert mich, dich, &c.</i> I am hungry, thou art hungry, &c.	<i>Es jammert mich,</i> it grieves me.
<i>Es dürstet mich,</i> I am thirsty.	<i>Es betrübt mich,</i> it afflicts me.
<i>Es schläfert mich,</i> I am sleepy.	<i>Es dauert mich,</i> it grieves me.
<i>Es reuet mich,</i> I repent, or it repents me.	<i>Es mahnet mich,</i> it puts me in mind of, or it reminds me.
<i>Es freuet, or es erfreuet mich,</i> I rejoice, or it rejoices me.	<i>Es wundert mich,</i> it surprises me.
<i>Es frieret mich,</i> I am cold.	<i>Es verlanget mich,</i> it makes me long.
	<i>Es verdrießt, or es verdrüßt mich,</i> it vexes me.

When the pronoun is put first, *es* is omitted ; as,

<i>Mich hungert,</i> I am hungry.	<i>Mir beliebt,</i> I am pleased.
<i>Mich durstet,</i> I am thirsty.	<i>Mir fehlt,</i> I want, &c.

4. The following admit of both a dative and accusative of the pronoun.

<i>Es dünkt mir, (mich,) or es dünkt mir, (mich,)</i> it seems to me.	<i>Mir, (mich) dünket, or mir, (mich) dünkt,</i> I think, or methinks.
<i>Es gelüstet mich,</i> I list.	<i>Es hilft mir, (mich,)</i> it helps me.
<i>Es schläfert mich,</i> I am sleepy.	<i>Es verdrießt mir, (mich,)</i> I am angry.

5. Some of these impersonals may be changed into personal verbs ; as,

Personal.

Impersonal.

Ich hungere, or ich bin hungrig,
I am hungry.

Ich denke, I think.

Ich durste, or ich bin durstig, I
am thirsty.

instead of es hungert mich.

..... es dünkt mir, (mich.)

..... es durstet mir, (mich.)

6. Many reflective verbs may likewise occasionally take an impersonal form ; as,

Es freuet mich, or ich freue mich, it rejoices me, or I rejoice.

Es ärgert mich, or ich ärgere mich, it vexes me, or I am vexed, &c.

In the same manner other verbs may be made impersonal and reflective ; as,

Es versteht sich, it follows of course, or of course that is.

Es sagt sich leicht, it is easily said.

Hier wohnt es sich gut, here is a good place to live in.

Hier geht sichs (for sich es) schlecht, it is bad walking here.

*Es sometimes answers to *there* ; as, es ist, there is ; es giebt, there is.

They are conjugated as follows :

INDICATIVE.

Present.

Es ist, there is.

Es giebt, there is, or there are.

Imperfect.

Es war, there was.

Es gab, there was.

Perfect.

Es ist gewesen, there has been.

Es hat gegeben, there has been.

* Es is frequently put before the verb, and the nominative after ; as,
Es kennt ihn niemand, no one knows him, (i.e.) *there knows him no one.*
Es fliegt ein Vogel, there is a bird flying.

INDICATIVE.

Future.

Es wird seyn, there will be. Es wird geben, there will be.

Conditional.

Es würde seyn, there would be. Es würde geben, there would be.

And so on through the subjunctive.

Sometimes *es* is employed with the passive verb: as, *es wird gesagt*, it is said: but in this connexion the indefinite pronoun *man* is more commonly used, answering to the English *one, we, people, men*, or the passive verb *to be, &c.*; as, *man glaubt*, it is believed, we believe, they, people, men believe; *man hat geläugnet*, it has been denied; *man wird hoffen*, we shall hope.

Recapitulatory Exercises upon the Verbs.

FIRST LESSON.

Deutschland ist kaum seit zwei tausend Jahren bekannt worden.

Die alten Deutschen waren rohe Barbaren, nicht viel besser als die wilden Amerikaner.

Wälder und Sümpfe verbreiteten sich im Lande. Die Wälder waren mit Unkraut und Gesträuch verwachsen. Die Flüsse traten aus und überschwemmten das Land.

Die Einwohner schwammen über die Flüsse weil sie von Brücken nichts wußten. Keine Städte waren zu sehen.

Kaum traf man ein Paar Wohnungen nahe bei einander an, nur Köln und noch ein Paar Städte lagen am Rheine.

Sie baueten sehr wenige Häuser und keine solche wie wir gebauet haben.

Wir haben Bäume abgehauen und gespalten, Steine gebacken oder gegraben und daraus Häuser gemacht.

Deutschland, Germany.
kaum, scarcely.

bekannt, known.
seit, ago.

alt, ancient.	*Stadt, <i>f.</i> 2. city.
Deutscher, German.	zu sehen, to be seen.
rohe, rude.	treffen, to meet.
Barbar, <i>m.</i> 3. Barbarian.	Paar, couple.
viel, much.	Wohnung, <i>f.</i> 3. habitation.
als, than.	nahe bei, close to.
wild, wild.	Röln, Cologne.
Amerikaner, Americans.	noch ein Paar, a few other.
*Wald, <i>n.</i> 5. wood, or forest.	liegen, <i>ir.</i> to lie.
*Sumpf, <i>m.</i> 2. marsh.	am, (for an dem,) on the.
sich verbreiten, to spread.	Rhein, 2. Rhine.
*Land, <i>n.</i> 5. country.	Bauen, to build.
verwachsen, to overgrow.	wenig, few.
mit, with.	*Haus, <i>n.</i> 5. house.
Unkraut, <i>n.</i> 5. weed.	solcher, such.
Gesträuch, <i>n.</i> 2. broom.	wie, as.
*Fluß, <i>m.</i> 2. river.	abhauen, <i>ir.</i> to cut down.
austreten, <i>ir.</i> to break its banks.	spalten, <i>ir.</i> to rive.
überschwemmen, to overflow.	Baum, <i>m.</i> 2. tree.
Einwohner, <i>m.</i> 1. inhabitant.	backen, <i>ir.</i> to burn.
schwimmen, <i>ir.</i> to swim.	Stein, <i>m.</i> 2. brick, or stone.
über, over.	oder, or.
weil, because.	graben, <i>ir.</i> to dig.
wissen, <i>ir.</i> to know.	Stein, stone.
von, of.	machen, to make.
Brücke, <i>f.</i> 3. bridge.	daraus, out of these.

SECOND LESSON.

Sie lagen und schliefen aber unter den Bäumen, oder machten sich unterirdische Höhlen.

Weder die Männer noch Frauen waren prächtig gekleidet. Diese trugen keine von den schönen Kleidern, welche die Damen seit dreihundert Jahren getragen haben.

Wir haben die Mittel gefunden, alles schön zu machen.

Wir haben die Schafe geschoren und davon Wolle bekommen.

Die Würmer, welche wir aufgezogen, haben uns Seide gesponnen.

Aus diesen beiden haben wir Tuch und Seide gewebt.

Die Deutschen Weiber spinnen und webten die Klei-

dung, welche die ganze Familie trug, aber das Gewebe war freilich nicht gut gearbeitet.

Sie lasen nichts weil sie keine Bücher hatten, sie dachten, sprachen und schrieben sehr wenig, weil sie sehr wenig sahen und hörten.

Wir haben hingegen viel gesehen, gehört, geschrieben, gesprochen und gedacht.

schlafen, *ir.* to sleep.
 unter, under.
 unterirdisch, subterranean.
 Höhle, cavern.
 weder, neither.
 *Mann, *m.* 5. man.
 noch, nor.
 Frau, *f.* 3. woman.
 prächtig, elegantly.
 kleiden, to clothe.
 tragen, *ir.* to wear.
 von, of.
 schön, fine.
 Kleid, *n.* 5. cloth.
 Dame, *f.* 3. lady.
 seit, for.
 Jahr, *n.* 2. year.
 finden, *ir.* to find.
 Mittel, *n.* 1. means.
 scher, *ir.* to shear.
 bekommen, *ir.* to get.

Wolle, *f.* 3. wool.
 aufziehen, to bring up.
 spinnen, *ir.* to spin.
 Seide, *f.* 3. silk.
 weben, to weave.
 Kleidung, *f.* 3. clothing.
 ganz, whole.
 Familie, *f.* 3. family.
 tragen, *ir.* to wear.
 Gewebe, *n.* 1. weaving.
 freilich, indeed.
 arbeiten, to work.
 lesen, *ir.* to read.
 denken, *ir.* to think.
 sprechen, *ir.* to speak.
 schreiben, *ir.* to write.
 sehen, *ir.* to see.
 hören, to hear.
 hingegen, on the contrary.
 denken, *ir.* to think.

CHAP. VII.

ADVERBS, Nebenwörter.

The adverbs which most frequently occur in writing and conversation are the following :

§ I. *Adverbs of Place.*

Wo ? where ?
 Woher ? whence ?
 Wohin ? whither ?

Wohinwärts ? where to ?
 Hier, allhier, here.
 Hieher, hither.

Da, dort, daselbst, there.	Ab, off, down.
Daher, dorthier, thence.	Auf und nieder, or auf und ab, up and down.
Dahin, dorthin, thither.	Ein und aus, in and out.
Dahinwärts, thereto.	Hin und her, to and from.
Abwesend, absent.	Hier und da, (dort,) here and there.
Irgends, irgendwo, somewhere.	Fort, forth.
Nirgend, nirgendwo, nowhere.	Hinter, behind.
Anderwo, elsewhere.	Vorn, before, fronting.
Allenthalben, allermwegen, or allerorten, every where.	Von wannen? from whence?
Innen, drinnen, within.	Von hinnen, from hence.
Außen, draußen, without.	Nah, nahe, near.
Inwendig, internally.	Fern, ferne, far.
Außwendig, externally, outward.	Weit ab, far off.
Oben, droben, above.	Nah bei, hard by.
Darauf, upon it, thereon.	Anwesend, or gegenwärtig, present.

§. II. *Adverbs of Time.*

Wenn? wann? when?	Zuzeiten, zuweilen, or bisweilen, sometimes.
*Denn, dann, alsdenn, alsdann, then.	Einst, einstens, once.
Nun, jetzt, now.	Neulich, lately, newly.
Bald, soon.	Lehtens, lehtthin, lehtlich, lately, lastly.
Schon, already.	Einstmals, at some time.
Früh, early.	Formals, or ehemals, formerly.
Spät, late.	Nachmals, or nachher, afterwards.
Je, jemals, ever.	Wieder, wiederum, again.
Nie, niemals, never.	Seither, seit, since.
Noch, still, yet.	Heute, to-day.
Noch nicht, not yet.	
Beizeiten, betimes.	
Allezeit, or allewege, always.	

* Some writers distinguish the adverb *dann, then*, from the conjunction *denn, for*, by spelling the former *dann*, also to distinguish *wann, when*, from *wenn, if*.

Gestern, yesterday.	Stets, continually, always, ever.
Vorgestern, the day before yesterday.	Eben nun, just now.
Morgen, to-morrow.	Lange, or schon lange, long ago, a long time since.
Uebermorgen, the day after to-morrow.	Unlängst, not long ago.
Mittags, at noon.	Bisher, hitherto.
Vormittags, before noon.	Damals, at that time.
Nachmittags, after noon.	Vorlängst, long ago, &c.
Immer, always.	

§. III. Affirmatives and Negatives

Ja, yes.	In der That, indeed.
Nein, no.	Unfehlbar, doubtless.
Wahrlich, truly, verily.	Schlechterdings, absolutely.
Ja freilich, or ja wohl, yes to be sure, surely, to be sure, yes.	Wirklich, really.
Allerdings, entirely, by all means.	Immermehr, ever.
Gar nicht, not at all.	Nimmermehr, never.
Keineswegs, mit nichten, by no means.	Glaublich, credibly.
Raum, hardly.	Vielleicht, perhaps.
	Vermuthlich, probably.
	Durchaus nicht, absolutely not.
	Unglaublich, incredibly.

§ IV. Adverbs of various Use.

Meist, fast, schier, almost.	Wie? how?
Beinahe, nearly.	Warum? why?
Genug, genug, enough.	Darum, therefore.
Voller, full of.	Gleich, directly, equally.
Völlig, completely.	Anderz, otherwise.
Obenhin, at random, carelessly.	Gleicherweise, likewise.
Vollends, fully.	Gleich wie, gleich als, like as.
Zum theil, in part.	So, so.
Theils, partly.	Sehr, gar, very, much.
Ungefähr, about.	Zu, allzu, too.
Als, wie, as.	Ganz, gänzlich, whole, wholly.
	Wohl, gut, well.

Uebel, schlecht, bad.	Sonderlich, besonders, especially.
Böse, badly.	Hauptsächlich, chiefly.
Also, thus.	Mit Fleiß, on purpose.
Ungemein, uncommonly.	Vielmehr, rather.
Kurz, in short.	Redlich, sincerely.
Uberaus, exceedingly.	Recht, right.
Zugleich, at the same time.	Unrecht, wrong
Zusammen, together.	Endlich, lastly.
Sämmtlich, all together.	
Sachte, softly.	

§. V. Observations on the Adverbs.

1. The following substantives, denoting parts of the natural day, are changed into adverbs in the following manner :

<i>Substantives.</i>	<i>Adverbs.</i>
Der Tag, the day ;	Tags, des Tags, in the day-time.
Die Nacht, the night ;	Nachts, des Nachts, in the night.
Der Morgen, the morning ;	Morgens, des Morgens, in the morning.
Der Abend, the evening ;	Abends, des Abends, in the evening.
Der Vormittag, the forenoon ;	Vormittags, des Vormittags, in the forenoon.
Der Nachmittag, the afternoon ;	Nachmittags, des Nachmittags, in the afternoon.
Der Mittag, the noon ;	Mittags, des Mittags, at noon.
Die Mitternacht, the midnight ;	Mitternachts, des Mitternachts, at midnight.
Der Augenblick, the moment ;	Augenblicks, des Augenblicks, in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye.

So some other words become adverbs, by means of an additional s ; as, bereits, already, from bereit, ready ; stets, constantly, from stet, constant ; besonders, particularly, from besonder, particular ; anders, otherwise, from ander, other ; rechts, to the right hand, from recht, right ; links, to

the left, from *linf*, left, &c. Numerals become adverbs, by adding *enſ*, or *tenſ*; as, *erſtenſ*, in the first place, or firstly; *zweitenſ*, secondly; *drittenſ*, thirdly, &c. And the following words; *beſtenſ*, in the best manner; *meiſtenſ*, mostly; *eheſtenſ*, with the first opportunity; *höchſtenſ*, at the most; *übrigenſ*, as for the rest, in the mean time.

2. Many adjectives and nouns may be changed into adverbs by adding the syllable *lich*, and changing the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*; as, *klar*, clear, *klärlich*, clearly; *Gott*, God, *göttlich*, godly; *gut*, good; *gütlich*, goodly, &c.

§. VI. *The Comparison of Adverbs.*

Adverbs are invariable, except that some admit the degrees of comparison; as,

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparitive.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Gut, or wohl, well;	besser, better;	am, (zum) besten, best.
Uebel, ill;	schlimmer, worse;	schlimsten, worst.
Viel, much;	mehr, more;	meisten, most.
Wenig, little, few.	weniger, less;	wenigsten, least.
Nah, near;	näher, nearer;	nächsten, nearest.
Hoch, high;	höher, higher;	höchsten, highest.
Bald, or ehe, soon;	eher, sooner;	ehesten, soonest.
Gern, readily, or willing- ly;	lieber, more readily, or rather.	liebsten, most readily, best, or most willingly.

Observe. The syllable *un* changes the adverbs from affirmatives to negatives, in the same manner: as, *im*, or *un* in English; as, *möglich*, possible; *unmöglich*, impossible; *vermögend*, able; *unvermögend*, unable.

CHAP. VIII.

PREPOSITIONS, *Vormörter.*

Of prepositions, observe their government, composition, and abbreviation.

§. I. *Their Government.*

Some prepositions govern a genitive, some a dative, some either a genitive, or dative, some an accusative, and some either a dative, or an accusative.

1. *Prepositions governing the Genitive*

Examples.

Anstatt, instead.

{ Anstatt des Vaters, instead of the father.

Halb is only used in compounds; as, Außerhalb, out of, *and the three following.*

{ Außerhalb des Hauses, out of doors.

Innerhalb, in, within.

{ Innerhalb dreier Tage, in three days.

Oberhalb, in the higher part of.

{ Oberhalb der Stadt, in the higher part of the town.

Unterhalb, in the lower part of.

{ Unterhalb der Stadt, in the lower part of the town.

Diesseits, on this side of.

{ Diesseits des Flusses, on this side of the river.

Halben, or halber, (*when the noun has no article, or pronoun before it*), on account of, for the sake of.

{ Des Königs halben, for the sake of the king.

{ Alters halber, on account of age.

{ Deiner Laster halben, on account of your vices.

Genseits, beyond, on the other side.

{ Genseits des Ganges, on the other side of the Ganges.

Kraft, by virtue of.

{ Kraft meines Amtes, by virtue of my office.

Laut, according to, conformably.

{ Laut des Königlichen Befehls, according to the king's command.

Mittelt, (better) vermittelt, *by*, by means of.

{ Vermittelt deines Beistandes, by means of your assistance.

Examples

Ungeachtet, notwithstanding.
(sometimes precedes and
sometimes follows the
noun.)

Ungeachtet aller Hindernisse,
notwithstanding all im-
pediments.

Seines Fleißes ungeachtet,
notwithstanding his indus-
try.

Unweit, not far from.

Unweit des Dorfes, not far
from the village.

Bermöge, by reason or vir-
tue of, by dint of, by
means of.

Bermöge seiner Geburt, by
reason of his birth.

Bermöge der Uebung, by
dint of practice.

Bermöge des Fleißes, by
means of diligence.

Während, during.

Während der Zeit, during
the time.

Während des Krieges, dur-
ing the war.

Wegen, on account of, be-
cause of. (It may stand
before or after the noun).

Ich that es meines Vaters
wegen, I did it because of,
or on account of my father.

Wegen seines Fleißes, on ac-
count of his diligence.

2. Prepositions which govern the Dative.

Auß, out of.

Auß dem Bette, out of bed.

Außer, out of, without, be-
sides.

Außer Ordnung, out of, or
without order.

Außer der Stadt, out of the
city or town.

Außer dem Hause, out of
the house.

Außer mir, besides me.

Bei, by, near.

Bei der Hand, by the hand.

Bei dem Hause, near the
house.

Examples.

Entgegen, against, towards. Entgegen gehen, to go to meet, (<i>stands after its case.</i>)	{ Dem Winde entgegen, against the wind. Wir wollen unserm Freunde entgegen gehen, we will go to meet our friend.
Gegen=über, opposite to (<i>may be separated</i>).	{ Dem Hause gegenüber, op- posite (<i>to</i>) the house. Gegen mir über, opposite to me.
Mit, with.	{ Mit ihm, with him. Mit dem Vater, with the father.
Nach, 1st. after, behind. 2nd. to, or towards, with names of places, and verbs of motion. 3rd. according to, following.	{ Nach mir, after, or behind me. Wann gehen Sie nach der Stadt? when do you go to town? Seiner Geburt nach, accord- ing to his birth. Dem Strome nach, follow- ing the stream.
Nebst, or sammt, together with.	{ Nebst, or sammt dem Vater, together with the father.
Seit, since.	Seit der Zeit, since the time.
Von, from, of, by.	{ Von mir, from me, of me. Das Buch ist von ihm ge- schrieben, that book is written by him.
Vor, before.	Vor mir, before me.
Zu, to, at, by, on, in.	{ Zu mir, to me. Zu London, at, or in London. Zu Hause, at home. Zu Wasser, by water. Zu Lande, on land. Zu Fuße, on foot.
Zunächst, next to.	{ Er saß mir zunächst, he sat next to me.
Zuwider, contrary to, against.	Mir zuwider, against me.

3. *Prepositions governing the Accusative.*

Examples.

Durch, through.

{ Durch den Wald, through the wood.

{ Durch dich, through you.

Für, for.

{ Für mich, for me.

{ Für den Preis, for the price.

*Gegen, against, opposite.

{ Gegen den Wind, against the wind.

{ Gegen mich, against me, or opposite me.

Gen, *when it means towards*, is applied to Himmel only; as,

{ Gen Himmel, towards heaven.

Gen, by, is used as a nautical phrase; as,

{ Nord gen Ost, north by east.

†Ohne, } without.
Sonder, }Ohne, } mich, without me.
Sonder, }

Um, about.

{ Um die Stadt, about the city.

{ Um mich, about me.

Wider, against, in opposition to.

{ Wider mich, euch, ihn, sie, es,
sie, against me, you, him,
her, it, them.4. *Prepositions governing the genitive, or dative; and the genitive, or accusative.*Ohne, without (*with the acc.*) Ohne mich, without me:

After the substantive with the genitive.

{ Zweifels ohne, without doubt.

Zufolge, according to, (before the substantive with the gen.)

{ Zufolge ihres Befehls, according to your command.

* Gegen is also used with the dative, but then it signifies *towards*; as, gegen mir, ihm, towards me, him.

† Ohne sometimes governs the genitive.

After the substantive with the <i>dative</i> .	{ Ihrem Befehl zufolge, according to your command.
Längs, along, (generally with the <i>dative</i> , sometimes with the <i>genitive</i> .)	{ Längs dem Wege, along the way. Längs des Weges, along the way.

5. *Prepositions governing the Dative, or Accusative.**

An, at, in, on; <i>dative</i> .	{ An einem Orte, in, or at a place. Er ist an allen Orten, he is at, or in every place.
.. to; <i>accusative</i> .	{ Er gehet an alle Orte, he goes to every place.
Auf, in, upon; <i>dative</i> .	{ Er ist auf dem Felde, he is in the field. Das Buch liegt auf dem Tische, the book lies upon the table.
.... into, on; <i>acc</i> .	{ Er gehet auf das Feld, he goes into the field. Lege das Buch auf den Tisch, lay the book on the table.
Hinter, behind; <i>dat</i> .	{ Er ist hinter mir, he is behind me.
..... <i>acc</i> .	{ Er gehet hinter mich, he walks behind me.
In, in; <i>dat</i> .	{ Er ist in dem Zimmer, he is in the room.
.. into; <i>acc</i> .	{ Er gehet in das Zimmer, he goes into the room.

* If they signify being in a place, either in motion or at rest the *dative* is used; but when motion *to* a place is expressed, the *accusative* is used.

Examples.

Neben, next to ; *dat.*

{ Er wohnt neben meinem Hause, he lives next to my house.

..... *acc.*

{ Er ziehet neben mein Haus, he removes next to my house.

Ueber, above ; *dat.*

{ Er wohnt über mir, he lives over, or above me.

.... over ; *acc.*

{ Er springet über mich, he jumps over me.

Unter, among ; *dat.*

{ Er ist unter den Leuten, he is among the people.

{ Er ist unter mir, he is below me.

{ Es liegt unter dem Tische, it lies under the table.

..... under, below ; *acc.*

{ Er gehet unter die Leute, he goes among the people.

{ Er demüthiget sich unter mich, he humbles himself below me.

{ Ich werfe es unter den Tisch, I throw it under the table.

Vor, before ; *dat.*{ Vor der Zeit, before the time.
{ Vor mir stand ein Baum, before me stood a tree...... *acc.*

{ Vor die Thür, before the door.

{ Er gehet vor den Richter zu treten, he is going to appear before the judge.

Zwischen, between ; *dat.*

{ Ich bin zwischen zweien Freunden, I am between two friends.

{ Zwischen dir und mir, between you and me.

Examples.

Zwischen, between ; *acc.*

Sie kam zwischen zwei Kin-
der, she came between two
children.
Zwischen dich und mich, be-
tween you and me.

§. II. *Their Composition.*

Some prepositions are often compounded with *hie, hier, da, wo*, and form adverbs; if the preposition begin with a vowel, or *n*, an *r* is added to the adverbs *da* and *wo*.

1st. With *da*, *dar*, instead of *der, dieser, derselbe*.

Dabei, by it, with it, thereby.	Darunter, under it, or that.
Daran, on it, or that, there- on.	Dafür, for that.
Darauf, upon it, or that, thereupon.	Dagegen, against it, or that.
Daraus, from thence, it, that, whereupon.	Damit, with that, or it, by it, therewith.
Darein, thereinto, into it, or that.	Daneben, near that, or it, next to it.
Darin, therein, in it, within.	Davon, of that, or it, thereof, therefrom.
Darnach, after it, thereafter.	Dawider, against that, or it.
Darum, for it, or that; there- fore.	Dazu, for that, or it, thereto.
Darüber, on that account, at it.	Davor, before that, or it.
	Dazwischen, between that, or it, there, between, &c.

2nd. With *hier*, the same prepositions as before.

Hieran, on this, or it. Hierauf, upon this, or it, &c.

3rd. With *wo*, *wor*, instead of *welcher, was*.

Woran, on which, whereon.	Worin, in which, wherein.
Worauf, upon which, where- upon.	Womit, with which, where- with.

Wodurch, by, or through which.	Worneben, next to which, wherenext.
Warum, for which, why, wherefore.	Worüber, upon which, whereupon.
Wogegen, against which.	Wofür, for which, wherefore.
Wovor, before which.	Worunter, under which, among which. &c.
Wozu, to which, whereto.	

4th. With her and hin as adverbs.

Herab, hinab, herunter, down.	Herauf, up. Heraus, out, &c.
-------------------------------	---------------------------------

5th. Some are separated; as,

Um=her, round about.	Hinter=her, hinter=drein, behind.
Um=willen, for the sake of.	
Um Gottes willen, for God's sake.	Ich ging hinter dem Manne her, I walked after the man, I followed the man.

CHAP. III.—*Their Abbreviations.*

In the familiar, or colloquial style, the definite article and preposition, are generally contracted into one word; as, am, for an dem. Ex. am Tage, for an dem Tage, in the day.

Examples.

Am,	for an dem,	as, am Fenster, at the window.
Ans,	.. an das,	.. ans Licht, in the light.
Aufs,	.. auf das,	.. aufs Haus, upon the house.
Beim, or (beym,)	bei dem, or (bey dem,)	beim, or (beym) Vater, by the father.
Durchs,	.. durch das,	.. durchs Feuer, through the fire.
Fürs,	.. für das,	.. fürs Geld, for money.
Im,	.. in dem,	.. im Himmel, in heaven.
Ins,	.. in das,	.. ins Wasser, in the water.
Vom,	.. von dem,	.. vom Uebel, from evil.
Vors,	.. vor das,	.. vors Fenster, before the window.
Vorm,	.. vor dem,	.. vorm Thor, before the door.

Uebern,	for über dem,	as überm Feuer, upon the fire.
Uebers,	.. über das,	.. übers Meer, by sea.
Untern,	.. unter dem,	.. unterm Kopfe, under the head.
Zum,	.. zu dem,	.. zum Könige, to the king.
Zur,	.. zu der,	.. zur Ehre, for the honor.

CHAP. IX.

CONJUNCTIONS, Bindewörter.

Observe. Some conjunctions regulate the place of the verb.

1st. The following conjunctions join words and sentences, without changing the position of the verb.

Und, and.

Die vier Elemente sind Feuer, Luft, Erde und Wasser, the four elements are fire, air, earth and water.

Wir gehen und reden mit einander, we walk and talk together.

Auch, also, too.

Wir sind froh und sie auch, we are glad and they also.

Ich glaube es auch, I think so too.

Haben Sie auch gehört? have you heard also?

Aber, allein, sondern,* but.

Wir sind betrübt, aber der Herr tröstet uns, we are afflicted, but the Lord comforts us.

* Sondern by itself is an opposite negative, or disjunctive. But sondern auch is positive.

Aber, allein, sondern, but.	Wir fragen allein (aber) niemand antwortet, we ask, but nobody answers. Wir hören nichts Gutes aber auch nichts Böses, we hear no good, but nothing bad. Ich habe es nicht nur gesehen, sondern auch gehört, I have not only seen it, but heard it also.
Doch, jedoch, noch, yet, however.	Sie sind noch zu jung, they are yet too young. Er bleibet doch (jedoch) mein Freund, he remains yet, (however,) my friend.
Denn, dann, for, because.	Sie wissen es denn (dann) ich sagte es ihnen, they know it, for, or because I told (it to) them.
Entweder, either; oder, or.	Entweder sie sind falsche Freunde, oder offenbare Feinde, either they are false friends, or open enemies.
Weder, neither, noch, nor.	Sie sind weder hungrig noch durstig, they are neither hungry nor thirsty.
Zwar, however, indeed.	Sie haben es zwar, aber nicht mit Recht, they have it indeed, but not with justice.

2nd. The following conjunctions, when taken relatively; throw the verb to the end of the sentence; but their use will be best understood by examples, as they are not always used as relatives.

*Als, as, when, than, like, but.	Da, when.
Bevor, before.	Da, indem, as, since, whilst.
Bis, till.	Daß, that.

* Als has sometimes a comparative signification.

Auf daß, damit, in order that.	Wenn, wann, if.
Demnach, sintemal, whereas.	Wo, so, if.
Ehe, before.	Wosern, so fern, dafern, if.
Im fall, in case.	Wo nicht, if not.
In so fern, in so much, if.	Ungeachtet, notwithstanding.
Nachdem, after, after that.	Wiewohl,
Weil, dieweil, because, though	Obwohl,
Wenn, wann, when, whenever	Obgleich,
Ob, whether.	Obschon,
Als ob, as if.	Wenngleich,

} though,
although.

3. The following conjunctions throw the verb to the end of the sentence, if used relatively; but otherwise the verb is put before the nominative.

Darum, therefore.	Warum, wherefore, why.
Daher, hence.	Woher, whence.
Deshalben, } therefore,	Weshalben, } wherefore,
Deswegen, } for which	Weswegen, } for which
Um deswillen, } reason.	Um deswillen, } reason.

4th. The following conjunctions require others after them, the latter of which throw the nominative behind the verbs.

1st.	2nd.
Entweder, either.	requires oder, or.
Weder, neither.	 noch, nor.
Weil, because.	 so.
Da, when.	 so.
Je, the.	 desto, the.
Je, the.	 je, the.
So wohl, as well. }	 als, as.
So bald, as soon. }	

Zwar, indeed.	Aber, allein, but.
	Doch, dennoch, or jedoch how- ever, yet.
	Gleichwohl, although, yet, for all that, notwithstanding.
	Hingegen, on the contrary.
	Nichts desto weniger, never- theless.

1st.	2nd.
Wenn, if.	requires * so.
Wie, gleichwie, as.	 so.
Also, as.	 so.
So, so.	 so.
Nicht, not.	 sondern, but.
Nicht allein, } not only.	 { sondern, but.
Nicht nur, }	 { sondern auch, but also.
Obgleich, }	 So, so.
Obschon, }	 So doch, dennoch,
Obwohl, }	 however, neverthe-
Wenn schon, }	 less.
Wenn auch, }	 So, nichts desto we-
Wiewohl, }	 niger, nevertheless.

As the application of conjunctions may be better learned by examples than by rules; the following sentences are subjoined to exemplify their use.

Als wir zu Abend gegessen hatten, so gingen wir spazieren.

When we had supped we took a walk, or having supped &c.

So roth als eine Rose.

As red as a rose.

Er ist reicher als ich.

He is richer than I.

Er handelt als ein rechtschaffener Mann.

He acts like an honest man.

Als er den Aufruhr in der Stadt bemerkte.

When he perceived the tumult in the city.

Er ist zwar mein Feind nicht, aber doch nicht mein Freund.

He is not my enemy indeed, but yet he is not my friend.

Als ich in London ankam.

When I arrived in London.

* Observe, the word so is sometimes a conjunction, sometimes an adverb, and sometimes it is used as a relative pronoun. Example 1st. As a conjunction, sowohl als, as well as, so bald als, as soon as. 2nd. As an adverb, Es ist so, wie ich gesagt habe, it is so, as I said; Wie so, how so. 3rd. As a relative pronoun, Das Buch, so (welches) ich gekauft habe, the book which I have bought.

Bis die Sonne die erstarrten Felder auflösen wird.

Till the sun shall loosen the congealed fields.

Da der König in London ankam.

When the king arrived in London.

Vom Morgen bis zum Abend.

From morning till evening.

Da ich den Mann, welcher so edel gedacht, ehre und liebe, or,

Da ich den Mann ehre und liebe, welcher so edel gedacht.

Since I honor and love the man, who thought so nobly.

Wenn er das Buch lesen will.

If he will read that book.

Das ist der Grund, daher weiß ich es.

That is the ground, thence, or for that reason, I know it.

Woher wissen sie es?

Whence do they know it?

Er wußte es nicht, darum habe ich es ihm gesagt.

He did not know it, therefore I have told (*it*) him.

Bevor ich den Wald erreicht hatte.

Before I had reached the wood.

Als ich diesen Morgen an dem Fenster stand, da sah ich die Soldaten in die Stadt kommen.

When, or as I stood at the window this morning, or standing at the window this morning, I saw the soldiers coming into town.

Indem, or weil ich an dem Fenster stand, sah ich &c.

Whilst I was standing at the window, I saw, &c.

Wie ich an dem Fenster stand, &c.

As I happened to stand, or as I stood at the window, &c.

Da ich an dem Fenster stand, &c.

When, or since I stood at the window, &c.

Wiewohl er noch sehr übel daran ist, so ist doch noch Hoffnung vorhanden, daß er wieder aufkommen werde, or wird.

Although he is still very ill, yet there is room to hope that he will recover.

Ich vermache dir nicht allein mein Haus, sondern auch Habe und Gut.

I leave to thee not only my house, but also my goods and chattels.

Ich erwartete Ihre Ankunft nicht, und desto größer ist meine Freude.

I did not expect your arrival, and the greater is my joy.

Je ruhiger das Leben ist, desto geschickter ist es zum Nachdenken.

The more quiet life is, the more fit it is for reflection.

Entweder bist du toll, oder du wirst es werden.

Either thou art mad, or thou wilt become so.

Er scheuet weder Gott noch Menschen, weder Tod noch Leben.

He fears neither God nor man, neither death nor life.

Ob ihr gleich gelehrt seyd, so ist gleichwohl noch viel, das ihr nicht wisset.

Although you are learned, yet there is still much that you do not know.

Ob wir gleich reich sind, so können wir doch nicht allen Leuten helfen.

Although we are rich, yet we cannot help every body.

Ob ich wohl gerne helfen wollte, nichts desto weniger ist es mir wegen meiner Armuth unmöglich.

Although I would very willingly help, it is nevertheless impossible, on account of my poverty.

Indem ich davon sprach.

Whilst I was speaking of it.

Ob er gleich mein Better ist, so kommt er doch nicht zu mir.

Although he is my cousin, yet he does not come to (see) me.

Er hat es entweder gethan, oder wird es noch thun.

Either he has done it, or he will do it yet.

Sie hat mir unrecht gethan, dennoch will ich ihr vergeben.

She has done me wrong, yet I will forgive her.

Mein Rath war zu seinem Besten, dennoch befolgte er ihn nicht.

My advice was for his good, yet he did not follow it.

So lange er sich in den Schranken der Bescheidenheit hielt, war ich sein aufrichtigster Freund.

Ob er gleich alt ist, so hat er doch den völligen Gebrauch seiner Geisteskräfte.

Ein Kind muß nicht nur den Vater, sondern auch die Mutter ehren.

So bald als es vier geschlagen hat.

Nachdem wir Alles wohl untersucht hatten.

Ehe die Glocke ausgeschlagen hat.

Je mehr ich trinke, je mehr habe ich Durst.

Whilst he kept himself within the bounds of modesty, I was his most sincere friend.

Although he is old, he still has the perfect use of his mental faculties.

A child must not only honor his father, but also his mother.

As soon as it has struck four.

After having well examined every thing.

Before the clock has done striking.

The more I drink, the more thirsty I am.

CHAP. X.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

“When the mind is overpowered by passion, or violence of feeling, unconnected words and broken sentences are uttered: but every such word or sentence is an interjection, and has its meaning by completing the sentence, with those words which are unexpressed.”*

The following is a list of some of the interjections used in German:

* The above definition of an interjection was copied from Mr. Booth's scientific “*Introduction to an Analytical Dictionary of the English Language.*”

Ach! ah! Ach! ah!
 Leider! alas!
 Oh! oh!
 Weh! Wehe! woe!
 Ei! hui! heigh!
 Wohlan! well then!
 Hilf Gott! God help!
 Hilf Himmel! heaven help!
 Halt! halt! or stop!

Willkommen! welcome!
 Siehe! lo! behold!
 Siehe da! behold here!
 Pfui! fie!
 Lieber! ei lieber! pray!
 Behüte Gott! God forbid!
 Holla! he! holla!
 St! still! hush! hist!
 Halt den Dieb! stop thief!

CHAP. X.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

"When the mind is overpowered by passion, or violence of feeling, unconnected words and broken sentences are uttered; but every such word or sentence is an interjection, and has its meaning by completing the sentence, with those words which are unexpressed."

The following is a list of some of the interjections used in German:

Ein guter Junge, a good boy. Ein guter Junge, the good boy.
 Ein großer Geist, a great mind. Ein großer Geist, the great

• The above definition of an interjection was copied from Mr. Hoole's scientific "Introduction to the study of the many of the English language."

SYNTAX.

SYNTAX OF THE ARTICLES.

CHAP. I.

Rules illustrated by Examples for the Construction of the Articles, with Exercises under each Rule, to be translated into German.

RULE I.

The articles *ein*, and *der*, are generally used in German as *a* and *the* in English, but in German they must agree with the noun in gender, number, and case; as,

Ein Vater, a father.

Der Vater, the father.

Eine Mutter, a mother.

Die Mutter, the mother.

Ein Buch, a book.

Das Buch, the book.

Observe. The above rule applies when there is an adjective joined to the substantive; as,

Ein guter Knabe, a good boy. *Der gute Knabe*, the good boy.

Eine große Stadt, a great city. *Die große Stadt*, the great city.

Ein ganzes Land, a whole country. *Das ganze Land*, the whole country.

So likewise in the following expressions.

Ein halber Bogen, half a sheet. Die beiden L nder, both the countries.

Eine halbe Stunde, half an hour. Das ganze Jahr, all the year.

Ein halbes Jahr, half a year. Der halbe Tag, half the day. &c.

Observe. In compounds the article always agrees with the gender of the last word; as, der Liebesbrief, the love-letter; die Wetterfahne, the weathercock; das Stadthaus, the town house.

Examples for Practice.

Der Bruder der Frau ist auf dem Lande. The brother of the woman is in the country.

Ein gutes Kind verdient unser Lob. A good child deserves our praise.

Hier ist das Pferd des Vaters. Here is the father's horse.

Dies ist die Schrift eines Gelehrten. This is the writing of a scholar.

Der Hund ist das Sinnbild der Treue. A dog is the emblem of fidelity.

Ich kenne die Frau, aber ich kenne nicht den Mann. I know the wife, but I do not know the husband.

Ich habe den Brief dem Diener gegeben. I have given the letter to the servant.

Haben Sie es nicht dem Meister gezeigt? Have you not shown it to the master?

Die Kinder der Reichen sind zuweilen unwissender, als die Kinder der Armen. The children of the rich are sometimes more ignorant than the children of the poor.

Man mu  von den Abwesenden nie  bel reden. We must never speak ill of the absent.

Exercise to be translated into German.

Give me the book. Bring me a knife. Here is a pen. There is an apple. Lend him the pen-knife. Have you a

mother? He has the ink. She has a brother. I see the friends. Write an answer. A game is lost. A true friend is a treasure of inestimable value. The virtue of a Christian. The creator of the world is the God of the Christians. Observe the rules of the school and the eye of the master.

Give me, geben Sie mir.
bring me, bringen Sie mir.
lend him, leihen Sie ihm.
ink, Dinte, *f.*
write, schreiben Sie.
answer, Antwort, *f. acc.*
game, Spiel, *n.*
is lost, ist verloren.
true, treuer.
treasure, Schatz, *m. von, of.*
inestimable, unschätzbaren.

value, Werthe, *m.*
virtue, Tugend, *f.*
christian, Christ, *m. gen.*
creator, Schöpfer, *m.*
world, Welt, *f. gen.*
God, Gott, *m.*
observe, beobachte.
rule, Regel, *f.*
school, Schule, *f. gen.*
eye, Auge, *n. acc.*
master, Lehrer, *m. gen.*

RULE II.

The article *der* is used in German, though not in English, before most nouns in a universal sense, and before all nouns in the oblique cases; as,

Examples.

Das Leben, life.

Das Alter, age.

Das Kind des Bruders,
the brother's child.

Der Tod, death.

Die Menschen, men, or mankind.

Brutus tödtete den Cäsar,
Brutus killed Cæsar.

Also before most adjectives taken substantively, and before the names of seasons; as,

Das Gut, good.

Der Weise, the wise.

Der Frühling, spring.

Ein Gelehrter, a learned man.

Der Gelehrte, the learned.

Der Sommer, summer.

But before the proper names of places the article is mostly omitted, particularly in the nominative; as, London, Petersburg, Europa, England, &c. except,

Die Türkei, Turkey.	Die Schweiz, Switzerland.
Die Lombardie, Lombardy.	Die Elsaß, Elsass.
Die Niederlande, the Netherlands.	Die Levante, the Levant.
Der Haag, the Hague.	Die Pfalz, the Palatinate.

Also the Germans say, *die Stadt London*, the city of London; *das Königreich Frankreich*, the kingdom of France, &c.

The proper names of persons take no article in the nominative, nor when they have a change of termination in the oblique cases; as, *Ciceros Reden*, *Cicero's orations*; *Brutus tödete den Cäsar*, *Brutus killed Cæsar*. But the Germans say *der Plato seines Zeitalters*, *the Plato of his age*, &c.

Examples to the preceding Rules.

Die Vernunft ist das edelste Geschenk der Natur,	Reason is the noblest gift of nature.
Die Vorsicht ist die Mutter der Sicherheit,	Caution is the mother of security.
Lieben Sie die Tugend,	Love virtue.
Hassen Sie das Laster,	Hate vice.
Der Frühling ist die schönste Jahreszeit,	Spring is the finest season.
Was denken Sie von dem Sommer?	What do you think of summer?
Nero war ein großer Tyrann,	Nero was a great tyrant.
Flora war die Göttin der Blumen.	Flora was the goddess of flowers.
Der weise Seneca,	The wise Seneca.
Gott hat alle Dinge gemacht, oder erschaffen,	God has made, or created all things.
Der Gott des Krieges,	The god of war.
Ich mag gern den Geruch der Nelke und der Rose,	I like the odour of the pink and rose.

Practice.

Death itself is not so dreadful.

Health, anger and intemperance, are inconsistent with each other.

Man is rational, Man is mortal.

He has a house in town.

Neptune was the god of the seas.

I have seen the father, mother, son and daughter.

I am going to London.

I come from Holland.

Cicero was an excellent orator.

Alexander was a great conqueror.

The temple of Solomon was magnificent.

Death, Tod, *m.*

itself, selbst.

so, so.

dreadful, fürchterlich.

health, Gesundheit, *f.*

anger, Zorn, *m.*

intemperance, Unmäßigkeit.

are inconsistent with each other, können nicht mit einander bestehen.

man, Mensch, *m.*

rational, vernünftig.

mortal, sterblich.

town, Stadt, *f.*

Neptune, Neptun.

was, war.

god, Gott, *m.*

seas, Meere, *n.*

daughter, Tochter, *f. acc.*

seen, gesehen.

am going, gehe.

to, nach.

come, komme.

from, von.

Cicero, Cicero.

an, ein.

excellent, vortrefflicher.

orator, Redner.

great, großer.

conqueror, Eroberer, *m.*

temple, Tempel, *m.*

Solomon, Salomo.

magnificent, prächtig.

RULE III.

The article is repeated before nouns of different genders; as, der Vater, die Mutter und das Kind, *the father, mother and child*; but nouns of the same gender, or number, require it only before the first; as, der Rock und Hut, *the coat and hat*.

Examples.

Ein Mann und eine Frau
waren hier.

A man and woman were
here.

Der Bruder und die Schwester sind gegangen, The brother and sister are gone.

Das Haus und die Wiese, The house and meadow.

Ich habe den Vater, die Mutter, den Sohn und die Tochter gesehen, I have seen the father, mother, son and daughter.

Ich habe das Buch, die Feder und den Bleistift, auf dem Tische gelassen, I have left the book, pen, and pencil upon the table.

Der Vater und Sohn sind nach Paris gegangen, The father and son are gone to Paris.

Die Mutter und Tochter sind auf dem Lande, The mother and daughter are in the country.

Ein Freund und Feind, A friend and enemy.

Practice.

The man, woman and child are gone out.

The hare and pigeon are good to eat.

The father, mother, son and daughter are in the country.

The sheep, cow and dog are gone.

The leopard and tiger are rapacious animals.

I have left the book and ruler upon the table.

Have you a father and mother?

Give me the pen and penknife.

Man, Mann, *m.*

woman, Frau, *f.*

child, Kind, *n.*

are gone out, sind ausgegangen.

hare, Hase, *m.*

pigeon, Taube, *f.*

are in the country, sind auf dem Lande.

sheep, Schaf, *n.*

cow, Kuh, *f.*

dog, Hund, *m.*

leopard, Leopart, *m.*

tiger, Tieger, *m.*

ruler, Lineal, *n. acc.*

upon the table, auf dem Tische.

left, gelassen.

have you? haben Sie?

pen, Feder, *f.*

penknife, Federmesser, *n.*

RULE IV.

The article is omitted, whenever the substantive expres-

ses the part of a thing, which in English is generally denoted by the word *some*, answering to the French *du, de la, de l', des*; as, *Apportez-moi du vin*, Bringen Sie mir Wein.

Examples.

Bringen Sie mir Brot,	Bring me some bread.
Geben Sie mir Bier,	Give me some beer.
Haben Sie Papier, Dinte, &c?	Have you some paper, ink, &c?

Practice.

Eat bread, and drink water.
 Have you eaten bread, and drank water?
 Bring me some wine and water.
 Have you brought some beer?
 I have bought some silk to-day.
 Give me some paper, ink and pens.

Eat, Essen Sie.	beer, Bier.
bread, Brot.	brought, gebracht.
have you? haben Sie?	I have, ich habe.
drink, trinken Sie.	silk, Seide.
water, Wasser.	to-day, Heute.
wine, Wein.	bought, gekauft.

Recapitulatory Exercises on the Articles, to be translated into English.

FIRST LESSON.

Der *Mensch ist nun einmal sterblich.
 Der Herr vom Hause ist ausgegangen.
 Ich habe den Brief dem Diener gegeben.
 Die Musik ist etwas angenehmes.
 Ich habe das Buch, die Feder, den Bleistift und den
 Zirkel auf dem Tische gelassen.

* As most of the words in these exercises have been given before, it is presumed that the scholar has previously made himself acquainted with them.

Der Geiz ist doch ein häßliches Laster.

Da ist der Hut des jungen Mannes, welcher eben ausgegangen ist.

Die Kinder der Reichen sind zuweilen unwissender, als die Kinder der Armen.

Mein Vater hat ein Haus in der Stadt und einen Garten auf dem Lande.

Die Stadt Paris. Die Insel Korsika. Der Monath Julius. Das Königreich Schweden.

Der Mensch ist für das gesellige Leben, und nicht für die Einsamkeit geboren.

Sie loben die Werke der Barmherzigkeit.

SECOND LESSON.

Rhea war die Gemahlin des Saturnus und die Mutter des Jupiter, Neptun und Pluto.

Diana war die Göttin der Weisheit und der Künste.

Mercur war der Gothe der Götter und der Gott der Beredsamkeit, der Kaufleute und Diebe.

Venus war die Göttin der Liebe.

Gott der Vater aller Menschen.

Gesundheit, Zorn und Unmäßigkeit können nicht neben einander bestehen.

Geben Sie mir ein Glas Wein.

Johann ! holen Sie mir ein Pfund Thee und ein halb Pfund Kaffee.

Das Brot dienet in den meisten Ländern zur Nahrung der Menschen.

Sie essen nie mehr als dreimal des Tages.

Sie gehen zweimal in der Woche in die Kirche.

Sie verstanden nicht das Bauen der Häuser oder Schiffe, das Säen des Kornes, das Hauen der Bäume, das Mähen des Grases, das Graben der Metalle, des Goldes, Silbers, Kupfers, u. s. f.

THIRD LESSON.

Die Grammatik lehrt uns die Kunst richtig zu schreiben und zu reden.

Die Geschichte macht uns die guten und schlechten Handlungen der Menschen bekannt.

Die Naturgeschichte lehrt uns die Producte der Natur kennen.

Die Schäfer nehmen den Schaafen die Wolle.

Die Löwen und Lieger wohnen in großen Wüsteneien.

Der Krieg und die Pest sind die zwei grausamsten Geiseln des Himmels.

Fliehen Sie die Schmeichler und lieben Sie die aufrichtigen Freunde.

Geben Sie den Armen Almosen.

Die Crocodile fressen den Menschen.

Die Hunde fürchten die Crocodile.

Die Schneumone tödten die Crocodile.

Die Zärtlichkeit der Thiere gegen ihre Jungen ist oft größer als die Zärtlichkeit der Mutter gegen ihre Kinder.

Ein guter Vater sorgt für seine Kinder.

Eine gute Mutter erzieht ihre Kinder mit der größten Sorgfalt.

CHAP. II.

Rules for the Construction of Nouns.

RULE I.

When two nouns, denoting different persons, or things, come together, the latter is put in the genitive case.*

* The genitive case is often denoted by *of* in English.

Examples.

Das Haus meines Freun= des,	The house of my friend, or my friend's house.
Die Freude des Lebens,	The joy of life.
Der Vater des Lehrers,	The master's father.
Mars war der Gott des Krieges.	Mars was the god of war.
Die Gunst des Königs,	The favor of the king.
Das Glück des Friedens,	The blessing of peace.

Practice.

The proprietor of the garden.
 The depth of the sea.
 Neptune was the god of the seas.
 Vulcan was the god of fire.
 The goddess of fortune.
 The master of the house.

Proprietor, Eigenthümer, <i>m.</i>	fire, Feuer, <i>n.</i>
garden, Garten, <i>m.</i>	goddess, Göttin, <i>f.</i>
depth, Tiefe, <i>f.</i>	fortune, Glück, <i>n.</i>
sea, Meer, <i>n.</i>	master, Herr, <i>m.</i>
Neptune, Neptun.	house, Haus, <i>n.</i>
Vulcan, Vulkan.	

RULE II.

When two or more nouns express the same person or thing,
 they are put in the same case.

Examples.

König Carl,	King Charles.
Der Kaiser Alexander,	The Emperor Alexander.
Der Kaiser unser Freund und Vater	The emperor our friend and father.
Georg König von England,	George king of England.
Paulus der Apostel.	Paul the Apostle.

Practice.

King George.	John the Evangelist.
The emperor Joseph.	God the Father.
The king our friend and fa- ther.	We love the king, our friend and father.
Nero the tyrant.	

Joseph, Joseph.	John, Johannes.
our, unser, (nom.)	we love, wir lieben.
friend, Freund.	king, König. (acc.)
tyrant, Tyrann.	our, unsern, (acc.)

Observations on the Nouns.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the genitive is put first, but then the subsequent word has no article before it.

Examples.

The king's favor,	Des Königs Gunst.
The father's blessing,	Des Vaters Segen.

Practice.

The father's sister.	The queen's brother.
The king's son.	The man's knife.
The wife's brother.	The child's parents.
The emperor's speech.	The boy's mother.

Father, Vater, m.	man, Mann, m.
king, König, m.	knife, Messer, n.
wife, Frau, f.	child, Kind, n.
emperor, Kaiser, m.	parents, Eltern, pl.
speech, Rede, f.	boy, Knabe, m.
queen, Königin, f.	

Obs. 2. When several nouns come together, the last in English and the first in German are put in the genitive.

Examples.

In king Henry's reign.	Unter des Königs Heinrich Regie- rung.
The prince of Wales' steward.	Des Prinzen von Wallis Hausver- walter.
The king of Denmark's lands or countries.	Des Königs von Dänemark Län- der.

Practice.

The elector of Bavaria's Court.

The emperor of Russia's dominions.

The king of England's Steward.

In queen Elizabeth's reign.

The king of Spain's subjects.

Elector, Churfürst, *m.*
of Bavaria, von Baiern.
court, Hofstaat.
of Russia, von Rußland.
dominion, Herrschaft, *f.*

of England, von England.
steward, Haushofmeister, *m.*
in queen, unter der Königin.
of Spain's subjects, von Spanien
Unterthanen, *m.*

Obs. 3. Sometimes the genitive is expressed in German without any article ; as,

Preußens König,

The king of Prussia.

Johannens und Elisens Bücher,

John and Eliza's books.

Obs. 4. The preposition *to*, in English, is sometimes used instead of *of*, as the sign of the genitive.

Examples.

Ein Freund der Tugend,

A friend to virtue, *or of virtue.*

Er ist ein Vater der Armen,

He is a father to the poor.

Sie ist die Schwester des Königs,

She is sister to the king.

Practice.

He is an enemy to vice.

Socrates was an enemy to vice.

They are slaves to their passions.

He is a secretary to the duke.

He was a friend to the family.

They are enemies to God, and slaves to Satan.

Enemy, Feind, *m.*

family, Familie, *f.*

vice, Laster, *n.*

was, war.

slave, Sklave, *m.*

secretary, Secretair, *m.*

their passions, ihrer Leidenschaft-
ten, *f.*

duke, Herzog, *m.*

satan, Satan, *m.*

Obs. 5. After nouns of number, weight, measure, or parts, and before the names of months, islands, kingdoms, or cities, where *of* is expressed in English, the Germans use the nomina-

tive case; but if the latter noun have an adjective before it, then the last noun is put in the genitive. Vide rule 2, p. 261.
Syntax of adjectives.

Examples.

Zehn Ellen Tuch,	Ten ells of cloth.
Ein Pfund Butter,	A pound of butter.
Ein Glas Bier,	A glass of beer.
Eine Elle Tuch,	An ell of cloth.
Ein Bissen Brot,	A bit of bread.
Der Monat Mai,	The month of May.
Die Insel Malta,	The isle of Malta.
Das Königreich Preußen,	The kingdom of Prussia.
Die Stadt Paris,	The city of Paris.

Practice.

Two casks of wine.	The month of April.
A hundred weight of lead.	The isle of Man.
A couple of pigeons.	The kingdom of France.
A glass of beer.	The city of London.
Give me a drop of water.	A flock of sheep.

Casks, Fässer.	water, Wasser, n.
wine, Wein,	month, Monat, m.
hundred weight, Centner, m.	April, April.
lead, Blei, n.	Man, Man.
couple, Paar, n.	kingdom, Königreich.
glass, Glas, n.	France, Frankreich.
beer, Bier.	flock, Heerde, f.
give me, geben Sie mir.	sheep, Schaf, n.
drop, Tropfen, m.	

But the genitive is expressed when the words that follow the nouns of number, weight, measure, &c. have a pronoun or an adjective joined with them; as,

Zehn Ellen dieses Tuches,	Ten ells of this cloth.
Zwei Fässer jenes Weines,	Two casks of that wine.
Ein Regiment guter Soldaten,	A regiment of good soldiers, &c.

RULE III.

In answer to the questions *wann?* *when?* *wie oft?* *how often?* the days or years are put in the genitive, when another noun is expressed or understood.

Examples.

When did it happen? On Sunday, Monday, &c.
 Wann ist das geschehen? Sonntags, Montags, &c.
 How often did the doctor come? Twice a day.
 Wie oft kam der Doctor? Zweimal des Tages.

Observe. In some of the above examples, and in the following practice *day* or *time* is understood.

Practice.

When does he come? Early on Thursday. In the morning. In the afternoon. In the evening. At night. At midnight. How often does he come? Three times a year. Four times a day.

Does he come? kommt er?	at night, des Nachts.
thursday, Donnerstag, <i>m.</i>	midnight, Mitternacht, <i>f.</i>
in the morning, des Morgens.	year, Jahr, <i>n.</i>
afternoon, Nachmittags, <i>m.</i>	four times, viermal.
evening, Abend, <i>m.</i>	day, Tag, <i>m.</i>

Observe. In speaking of weeks the Germans say, dreimal in der Woche, three times a week, *not* dreimal der Woche. But they say also, dreimal die Woche, or die Woche dreimal.

RULE IV.

The genitive case is frequently supplied by the preposition *von*, which always governs the dative; except the genitive in one or two instances, as in the phrase: *von Alters her*, of old.

1. Before names of countries, and when a particular quality, condition, proportion, or quantity, is assigned to any thing; also when the article is omitted.

Examples.

Der König von Preußen,	The king of Prussia.
Die Gränzen von Frankreich,	The boundaries of France.
Ein Mann von großen Gaben,	A man of great gifts.
Ein Herr von hohem Adel,	A gentleman of high nobility.
Eine Reise von zehn Meilen,	A journey of ten miles.
Ein Schiff von zwei hundert Tonnen,	A ship of two hundred tons.
Der Schein von Redlichkeit,	The appearance of honesty.

Practice.

The northern part of England.	A man of ancient origin.
The emperor of Russia.	A sum of twenty pounds.
A woman of great sense.	A man of eighty years.
Northern part, nördliche Theil, m.	ancient, alter.
emperor, Kaiser, m.	origin, Herkunft, f.
of great sense, von großem Ver- stand.	sum, Summe, f.
	pounds, Pfunden.
	years, Jahren.

2. If no adjective be joined with the substantive, or when the matter is expressed of which things are made, the dative with von is used.

Examples.

Ein Mann von Gaben,	A man of gifts.
Eine Uhr von Gold,	the same as, eine goldene Uhr, a gold watch.

Practice.

A woman of sense.	A gold cup.
A man of talent.	An ivory box.
A silver watch.	A gold ring.

Talent, Talent, *n.*
 watch, Uhr, *f.*
 silver, Silber.
 cup, Becher, *m.*

box, Dose, *f.*
 ivory, Elfenbein, *n.*
 ring, Ring, *m.*

Obs. 1. Von is used before the indefinite article, to denote character; as, ein Ausbund von einem ehrlichen Manne, a pattern of an honest man; ein Muster von einem guten Sohne, a model of a good son, &c.

2. Sometimes it is indifferent, whether von be made use of, or the genitive; as, ein Mann von großen Gaben, (or großer Gaben,) a man of great gifts; eine Frau von großem Verstand, (or großen Verstandes,) a woman of great sense.

RULE V.

In answer to the questions, wann? or wenn? *when?* wie lang? *how long?* wie groß? *how large?* wie weit? *how wide?* wie breit? *how broad?* wie hoch? *how high?* the noun must be put in the accusative, unless another noun is understood. (Vide Rule III.)

Examples.

<i>When</i> will he come?	On the Saturday following.
Wann wird er kommen?	Den folgenden Sonnabend.
<i>How long</i> was he writing?	The whole day.
Wie lang schrieb er?	Den ganzen Tag.

Practice.

When did he come?	The other day. To-day.
When do they set out?	The first of February.
When will he come?	This morning. This evening.
How long has he been here?	A day. A month. A week.
How long has it rained?	The whole day.
How broad and thick is this plank?	A foot broad and an inch thick.

When did he come? wann kam er?	this plank, dieses Brett.
has he been here? ist er hier gewesen?	foot, Fuß, <i>m.</i> inch, Zoll, <i>m.</i>

Observations respecting the Cases.

1. The nominative answers to the question *who?* or *what?* the genitive to the question *whose?* or *of whom?* or *of what?* the dative to the question *to,* or *for whom?* *to,* or *for what?* the accusative to the question *whom?* *what?* or *whither?*

Examples.

Der Schneider machte meines Bruders Sohn einen Rock, the tailor made my brother's son a coat.

Explanation.

Who made the coat?	Nom. the tailor, der Schneider.
What did he do?	he made, er macht.
What did he make?	Acc. a coat, einen Rock.
For whom?	Dat. (for) the son, dem Sohn.
Whose son?	Gen. my brother's, meines Bruders.

Die Hand des Herrn giebt den Menschen gute Gaben, the hand of the Lord gives to man good gifts.

Who or what gives?	Nom. the hand, die Hand.
Whose hand?	Gen. the Lord's, des Herren.
What does it do?	it gives, sie giebt.
What does it give?	Acc. good gifts, gute Gaben.
To whom?	Dat. to men, den Menschen.

2. When *of* signifies *von*, and *to*, *zu*, they govern the dative.
Ex. *of whom?* must be expressed *von wem?* *of what?* *von was?*
to whom? *zu wem?* *to what?* *zu was?*

Of whom do you talk? *von wem reden Sie?*

Of what do you talk? *von was reden Sie?*

To whom do you go? *zu wem gehen Sie?*

To what house do you go? *zu was für einem Haus gehen Sie?*

All prepositions govern their proper cases. Vide the list, and syntax of prepositions.

CHAP. III.

OF ADJECTIVES, *Beiwörter*.

RULE I.

Adjectives must agree with the nouns to which they refer, in gender, number and case, unless they are used adverbially, then they remain unchangeable, or indeclinable; as,

Declinable.

1. A good man.
Ein guter Mann.
2. A good woman.
Eine gute Frau.
3. A good child.
Ein gutes Kind.
4. Good men.
Gute Männer.

Indeclinable.

1. The man is good.
Der Mann ist gut.
2. The woman is good.
Die Frau ist gut.
3. The child is good.
Das Kind ist gut.
4. The men are good.
Die Männer sind gut.

Observe. Adjectives are generally placed before nouns, unless joined to a proper name, as a title of distinction: Ex. Alexander der Große, Alexander the great; Ludwig der vierzehnte, Louis the fourteenth.

Examples.

Ein gutes Wort findet eine gute Stelle, A good word finds a good place.

Ein weiser Mann hat mir den Rath gegeben, daß ich mich niemals einem gottlosen Menschen anvertrauen solle, A wise man has advised me never to trust a wicked man.

Ich sehe in diesem Briefe die Schrift einer schönen Hand, I see in this letter a fine hand writing, (*the writing of a fine hand.*)

Gott ist gnädig und barmherzig, die Menschen aber sind gottlos und ungerecht. God is gracious and merciful, but men are wicked and unjust.

Observe. The adjective, as well as the article, is repeated before nouns of different genders, or numbers; but nouns of the same gender, or number, require it only before the first; as, ein junger Mann und eine junge Frau, a young man and woman; eine gute Mutter und Tochter, a good mother and daughter. Gute Väter, Mütter und Kinder, good fathers, mothers, and children.

Practice.

Frederick the Second was a great man.

Rich people are mortal as well as the poor.

Strong wine is wholesome for a weak stomach.

Obedient children have the love and confidence of good men.

Good men, women, and children.

High mountains are not so fertile as low.

Bring us good wine and water.

I know honest people.

She made herself ridiculous.

The fortune of Alexander the Great.

The courage of Henry the Fourth.

A wise government is a great happiness.

Frederick the Second, Friedrich the confidence, das Zutrauen.
der Zweite. mountain, Berg, m.

was, war. are not so, sind nicht so.

mortal, sterblich. as, als.

as well as, wie. bring us, bringet uns.

wholesome, gesund. I know honest, ich kenne ehrlich.

for, für. she made herself, sie machte sich.

weak, schwach. ridiculous, verächtlich.

stomach, Magen, (acc.) fortune, Glück, n.

obedient, gehorsam. courage, Muth, m.

the love, die Liebe. government, Regierung, f.

RULE II.

When there are two substantives, in the same sentence, with an adjective before the last, the adjective and latter noun are put in the genitive. (*Vide Obs. 5, Rule II. p. 254, of Nouns.*)

Examples.

Ein Tropfen frischen Wassers, A drop of fresh water.

Eine Frau großen Verstandes, A woman of great understanding.

Ein Mann großer Gaben, A man of great gifts.

Bringen Sie mir ein kleines Glas. Bring me a small glass.

Practice.

A draught of *fresh* water.

A glass of *fine* beer.

A drop of *good* water.

A dish of *salt* meat.

A piece of *new* bread.

A yard of *broad* ribbon.

A pair of *new* shoes.

A dish of *roast* meat.

draught, Trunk, m.

new, frisch, (*when applied to bread.*)

fine, fein,

broad, breit.

salt, salzig.

roast, gebraten.

dish, Schale.

RULE III.

Adjectives govern the genitive, when *of*, or *with* (and sometimes *to*) follows the corresponding adjectives in English; but in such instances, they are generally placed adverbially at the end of the sentence.

The following is a List of those Adjectives or Adverbs which are said to govern the Genitive.

Bedürftig, in want (*of*,) needy. Gewahr, informed (*of*,) a-

Beflissen, studious (*of*,) ware (*of*,)

Benöthigt, in need (*of*,) Gewiß, certain (*of*,)

Bewußt, conscious (*of*,) Gewohnt, accustomed (*to*,)

Eingedenk, mindful (*of*,) Gewachsen, able (*to*,)

Fähig, capable (*of*,) Gewärtig, ready (*to*,)

Froh, glad (*of*,) satisfied Kundig, skilled, or experi-
(*with*,) enced in.

Loß, free from, slack, rid (<i>of.</i>)	Unfähig, incapable (<i>of.</i>)
Mächtig, in possession (<i>of.</i>)	Unwürdig, unworthy (<i>of.</i>)
Müde, tired (<i>of.</i>)	Verdächtig, suspicious (<i>of.</i>)
Quitt, clear (<i>of.</i>) rid (<i>of.</i>)	Verlustig, lost (<i>to.</i>)
Satt, tired (<i>of.</i>) satisfied (<i>with.</i>)	Voll, full (<i>of.</i>) (<i>also with</i> <i>von.</i>)
Schuldig, guilty (<i>of.</i>)	Viel, much (<i>of.</i>)
Theilhaftig, partaking (<i>of.</i>)	Werth, worth, deserving (<i>of.</i>)
Ueberdrüssig, wearied (<i>with.</i>) weary (<i>of.</i>)	Würdig, worthy (<i>of.</i>)

Observe. Some of these words are used only with *seyn*. (*Vide some of the following examples*)

Examples.

Er ist der Hülfe bedürftig,	He is in want of help.
Sich seiner Unschuld bewußt seyn,	To be conscious of one's own innocence.
Er ist meiner Freundschaft würdig,	He is worthy of my friendship.
Sie sind Männer der Freundschaft würdig,	They are men worthy of friendship.
Sie sind der väterlichen Lehren eingedenk,	They are mindful of the fa- ther's warning.
Sie ist des Lebens satt und überdrüssig,	She is satiated with, and weary of life.
Er hat ein Haus voll Goldes und Silbers,	He has a house full of gold and silver.
Hat er viel Geldes und Gu- tes?	Has he much money and pro- perty?

Practice.

You are unworthy of reward.

I am weary of books.

He is in want of sleep.

They were suspicious of robbery or theft.

He is guilty of a great crime.

They are mindful of the thing.
She is unworthy of his friendship.

Reward, Belohnung.
robbery, Diebstahl, m.

sleep, Schlaf, m.
they are, sie sind.

Observe. Voll, full, is sometimes used without a sign of the case; as, ein Glas voll Wein, a glass full of wine; also, voll, is often used with von; as, voll von Menschen, full of men.

RULE IV.

Most * adjectives which have *to* or *for* after them in English, *expressed* or *understood*, require the dative in German.

Examples.

Das ist dem Lande nützlich und vortheilhaft,	That is <i>useful</i> and <i>advan- tageous</i> to the country.
Die Sache ist mir deutlich,	The thing is <i>clear</i> to me.
Ich bin meiner Mutter ge- horsam,	I am <i>obedient</i> to my mother.
Er ist seinem Vater ähnlich,	He is <i>like</i> or <i>resembles</i> (to) his father.
Das ist Land und Leuten er- sprießlich,	That is <i>profitable</i> , or <i>advanta- geous</i> to the country and people.
Es ist ihm etwas leichtes,	It is <i>easy</i> for him.
Wein ist vielen schädlich,	Wine is <i>pernicious</i> to many.
Mir ist bange,	I am <i>afraid</i> .

Practice.

The prince is *kind* to him.
That is *injurious* to the people.
That is *hurtful* and *disadvantageous* to me.
The son is *like* (to) the father.

* When the German adjectives are placed at the end of the sentence they are indeclinable, being used adverbially.

The labor is *easy* for a man, but *difficult* for a child.

This burthen is *insupportable* to me.

Prince, Fürst, *m.*

kind, gemogen.

injurious, schädlich.

people, Volk, *n.*

hurtful, schädlich.

disadvantageous, nachtheilig.

son, Sohn, *m.*

labor, Arbeit, *f.*

easy, leicht.

but, aber.

difficult, schwer.

burthen, Last, *f.*

insupportable, unerträglich.

RULE V.

Those adjectives which denote measure, weight, age or value, require the accusative when the measures &c. are determined by a numerical word.

To these belong:

Dick, thick.

Hoch, high.

Weit, far, wide.

Breit, broad.

Lang, long.

Tief, deep.

Alt, old.

Reich, rich.

Groß, great.

Schwer, heavy, weighty.

Werth, worth.

Schuldig, indebted, owing.

Examples.

Fünf Fuß dick,

Five feet thick, or five feet in thickness.

Das Haus ist sechzig Fuß breit,

That house is sixty feet broad, or wide.

Sie ist viel Geld schuldig,

She owes a great deal of money.

Zwanzig Thaler werth,

Twenty dollars worth.

London ist zwölf Meilen von Kingston,

London is twelve miles from Kingston.

Er ist dreißig Jahr alt,

He is thirty years old.

Ich bin zehn Jahre da gewesen,

I have been there ten years.

Practice.

The tower is a hundred feet high.

That roof is fifty feet long.

He owes a great deal of money.

It is ten feet long, three feet wide, and two feet thick.

It is worth three dollars. I am not fifty years old.

The house is worth twenty thousand dollars.

Tower, Thurm, *m.*
roof, Dach, *n.*

great deal, sehr viel.
dollar, Thaler, *m.*

Observe. When no numerical word is used with the above adjectives, they govern the dative of the person. Ex. Das ist mir zu hoch, zu lang, zu tief, zu schwer, that is too high, too long, too deep, too heavy for me. Er ist mir viel werth, he is of great value to me.

Observations on the Adjectives.

1. Adjectives are frequently used as substantives.

Examples.

Ein Weiser ist besser als ein Starker,	A wise man is better than a strong man.
Die Reichen und Armen.	The rich and poor.

2. Als or denn, *than*, follows comparatives.

Examples.

Er ist viel größer als ihr Bruder,	He is much taller <i>than</i> your
Er ist stärker als, or denn Her-	brother.
kules,	He is stronger <i>than</i> Hercules.
Er ist reicher als, or denn Crösus,	He is richer <i>than</i> Cræsus.

3. After the superlative, when the English use *of*, or *among*, the Germans use *von*, or *unter*, with the dative, but the genitive may be used if *von*, or *unter* be omitted.

Examples.

Er ist der Beste von, or unter den Brüdern,	} He is the best <i>of</i> the brothers.
Er ist der Beste der Brüder,	
Sie ist die Schönste unter ihnen,	She is the best <i>of</i> , or <i>among</i> them.

4. Before *best* and *least*, &c. the superlative is sometimes expressed by *am, with the dative.

Examples.

Ich liebe ihn am besten,	I like him <i>the</i> best.
Ich achte dieses am wenigsten,	I value this <i>the</i> least.
Ich liebe sie am meisten,	I like her <i>the</i> most.

5. Comparisons are sometimes made by *je, the*, followed by *je*, or *desto, the*.

Examples.

Je mehr, je besser,	<i>The</i> more, <i>the</i> better.
Je älter er ist, je (or desto) weiser er wird,	<i>The</i> older he is, <i>the</i> wiser he grows.

A comparison is also made by *so* (Englished by *as* and *so*) followed by *als*; *as*,

Er ist so groß als Sie,	He is <i>as</i> tall <i>as</i> you.
Er ist nicht so groß als Sie,	He is not <i>so</i> tall <i>as</i> you.

6. Fractional or broken numbers are always placed before whole numbers.

Examples.

Anderthalb Pfund,	One pound and a half.
Anderthalb Thaler,	A dollar and a half.
Drittehalb Gulden,	Two florins and a half.
Es ist dreiviertel auf zwei,	It is <i>three quarters</i> past one.

Practice on the preceding Divisions.

1. The lame man is gone out.
The weak man is subject to the strong.
Do not disturb the sick man.
2. Italy is more pleasant than Germany.
Denmark is more fruitful than Sweden.
Are you not more happy than we?
3. He is the best of his brothers.
She is the finest woman *of* the three.

* am is used for an dem.

4. Do you like him best? We shall receive the most.
You value them the least.
5. The sooner the better. The more haste the worse speed.
He is *as* serious *as* Cato. My book is not so large *as* that.
6. It is half past three. It is half a year.
Three ells and a half. Six ounces and a half.

Lame, lahm.

gone out, ausgegangen.

subject, unterwirft.

do not disturb, stören Sie nicht.

sick, krank, *acc.*

Italy, Italien.

more pleasant, angenehmer.

Germany, Deutschland.

Denmark, Dänemark.

Sweden, Schweden.

are you not? sind Sie nicht?

least, am wenigsten.

sooner, eher.

we hasten, man eilet.

the worse speed, desto weniger

kommt man weiter.

serious, ernsthaft.

large, groß.

FIRST LESSON.

Es ist eine große Sünde, wenn man die Armen drückt.

Friederich der Zweite war ein großer Mann.

Der Reiche ist nicht glücklich, wenn er nicht die Tugend liebt.

Der Vater ist klüger als der Sohn.

Ihr Bruder hat ein großes Vermögen.

Die Sonne leuchtet heller als der Mond.

Der Weise ist glücklicher als der Thor.

Die Londoner Kaufleute sind sehr reich.

Die deutsche Sprache ist schwerer, als die französische Sprache.

Heinrich der Vierte war großmüthiger als Philipp der Zweite.

Das Wasser ist gesunder als der Wein.

Deutschland ist größer als Dänemark.

Die Weintrauben sind süßer als die Johannisbeeren.

Kleine Fürsten sind glücklicher als große Könige.

Die Städte sind besser gebaut, als die Dörfer.

Das Kind ist nicht so groß, als die Mutter.

Der Vater hat mehr Sorge, als die Kinder denken.

Der Sommer ist weniger angenehm, als der Frühling.

In Schweden ist es weniger kalt, als in Grönland.

Der Mensch hat immer mehr Fehler, als man glaubt.

Socrates war weniger stolz, als die Sophisten.

Plato hätte besser gethan, wenn er nicht an den Hof des Dionysius gegangen wäre.

Alles wahrhaft Gute und Lobenswürdige ist der Gegenstand meiner Wünsche.

SECOND LESSON.

Der mächtigste Mensch kann die Ordnung der Natur nicht stören.

Die meisten Reichen sehen mit Verachtung auf die Armen herab.

Nero war der ruchloseste unter allen römischen Kaisern.

Demosthenes war der beredteste Grieche, wie Cicero der beredteste Römer.

Jeder Redner ist immer am größten, wenn er sich an die Leidenschaften wendet.

Titus war der beste römische Kaiser.

Homer war der größte Dichter der Griechen.

Dionysius, in Sicilien, war der grausamste Tyrann, und vielleicht einer der unglücklichsten Menschen.

Alexander der Große, und Sesostris, König von Egypten, sind die größten Eroberer im Alterthum gewesen.

Der Diamant ist der härteste und durchsichtigste Edelstein.

Die gelehrtesten Männer waren mehrentheils die größten und geschicktesten Mathematiker, und daher entdeckten sie die wichtigsten Erfindungen.

Die tiefste Ehrfurcht anderer verdient immer der Weiseste und Tugendhafteste.

Derjenige Mann ist am weisesten, welcher ein ruhiges Leben führt.

Diejenige Frau ist am flügsten, welche ihren Haushalt gut versorgt.

Dasjenige Kind ist am liebenswürdigsten, welches folgsam ist.

Diejenigen Leute sind am vernünftigsten, welche Vorurtheilen am wenigsten unterworfen sind.

CHAP. IV.

Rules for the Construction of the Pronouns.

As the personal pronouns are so frequently connected with verbs, it may not be improper to defer speaking of them until we treat of the verbs.

§ I. *Possessive Pronouns.*

RULE I.

The conjunctive possessive pronouns must agree with the nouns to which they belong in gender, number and case.

Examples.

*Mein Bruder, meine Schwester und meine Kinder, My brother, my sister, and my children.

*Meine Brüder, Schwestern und Kinder, My brothers, sisters and children.

Mein Vater ist verreiset, und meine Mutter ist nicht zu Hause, My father is gone a journey, and my mother is not at home.

*Meine Mutter, Tochter und Schwester, My mother, daughter and sister.

* The pronouns as well as the articles and adjectives are repeated before nouns of different genders or numbers; but before nouns of the same gender or number they are not to be repeated; also they are not to be repeated if one noun be masculine and the other neuter; as, Alles ist verkauft, sogar mein Haus und Hof, all is sold, even my house and yard. As a general remark the pronouns, adjectives and articles need never be repeated where one will suffice.

Meines Bruders einzige Tochter, und meiner Schwester liebster Sohn, sind vor etlichen Jahren gestorben,

My brother's only daughter, and my sister's dearest son have been dead some years.

Der Garten meines Vaters, und derjenige meines Bruders,

My father's garden and that of my brother.

Von deinem Bruder, von deiner Schwester und von deinen Kindern will ich gar nichts sagen,

I will say nothing at all of thy brother, sister and children.

Deines Vetter's Pferd hat funfzig Thaler gekostet,

Thy cousin's horse has cost fifty dollars.

Er hat seinen Vater, seine Mutter und sein Kind gesehen,

He has seen his father, mother and child.

Mein Geschmack ist nicht der deinige,

My taste is not *thine*.

Deine Uhr ist nicht die meinige,

Thy watch is not *mine*.

Sein Buch ist nicht das ihrige,

His book is not *hers*.

Ihr Freund und der Ihrige sind ausgegangen.

Her friend and *yours* are gone out.

Ihre Freundin und die Ihrige,

Her female friend and *yours*.

Mein Haus liegt nahe bei dem Ihrigen,

My house lies near *yours*.

Practice.

My father, mother, and child.

My brother and sister are in the house; but my cousin and yours are in the garden.

Her † cousin (*f.*) and yours are at their country house.

My vines, meadows and fields are in good condition.

Your sister dances better than mine, but mine speaks German better than yours.

I have not yet received my books, writings, or other things.

He gave it to my brother's wife.

My books are much dearer than yours, but yours are a great deal better than mine.

My gardens are very large, but they are not so well cultivated as yours, or theirs.

Your brother's wife's sister is gone a journey.

Are at home, sind zu Haus.

cousin, Better, *m.* † Cousine, *f.*

country house, Landhaus, *n.*

vine, Weinberg, *m.*

meadow, Wiese, *f.*

field, Feld, *n.*

are in good condition, sind

wohl bestellt.

dances, tanzt.

but, allein.

speaks German, spricht Deutsch.

writings, Schriften.

other things, andere Sachen.

I have not yet received, ich habe

noch nicht empfangen.

he gave it to, er gab es zu.

much, viel.

dear, theuer.

a great deal better, weit besser.

large, groß.

so well cultivated, so gut ange-

bauet.

Observe. The following and similar expressions are turned in German by the dative. These hats are yours, and these coats are theirs, diese Hüte gehören Ihnen, und diese Röcke gehören ihnen. This mode of expression corresponds to the English, these hats belong to you, and these coats belong to them. Wem gehört die Uhr? to whom does the watch belong? Sie gehört mir (not sie gehört mein,) it belongs to me, or it is mine. So, sie gehört dir (nicht dein,) sie gehört ihm (nicht sein,) &c.

The possessive pronouns are elegantly changed into the dative of personal pronouns with the preposition von; as, er ist ein Freund von mir, he is a friend of mine, (*of me*); es ist ein Brief von ihm, it is a letter of his; instead of which we may say: er ist mein Freund, he is my friend, or es ist einer von meinen Freunden, it is one of my friends; es ist sein Brief, it is his letter; or es ist einer von seinen Briefen, it is one of his letters.

RULE II.

When a conjunctive pronoun absolute follows any tense of seyn, it is indeclinable, because it is then used adverbially,

except when a noun is understood, or when we wish to distinguish the possessor from other persons, then the declinable form must be used, in order to give greater emphasis, which generally occurs in the reply to a question, by way of opposition, or to oppose an affirmation.

Examples.

Indeclinable

Diese Äpfel sind mein,	These apples are mine.
Der Garten ist mein oder dein,	The garden is mine or thine.
Das Pferd ist sein oder ihr,	The horse is his, or hers.
Es ist euer, (Ihr.)	It is yours.
Es ist mein, dein, sein, ihr,	It is mine, thine, his, hers.
Es ist unser, Ihr,	It is ours, yours.
Das ist mein, nicht dein Freund,	That is mine, not thy friend.

Declinable.

Wessen Hut ist das? Whose hat is that?	Es ist meiner (oder es ist *der meine, oder der meinige,) it is mine.
Wessen Feder ist das? Whose pen is that?	Es, or sie ist seine (oder die seine, oder die seinige,) it is his.
Wessen Kind ist das? Whose child is that?	Es ist deines, (oder das deine, oder das deinige,) it is thine.
Wessen ist dieses Buch? Whose book is this?	Es ist unseres, Ihres, ihres, it is ours, yours, theirs.
Ist dieß meines oder Ihres? Is this mine, or yours?	Nein, es ist deines oder ihres, no it is thine, or theirs.
Dieses ist nicht dein Hut sondern † meiner,	This is not thy hat, but mine.

* The possessive pronouns may be used absolutely with the definite article.

† When the noun is omitted its place is supplied by the endings er, e, or es, depending upon the gender of the noun understood.

Dieses ist nicht deine Mutter, sie ist meine,	This is not thy mother, she is mine.
Dieses ist nicht dein Kind, es ist meines,	This is not thy child, it is mine.
Das ist nicht dein Freund, es ist meiner,	That is not thy friend, it is mine.
Dieses ist einer meiner Freunde,	This is one of my friends.
Diese Messer sind mein,	Nein, sie sind meine, deine, seine, ihre, &c.
These knives are mine.	No, they are <i>mine, thine, his, hers, &c.</i>
Diese Glocke und Uhr sind dein, oder Ihr,	Nein, sie sind seine (oder die seinigen,
This bell and watch are thine, or yours.	No, they are his.

Practice.

Indeclinable.

That book is yours. This pen is his.
 These gardens are theirs. These hats are mine.
 That gown is hers. The knives and forks are ours.
 Those stockings and shoes are theirs.
 Whose coat is that? *It is his. That is thine.

Declinable.

Whose coat is that? *It is his. No, it is mine.
 Whose dog is that? It is ours. No, it is not, it is his.
 These books are mine. No, they are mine, or his.
 This is not your house, but mine, or it is mine.
 Are these mine or his? They are neither yours nor his, but mine.
 That pencil and knife are mine; No, they are hers.
 That is not thy mother, it is mine.

* In the sentence, *it is his*, *sein*, or *seines*, *his*, is either declinable, or indeclinable, it is indeclinable when used adverbially, or when we simply say, *es ist sein*, but if a particular stress is to be laid on the pronoun, it is declinable, and we must then say, *es ist seines*. The same observation will apply in all similar cases.

RULE III.

Instead of the possessive pronouns, the article, with the personal pronoun in the dative, or accusative, is often used, this frequently occurs where the noun, or pronoun has been given before.

Examples.

*Er gab es mir in die Hand, He gave it me into my hand.
Ich verbrannte mir den Finger, I burnt my finger.
ger,

Sie wäscht mir das Gesicht, She washes my face.

Practice.

The tears flow from his eyes. It is my turn. I shall wash my hands and face.

It glimmers before my eyes.

He affronted him to his face.

Flow from, fließen aus.

it is my turn, die Reihe ist an mir.

I shall, ich werde.

hand, (dat.) Hand, f.

face, (dat.) Gesicht, n.

wash, waschen.

it glimmers, es glimmert.

before, vor.

eye, Auge, (dat.)

to affront, stoßen.

to his face, vor den Kopf.

§ II. *Demonstrative Pronouns.*

RULE I.

Dieser, is generally used for *this*, but is sometimes Englished by *that*, to distinguish one thing from another. It must agree with the noun in gender, number, and case, and is repeated as other pronouns.

* It is also good German to say, er gab es in meine Hand, he gave it into my hand.

Examples.

Dieser Mann ist es von welchem ich rede,	This is the man of whom I speak.
Diese Frau sagte mir,	This woman told me.
Wem gehört dieser Garten und dieses Haus?	To whom does <i>this</i> garden and <i>that</i> house belong?
Dieser Mann und dieses Weib sind hier,	<i>This</i> man and <i>that</i> woman are here.
Dieses, oder dieß ist das Buch,	This is the book.

Practice.

This boy and those girls, are the children of that woman.

This house is Mr. Martin's.

Give these apples and pears to that boy.

The son of this man is the husband of that woman.

Boy, Knabe, *m.*

girl, Mädchen, *n.*

woman, Weib, *n.*

is Mr. Martin's, gehört Herrn Martin.

pear, Birne, *f.*

husband, Ehemann, *m.*

Observe. When *der, die, das, this, that, these, those, he, they*, are employed as demonstrative pronouns, to point out an object more particularly, they must be pronounced with greater emphasis, and are often followed by *da, hier, dort*. *Der Mensch ist weise welcher tugendhaft lebt*, that man is wise who lives virtuously; *der Mann hier*, this man (*here*); *die Frau da*, that woman (*there*); *das Kind dort*, that child (*there*); *die Person die du liebst*, that person *whom* you love; *hier sind die Männer*, here are those men; *der welcher*, he who. When *der* is joined with *eben*, it is Englished by *the same*, and is equivalent to *derselbe*; as, *eben der Junge*, the same boy; *eben die Frau*, the same woman; *eben das Mädchen*, the same girl.

 RULE II.

When two things are compared *dieser, this*, is put for the first, and *jener, that*, for the second, answering to *ce-ci*, or

celui-ci and *celui-là*, in French ; but if the subjects to which they relate, precede them, then *jener*, *that*, relates to the first mentioned, and *dieser*, *this*, to the last mentioned.

Examples.

*Dieser Mann ist weit
großmüthiger als jener,
Cet homme ci est bien
plus généreux que celui-
là. } This man is far more generous
than that.

Diese und jene taugen
nichts, *ceux-ci et ceux-là*
ne valent rien. } These and those are good for
nothing, or are worth no-
thing.

Diese Äpfel sind gut, aber
jene sind schlecht. } These apples are good, but
those are bad.

Der Leib stirbt, die Seele ist
unsterblich ; und doch ver=
wenden wir alle Sorg=
falt auf jenen und ver=
nachlässigen diese. } The body perishes, the soul is
immortal ; and nevertheless
we bestow all care on that,
and neglect this.

Ich rede nicht von diesem,
sondern von jenem. } I do not speak of *this*, but of
that.

Practice.

This house and that. These people and those.

This man is much more prudent than that.

This girl is more modest than that.

This horse is much better than that.

Follow virtue and shun vice ; that is your friend, this your
enemy.

You must do this, but not leave that.

This is much better than that.

I speak of this and that history.

People, Leute.

prudent, klug.

modest, sittsam.

horse, Pferd, n.

to follow, folgen.

shun, meiden.

to leave, lassen.

history, Geschichte, f.

* *Dieser* and *jener*, must agree with their respective nouns, which are sometimes expressed and sometimes understood.

RULE III.

The neuters of *dieser*, *jener*, and *der*, viz. **dieses*, or *dieß*, or *dieß*; *jenes* and *daß*, are often used absolutely, i. e. without any noun, for any gender, or number; answering to the French *ceci* and *cela*.

Examples.

Sind dieß oder daß die Männer? Are *these*, or *those* the men?

Dieses, or dieß, (not dieser) ist der Mann. This is the man.

Daß (not der) ist der Herr des Hauses. That is the master of the house.

Daß (not die) ist die Frau des Hauses. That is the mistress of the house.

Daß (not die) sind meine Kinder. Those are my children.

Dies ist gut aber daß ist übel. This is good, but *that* is bad.

Dies ist die Stadt von welcher ich kam. This is the city from which I came.

Dies sind die guten Männer. These are the good men.

Practice.

Are these, or those the women?

This is the house from which I came.

Do you believe this, or that?

This is the man to whom you spoke yesterday.

That gives me much pleasure.

These are the clothes and books.

That is the woman to whom you spoke.

Do you believe? glauben Sie? cloth, Kleid, n.

gives me, giebt mir. to whom you spoke yesterday,

pleasure, Vergnügen mit welchem Sie gestern redeten.

* *Solches*, *welches* and *es*, are also used absolutely. Ex. *Solches* war der Zustand, such was the situation. *Welches* sind meine Briefe? which are my letters? *Es* sind Fische, they are fishes.

§. III. *Relative Pronouns.*

RULE I.

Der, die, daß, *who* and welcher, welche, welches, *who*, *which*, *that*, are used the one for the other, except in the genitive, where dessen, or deren answers to *whose* (*sometimes derer, whose, is used in the plural.*) They must agree with the nouns to which they relate in gender and number. But their cases are governed by verbs, nouns, or prepositions, when they occur in the same member of a sentence. The indeclinable particle so is sometimes used relatively for the nominative in both numbers, instead of der, or welcher; but so is not used in the oblique cases.

Examples.

- | | |
|---|--|
| *Der Mann, welcher, or (der, so) hier steht. | The man <i>who</i> , or <i>that</i> stands here. |
| Die Frau, welche or (die, so) es mir gegeben hat. | The woman <i>who</i> , or <i>that</i> has given it me. |
| Das Pferd, welches, or (daß, so) den Hafer frist, | The horse <i>which</i> , or <i>that</i> eats the oats. |
| Der Mann, der, oder daß Ding, daß bewegt. | The man, or thing <i>that</i> moves. |
| Die Kinder, welche, or (die) unten spielen. | The children <i>who</i> play underneath. |
| Hier ist der Mann, so mir daß zeigt. | Here is the man <i>who</i> shews me that. |
| Da ist der Mann, welchen (or den) ich meine. | There is the man <i>whom</i> I mean. |
| Der Weinberg von welchem wir reden, ist hier ganz nahe. | The vineyard of which we speak, is just by. |
| Dieses ist der Mann mit welchem, (or mit dem) ich rede. | This is the man with <i>whom</i> I speak. |

* Welcher is preferable to der, in the grave style, and when used immediately after any of the personal pronouns, or to avoid a repetition of sound; so is sometimes used to avoid the repetition of welcher, or der. Der is more used than welcher in conversation.

Ich weiß nicht welchen von I do not know *which* of the
den Personen Sie meinen. persons you mean.

Das ist der Fehler, welchem That is the defect *to which* he
er am meisten ergeben ist. is most subject.

Die Ehre, deren er so wür- The honor of which he is so
dig ist. deserving.

Das ist ein Mann, dessen That is a man *whose* virtue is
Tugend mir bekannt ist. known to me.

Die Männer, derer Verdien- Those men whose merits are
ste so groß sind. so great.

Kann man auch diejenigen Can we love those *whose*
lieben, deren Laster die crimes are abhorred by
ganze Welt verabscheuet? every body?

Practice.

My friend *who* wrote this letter to me.

The box *which* is there.

The boy who spoke to me.

That is not the woman *whom* you mean.

The letter *which* I sent you.

That is an evil *to which* he is often subject.

Love is a passion *which* or *that* makes many men very unhappy.

The death *which* they have merited.

* *Wer*, *whoever*, *he*, *that*, *he who*, or *she who*, is used only in the singular, and is both a relative and demonstrative pronoun, as a relative it always begins a sentence. Ex. *Wer immer lächeln kann, der ist gewiß ein Schalk*, whoever can always smile (*better*, has always a smile at command), is certainly a wag. *Sie wissen noch nicht wer ich bin*, you do not yet know who I am. *Wer mich liebt ist mein Freund*, *he who*, or *he that* loves me, is my friend. *Ich weiß nicht wer Sie sind*, I do not know *who* you are. *Was*, *what*, *that*, is the neuter of *wer*, and is generally used for things; as, *Was ich davon weiß, will ich Ihnen sagen*, *what* I know of it, I will tell you. *Dieß ist alles was ich habe*, this is all *that* I have. *Was* can never refer to an antecedent noun, therefore when the subject is expressed, *welcher* or *der* is required; as, *Das Haus, welches, or das ich besitze*, the house *which* I possess, *not* *Das Haus was ich besitze*.

The word *selbst*, may be joined to a relative, Ex. *Ein König der selbst regieret*, a king who governs himself. *Sie ist eine Mutter die selbst ihre Kinder erzieht*, she is a mother who brings up her children herself.

Wer, stands for *derjenige*, *welcher*, and *was* for *dasjenige*, *welches*.

Here is the money *which* I owe you, and the books *that* you lent me.

The gardener *who* has killed the dog.

Ferdinand *whose* courage is known.

It is the man *whom* we saw yesterday.

Box, Kade, *f.*

is there, dort ist.

you mean, Ihr meint.

letter, Brief, *m.*

I sent you, ich Ihnen schickte.

evil, übel.

love, die Liebe.

passion, Leidenschaft.

very unhappy, sehr unglücklich.

makes, macht.

they have merited, sie haben verdient.

owe, schuldig bin.

have lent, geliehen haben.

gardener, Gärtner.

has killed, getödtet hat.

courage, Muth, *m.*

is known, bekannt ist.

RULE II.

The relative is sometimes understood in English, but must be expressed in German.

Examples.

Der Weg, den ich gehe, The way (*which*) I go.

Die Dinge, welche (or die) ich thue, The things (*which*) I do.

Der Mann, welchen (or den) ich sah, The man (*whom*) I saw.

Die hundert Gulden, welche (or die) ich Ihnen gestern geliehen habe, The hundred florins (*which*) I lent you yesterday.

Der Herr, welchen (or den) ich letztere Woche gesehen, ist gestorben, The gentleman (*whom*) I saw last week, is dead.

Practice.

The way (*which*) I went was uneven.

The man (*whom*) I love.

That is the man (*whom*) I saw yesterday.

The reasons (*which*) you give, are not solid.

The company (*that*) he keeps is not reputable.

The letters (*which*) you wrote yesterday are not gone to the post.

Way, Weg, *m.* you give, are not solid, Sie geben
 I went was uneven, ich ging sind nicht fest.
 war uneben. company, Gesellschaft, *f.*
 I saw yesterday, ich gestern sah. are not gone to the post, sind
 love, liebe. nicht auf die Post gegeben.
 reason, Grund, *m.*

Obs. It is not necessary to repeat the relative before each verb in a sentence. Ex. Ein Freund, der mich liebt und hochschätzt, a friend *who* loves and esteems me.

RULE III.

Da, and wo, (or *wor* before a vowel) stand for *welcher*, or *der*, when compounded with prepositions. (*Vide prep. p. 233*).

Examples.

Die Feder, damit, or womit The pen *with which* I write.
 ich schreibe.
 Die Person, davon ich euch The person of *whom* I spoke
 gesagt habe, to you.
 Das ist worüber ich mich That is *what* astonishes me.
 verwundere.
 Das ist das Messer womit That is the knife *wherewith*
 er schnitt. (better, *with which*) he cut.

Practice.

Here is a pen *with which* you may write.
 That is *what* I am persuaded of.
 That is the house of *which* I spoke.
 He is a friend *upon whom* you may depend.
 Have you money *with which* you can pay.
 I will endeavour to make myself worthy of the friendship,
 with which you honor me.

To write, schreiben. I will endeavour, ich werde mich
 am persuaded of, versichert bin bestreben.
 von. to make myself worthy of the
 spoke, gesagt habe. friendship, with which you
 upon, auf. honor me, der Freundschaft,
 you may depend, Sie sich ver- womit Sie mich beehren, würdig
 lassen können. zu machen.
 money, Geld, *n.* 5.

RULE IV.

Der, or derjenige, he, she, it, they, their, that, those, &c. are used when *who*, *that*, or *which*, answering to *celui* in French, follows in the sentence.

Examples.

Der, or derjenige, welcher *He, who goes.*
gehet,

Die, or diejenige, die es sagte, *She, who said it.*

Der ist glücklich, welcher zu- *He is happy who is content.*
frieden ist,

Es ist der Vortheil derer, die *It is to their advantage who do*
(or welche) es thun, *it.*

Die Wälder in Poland sind *The forests in Poland are*
breiter und länger als die *wider and longer than those*
in Deutschland, *in Germany.*

Derjenige ist reich, der sich *He is rich who contents him-*
begnügen läßt, an dem *self with what he has.*
was er hat,

Practice.

They are happy who die in the Lord.

He who spoke with me.

That is the will of him who sent me.

That virtue is great, which stands the proof of disappointments.

The rivers in America are larger than those in Europe.

He is a child of God, who believes in him and his son.

Die in the Lord, in dem Herrn	in America, in Amerika.
sterben.	in Europe, in Europa.
spoke with me, mit mir redete.	a child of God, ein Kind Gottes.
stands the proof of disappoint-	who believes in him and his son,
ments, auch in Biedermärtig-	wer an ihn und seinen Sohn
keiten die Probe hält.	gläubet.
the rivers, die Flüsse.	

§. IV. *Interrogative Pronouns.*

RULE I.

The interrogative pronoun *welcher?* *which?* is joined to nouns with which it must agree in gender, and number. *Was für ein?* *what?* agrees in gender with nouns in the singular number only; when nouns are in the plural number, or do not admit of any plural, the *ein* is omitted. The cases are governed by other words as before. *Welcher* sometimes requires the genitive, or *von* with the dative.

Practice.

- | | |
|--|--|
| (<i>Nom.</i>) Welcher Mann? | <i>Which</i> man? |
| Welche Frau? | <i>which</i> woman? |
| (<i>Gen.</i>) Welcher Frau Kind ist das? | <i>Which</i> woman's child is that? |
| (<i>Acc.</i>) Welchen Weg muß ich einschlagen? | <i>Which</i> way must I go? |
| (<i>Gen.</i>) Von welcher Magd Lohn sprechen Sie? | <i>Of</i> which maid servant's wages do you speak? |
| (<i>Nom.</i>) Welcher von den beiden Brüdern? | <i>Which</i> of the two brothers? |
| (<i>Dat.</i>) Von welchem Mannes Sohne? | <i>Of</i> which man's son? |
| (<i>Dat.</i>) Welchen von den Herren haben Sie gesehen? | <i>Which</i> of the gentlemen have you seen? |
| (<i>Dat.</i>) Von welchem Buch reden Sie? | <i>Of</i> <i>which</i> book do you speak? |
| (<i>Dat.</i>) Zu welcher von den Damen gehen Sie? | <i>To</i> <i>which</i> of the ladies are you going? |
| (<i>Dat.</i>) Hier sind zwei Sackuhren; welcher von beiden geben Sie den Vorzug? | <i>Here</i> are two watches, <i>to</i> <i>which</i> of the two do you give the preference? |
| Was für ein Unterschied ist da? | <i>What</i> difference is there? |
| Was für eine Frau ist dieses? | <i>What</i> woman is this? |
| Was für einem Kinde haben Sie es gegeben? | <i>To</i> <i>what</i> child have you given it? |

Was für Kinder sind da? *What children are there?*

Was für Geld ist das? or,
was ist das für Geld? *What gold is that?*

Obs. When Was für ein? is used without any noun, then the Germans say, Was für einer? was für eine? was für eines or eins? *what?* Mas. Fem. and Neuter. Which may be Englished by, what is he, she, it.

Practice.

Which of those two women is your mother?

To what science do you apply?

Which is the best German Grammar in English?

To which of the houses do you give the preference?

Of which horse do you speak?

Which of the gentlemen do you see?

What men, women and children?

What man has done that?

What weather is it? What wine have you?

What corn is there? What bread is there?

What horse has he bought?

To, auf.

science, Wissenschaft, *f. acc.*

do you apply? legen Sie sich?

German grammar in English,

deutsch englische Sprachlehre.

horse, Pferd.

gentleman, Herr, *m.*

has done that? hat das gethan?

weather, Wetter.

wine, Wein.

corn, Getreide.

bread, Brot.

has he bought? hat er gekauft?

RULE II.

Wer? *who?* and was? *what?* wie? *how?* or what? are of both numbers, but wer? is applied to persons and was? to things. Wer? who? and was? what? are never joined to nouns in asking questions; when a noun immediately follows, welcher? *which?* or was für ein? *what?* must be used instead of wer? or was?

Examples.

Wer hat das gethan? Sein
Bruder oder seine Schwe-
ster,

Who has done that? his bro-
ther or his sister.

Wessen ist dieses Kleid?	Whose coat is this?	my fa-
meines Vaters,	thers.	
Wem bringt Ihr das?	To whom do you bring that?	
Von Wem habt Ihr diesen	From whom have you received	
Brief erhalten?	this letter?	
Wen haben Sie gesehen? Ih-	Whom have you seen?	your
ren Bruder,	brother.	
Wer ist da? er ist ein	Who is there?	he is a friend
Freund von mir,	of mine.	
Wer sind diese Fremden?	Who are these strangers?	
Was ist die Uhr? es ist	What o'clock is it?	it is two
zwei Uhr,	o'clock.	
Wie ist das Wetter?	How, (or what) is the weather?	
Was ist das? es sind Bü-	What is that?	they are books.
cher,		
Von was reden Sie?	Of what are you speaking?	
Was sagen Sie? Ich weiß	What do you say?	I do not
nicht was,	know what.	
Von was ist das gemacht?	Of what is that made?	sugar.
von Zucker,		

Practice.

Who is there?	Sir, it is a servant.
Who is always wise?	no one.
Who gave you it?	some one.
To whom does this book belong?	to me.
Whose children are these?	mine, every one.
Who say so?	people say so.
What is that?	it is no dog, it is a fox.
What have you there?	a book; of what does it treat?
What have you in this basket?	they are flowers.
Sir, it is a servant, mein Herr,	every one, jederman.
es ist ein Diener.	people, man.
always, immer.	no, kein.
wise, weise.	fox, Fuchs.
no one, niemand.	of, von, with a, (dat.)
gave you it, hat es Ihnen gegeben.	does it treat? handelt es?
some one, jemand.	basket, Korb.
does belong, gehört.	flower, Blume.

§. V. Indefinite Pronouns.

RULE.

These pronouns, which are not joined to nouns, must however agree with nouns understood ; except when indeclinable.

Examples.

Every man, jeder. Every woman, jede. Every thing, jedes.

Keiner von beiden ist mein Bruder. *Neither is my brother.*

Keine von beiden ist meine Schwester. *Neither is my sister.*

Keines von beiden ist mein Kind. *Neither is my child.*

Haben Sie kein Geld ? Nein, ich habe keins, or keines. *Have you no money ? No, I have none.*

Ich kenne keinen von beiden. *I know neither.*

Kein Mensch kann das thun was er gethan hat. *No man can do what he has done.*

Beide sprechen recht gut Deutsch. *Both speak very good German.*

Practice.

Has he a daughter ? Yes, he has one.

No one knows when he will die.

I will have neither ; you shall have either.

Every thing under the sun is subject to change.

Have you wine ? No, I have none.

Some one came to the doctor.

Knows when he will die, to the doctor, zum Doctor.
weiß wann er sterben muß.

Observe. The word *it* is expressed by *da*, when united to prepositions. (*Vide Gr. p. 233.*) ; as,

Ich verwundere mich sehr darüber. *I am very much surprised at it.*

Recapitulatory Exercises on the Pronouns.

FIRST LESSON.

Unter allen Werken ist auch nicht eines, das nicht Fehler hat.

Es ist nicht eines unter diesen Büchern, das ich nicht alle Jahre lese.

Ich zweifle, daß es einen Schriftsteller ohne Fehler giebt.

Ich zweifle, daß jemand die Menschen besser gekannt habe, als la Bruyère.

Hat jemand natürlicher als la Fontaine erzählt?

Ich kenne niemanden, der so glücklich ist, als er.

Wir kennen niemanden, der so viel Glück hat, als sie.

Man muß jedem das Seinige geben.

Kennen Sie einen dieser Herren?

Kennen Sie einige von diesen Frauenzimmern?

Es giebt keinen, der mehr Ihr Diener ist, als ich.

Es giebt keine, die mehr Ihre Dienerin ist, als ich.

Keiner weiß, ob er Haß oder Liebe verdient.

Keine von diesen Frauenzimmern ist spazieren gegangen.

Jedes Land hat seine Gebräuche.

Die Schmeichler leben auf Kosten eines jeden der sie anhören will.

SECOND LESSON.

Die Obrigkeit muß gegen Jedermann gerecht seyn, selbst gegen ihre Feinde.

Was du nicht willst, daß dir geschieht, das thu auch einem andern nicht.

Feuer und Wasser zerstören einander.

Sie schätzen einander.

Sie haben einander getödtet.

Sie schätzen sich beide selbst.

Sie haben sich beide umgebracht.

Viele werden betrogen indem sie Andere betrügen wollen.

Man mag so viel Genie haben als man will, so kann man doch ohne Fleiß in nichts vortrefflich werden.

Er beschäftige sich womit er will, so hört er den Augenblick auf, da ihn seine Pflicht ruft.

Die, welche sich mit nichts Gutem oder Nützlichem beschäftigen, scheinen mir sehr verächtlich zu seyn.

Man muß von keinem, er sey wer er will, in seiner Abwesenheit Uebels reden.

THIRD LESSON.

Der Mann da hat es gethan.

Dieser Mann ist es, von welchem ich rede.

Dieser ist es, von welchem ich rede.

Befleißige dich der Tugend, denn diese verläßt dich nicht.

Wessen ist das Haus? dessen da, deren da, der da.

Ich meine dieses Haus.

Dieses, or dieß ist der Mann, der dich leiten soll.

Wollt ihr euch in der Beredtsamkeit üben, so leset Demosteneß und Cicero; dieß sind die zwei größten Redner des Alterthumes.

Die Furcht und die Schande begleiten immer das Verbrechen; dieß sind die wahren Merkmale, woran man es erkennen kann.

Die Größe der Sonne übertrifft die Größe des Mondes.

Die Liebe ist eine Leidenschaft, welche viele Menschen sehr unglücklich macht.

Der Leib stirbt, die Seele ist unsterblich; und doch verwenden wir alle Sorgfalt auf jenen und vernachlässigen diese.

CHAP. V.

Rules for the Construction of Personal Verbs.

Of verbs we must consider the agreement, government, moods and tenses.

§. I. *Agreement of Verbs.*

RULE I.

A verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person, whether the nominative precede, or follow the verb.*

All pronouns are of the third person except *ich, I; du, thou*, singular; *wir, we; ihr, you*, plural; and all nouns are of the third person, unless used in speaking to.

Examples.

Ich lese, schreibe und spreche,	I read, write and speak.
Du liebst, und er gehorcht,	Thou lovest, and he obeys.
Der Sohn ist größer als der Vater,	The son is taller than the fa- ther.
Schreibt der Bruder?	Does the brother write? -
Er liest, und unsre Freunde schreiben,	He reads, and our friends write.
Er reibt die Farben, und sie malt,	He rubs the colours, and she paints.
Ich bin es, (ich bins,) du bist es,	It is I, it is thou.
Sie sprechen mit uns,	You speak with us.

* When the verb relates to more than one subject, it must be plural: as, *Wahrheit und Gerechtigkeit sind die Grundpfeiler eines Staats*, truth and justice are the foundation pillars of a state.

If a verb relate to more subjects than one of different persons, the first person is then preferred to the second, and the second to the third; as,

Du, dein Bruder und ich wollen spazieren gehen,	You, your brother and I will take a walk.
Ich und du haben gleiche Schick- sale,	You and I have equal destinies.
Weder du noch er werden das verstehen,	Neither thou nor he will under- stand it.

In the above examples *wollen* and *haben*, are in the first person, to agree with *ich*, and *werdet* is in the second person to agree with *du*.

But when several nominatives, referring to one verb, are considered distinctly, the verb must be singular; as,

Gut, Ehre, Leben, kurz, alles ist verloren,	Estate, honor, life, in short, every thing is lost.
--	--

Geben Sie mir gefälligst noch eine Tasse,	Give me another cup, if you please.
Der Hund bewacht den Hof,	The dog guards the yard.
Wann treten Sie Ihre Reise nach England an?	When do you set out for Eng- land?
Wie froh bin ich!	How glad I am!
Diese Frauen *haben Un- recht,	These women are wrong.
Dieser Mann hat Recht,	This man is right.
Er oder sie hat mir es ge- sagt,	He, or she told it me.

Practice.

The sun shines. I eat. He sings.
 He speaks of my father.
 Who has written this letter?
 Fame and immortality await you.
 The eagle and hawk are birds of prey.
 We are the children of God.
 Justice and integrity are his companions.
 Each has his right, we are wrong.
 He plays the whole day. They dance and sing.
 Have you seen the king? *no*, I have seen the queen.
 Virtue and happiness go hand in hand.
 Thou and I do not know that.
 Thou and he will not be informed of that.

Sun, Sonne, <i>f.</i>	await, erwarten.
shines, scheint.	eagle, Adler, <i>m.</i>
to eat, essen.	hawk, Habicht, <i>m.</i>
to sing, singen.	birds of prey, Raubvögel.
speaks, spricht.	justice, Gerechtigkeit, <i>f.</i>
of, von.	integrity, Redlichkeit, <i>f.</i>
written, geschrieben.	each, jeder.
fame, Ruhm, <i>m.</i>	to play, spielen.
immortality, Unsterblichkeit.	happiness, Glückseligkeit.

Observe. In addressing a person of title or rank, the verb is put in the plural, also in speaking of one who is absent; though this mode of speaking is ungrammatical, yet it is common; Ex. *Euere, or Ew. Majestät geruhen*, your majesty is pleased, or may it please your majesty.

* Haben is used like the French *avoir*.

Mas. Seine, or Se. Majestät, (der König) haben befohlen, your majesty, (the king) has ordered, (*have ordered.*)

Fem. Ihro, or Ihre Majestät, (die Königin) sind so gnädig, her majesty, (the queen) is so benevolent.

Der Herr geheime Rath sagten mir, the privy counsellor told me.

RULE II.

The third person singular of pronouns is not only applied to persons, but to inanimate things; then *er*, *sie*, *es* may be used for *it*, according to the gender of the noun referred to. And so likewise the possessive *sein*, and *ihr*, for *its*.

Examples.

Wessen ist dieser Hut? er ist mein, oder meiner,	Whose hat is this? <i>it</i> is mine.
Wo haben Sie ihn gekauft?	Where did you buy <i>it</i> ?
Kaufe Wahrheit, und ver= kaufe sie nicht,	Buy the truth, and sell it not.
Der Adler breitet seine Flü= gel aus,	The eagle spreads <i>its</i> wings.
Die Amsel breitet ihre Flü= gel aus,	The blackbird spreads <i>its</i> wings.
Hier ist ein Brief, lesen Sie ihn,	Here is a letter, read <i>it</i> .
Hier ist die Schrift, lesen Sie sie,	Here is the Scripture, read <i>it</i> .
Hier ist das Buch, lesen Sie es,	Here is the book, read <i>it</i> .
Sehen Sie die Sonne? sie wirft ihre Strahlen auf die Erde,	Do you see the sun? <i>it</i> throws <i>its</i> rays upon the earth.

Practice.

How do you like this weather? It is very unpleasant.

The court and its magnificence.

Do you see this flower? It is very beautiful.

How great is its charm; but how short its duration.

Where is my coat? it is in your room.

The child has broken its arm ; it is ill.

The wine has lost its taste ; it is flat.

The world has its enjoyments ; but it is filled with pain and misery.

How do you like ? wie gefällt Ihnen ? beautiful, schön.

weather, Witterung, *f*.

charm, Reiz, *m*.

very, sehr.

short, kurz.

unpleasant, unangenehm.

duration, Dauer, *f*.

court, Hof, *m*.

room, Zimmer, *n*.

magnificence, Herrlichkeit, *f*.

child, Kind, *n*.

flower, Blume, *f*.

world, Welt, *f*.

RULE III.

In addressing a single person, (or more than one person,) whom we wish to treat with respect, it is the prevailing custom to use the third person plural *Sie*, (*they*), for *you*, instead of *ihr*, or *du*, and the possessive *Ihr*, instead of *ever*, *your* ; the first of which is always expressed in German, though not in English.

Examples.

Wie befinden Sie sich ? How do *you*, (*they*) do ?

Sehr wohl, ich danke Ihnen, Very well, I thank *you*, (*them*.)

Kommen Sie her, mein Herr, und sehen Sie, Come here, Sir, and look.

Mit wem sprechen Sie ? To whom do you speak ?

Sprechen Sie mir nichts davon, Do not speak to me about it.

Sagen Sie mir gefälligst, Tell me, if you please.

Haben Sie die Güte mir zu sagen, Have the goodness to tell me.

Gehen Sie Ihres Weges, Go your way.

Wo sind Ihre Hüte ? Where are your hats ?

Da ist Ihr Hut, There is your hat.

Madam, sind das Ihre Handschuhe ? Madam, are those your gloves ?

Practice.

Do you speak German? You are a generous friend.

Do you know him Madam? Have you seen her?

Will you come with me? Bring your brother.

German, Deutsch.

generous, großmüthiger.

know, kennen, him, acc.

seen, gesehen, her, acc.

will, wollen.

come, kommen.

bring, bringen.

Observe. Du is used in addressing the Deity, children, brothers and sisters, intimate friends, and also people of low condition; it is common to use ihr to tradesmen and sometimes to servants; but er, *he*, and sie, *she*, are more frequently used in addressing male, or female domestics.

Examples to illustrate the preceding Observations.

O, Gott! du wirst mich erretten,
Mein Sohn! du hast deine Pflicht
erfüllet,

Bauer, habt ihr die Hühner zum
Verkauf?

Freund, könnt ihr mir nicht sagen,
wo? &c.

Sey er so gut und sage er seinem
Herrn,

Marie, hat sie das Handtuch ge-
holt?

O, God! thou wilt deliver me.

My son! thou hast done thy
duty.

Farmer, have you these fowls to
sell, *or for sale?*

Friend, can you not tell me,
where? &c.

Have the goodness to tell your
master.

Mary, have you (*has she*) fetch-
ed the towel?

§ 2. *Government of Verbs.*

RULE I.

The nominative follows the verbs, seyn, *to be*; werden, *to become*; bleiben, *to remain*; also heißen when it signifies *to be called or named*. *Whenever an active verb governs the accusative, the passive of the same verb governs the nominative.

Examples.

Georg ist ein großer König,
Friedrich II war ein großer
Monarch,

George is a great king.

Frederic the Second was a
great monarch.

Mein Bruder wird ein reicher Mann werden,	My brother will become a rich man.
Er heißt Johann,	He is called John.
Der Narr bleibt ein Narr,	The fool remains a fool.
* <i>Act.</i> Die Leute loben meinen Bruder,	The people praise my brother.
<i>Pass.</i> Mein Bruder wird gelobt,	My brother is praised.

Obs. The German verbs govern the same cases of nouns and pronouns as the English; except in some particular modes of expression.

RULE II.

Those verbs which have *of* (and sometimes *from* or *with*) after them in English, require the genitive after them in German. Sometimes *of* or *from* is implied in the sense of the verb. The accusative comes with the genitive and is placed before it, when there is any other case in the sentence.

The following is a list of some of those verbs which take *of* or *from* after them in English, and whose corresponding verbs, in German, are said to govern the genitive case of the thing, and the accusative of the person.

Anklagen, to accuse <i>of</i> .	gewähren, to grant, to allow <i>of</i> .
bedürfen, to be in need <i>of</i> .	überheben, to free <i>from</i> .
belehren, to inform <i>of</i> .	überführen, to convict <i>of</i> .
berauben, to rob, or deprive <i>of</i> .	überzeugen, to convince <i>of</i> .
beschuldigen, to accuse <i>of</i> .	versichern, to assure <i>of</i> .
entlassen, to dismiss <i>from</i> .	verweisen, to banish <i>from</i> .
entledigen, to free <i>from</i> .	würdigen, to deign, to think
entsetzen, to discharge <i>from</i> .	worthy <i>of</i> .
gedenken, to think <i>of</i> .	

Examples.

Ich klage dich des Diebstahls an,	I accuse you <i>of</i> the theft.
Er beraubte ihn seines Geldes,	He robbed him <i>of</i> his money.
Er beschuldigte ihn der Lüge,	He charged him <i>with</i> the lie.

Ich kann mich dessen nicht erwehren.	I cannot keep myself <i>from</i> it.
Jemanden des Mordes an- klagen.	To accuse somebody (or a person) <i>of</i> murder.
Er entzieht sich der Gesell- schaft,	He avoids (he withdraws <i>from</i>) the company.
Jemanden großer Ehren würdigen,	To think a person worthy <i>of</i> great honor.
Ich entsehe ihn seines Amtes,	I discharge him <i>from</i> his of- fice.
Ich versichere dich dessen,	I assure you <i>of</i> it.

Practice.

* I assure you *of* my friendship.

Free me *from* this charge.

He has accused him *of* the crime.

To charge a person *with* treachery or treason.

They will banish him *from* his country.

He intends to rob me *of* this pleasure.

Friendship, Freundschaft, *f.*
charge. Amt, *n.*

treachery, Verrätherei, *f.*
pleasure, Vergnügen, *n.*

RULE III.

When *to*, *for*, (and sometimes *from*) are used after verbs in English, the corresponding verbs in German require the dative: *to*, *for* &c. are frequently understood.†

Examples.

Geben Sie mir Brot,	Give (<i>to</i>) me some bread.
Schicken Sie mir die Sachen,	Send the things <i>to</i> me.
Ich kann Ihnen nun berich- ten wie die Sache war,	I can now report <i>to</i> you, how the matter was.

* I assure you of my friendship, may be expressed in the dative; as,
Ich versichere dir meine Freundschaft.

† The accusative is used with the dative, when there is any other case in the sentence.

Some German Grammarians use the Latin Rule, *Dativus commodi aut incommodi, or omnia verba regunt dativum ejus rei, cui aliquid acquiritur, aut adimitur.*

Er giebt mir das Buch,	He gives (<i>to</i>) me the book.
Er wird Ihnen diese Wissen= schaft lehren,	He will teach (<i>to</i>) you that science.
Geben Sie mir den Theil der Güter der mir gehört,	Give <i>to</i> me that part of the goods which belongs <i>to</i> me.
Der Schüler sucht mir das Buch,	The scholar seeks the book <i>for</i> me.
Die Erde gleicht einer Kugel,	The earth is like (<i>to</i>) a ball.
Ich schätze es mir für eine Ehre,	I think it an honor (<i>to</i> me.)

Sometimes the dative is used with the accusative when in English we use the genitive. (Vide Rule III, Possessive Pronouns, p. 275.)

Examples.

Die Franzosen haben ihrem König den Kopf abgeschla= gen,	The French have <i>cut off</i> their king's head.
--	--

Practice.

Give the book *to* the man.
The son resembles (*to*) the father.
I promise (*to*) you my friendship.
The debauchee is addicted (*to*) drinking.
Lend (*to*) me twenty crowns.
You want to force it *from* me.
Pay (*to*) me what thou owest me.
I will pay (*to*) you, all.
Ask him *for* the book.
That is useful and advantageous *to* me.

Resembles, gleich.	pay, bezahlen.
to promise, versprechen.	what, was
debauchee, Luderliche, m.	to owe, schuldig seyn.
lend, leihen.	pay, abtragen, or bezahlen.
you want, du willst.	to ask, fordern.
to force <i>from</i> , abzwängen.	advantageous, vortheilhaft.

Observations.

1. The dative is put before or after the verb, when we ask *wem?* *to whom?*

Wem bringt er das? *To whom does he bring that?*
 Mir bringt es, er bringt mirs. *He brings it to me.*

2. Most of the neuter, and many of the impersonal verbs govern the dative; Ex.

Einem anliegen etwas zu thun, *To press somebody to do something.*

Es kommt mir eine Lust an, *I have a mind.*

3. All verbs compounded of the prepositions *ab, an, auf, bei, ein, vor, unter, zu, nach,* require the dative; Ex.

Ich habe ihm das zugedacht, *I have destined that to him.*

Folgen Sie mir nach, mein *Follow (after) me my Friend.*

Freund,

Die Menschen können Gott nichts *Man can dictate nothing to God.*
 vorschreiben,

4. *Seyn* and *werden* with an adverb, govern the dative; Ex.

Mir ist wohl, *I am well.*

Er ist mir gut, *He is good to me.*

Es ist mir übel, *I am not well.*

Mir wird übel von ihm, *He makes me ill.*

RULE IV.

Those verbs in German govern the accusative, which have no preposition, *expressed or understood*, after them in English.

Haben, to have and all active verbs govern the accusative; when we can ask *Wen? whom? Was? what? Wie viel? how much? Wie theuer? how dear? Wie lang? how long? Wie oft? how often? Wie alt sind Sie? how old are you?*

Examples.

Er liebt mich und dich, *He loves me and you.*

Wen liebt er, *acc.* mich und *Whom does he love? acc.*
 dich, *me and you.*

Ich ehre dich, *I honor you.*

Ich schätze meinen Freund, *I value my friend.*

Er liebt das Geld, *He loves money.*

Ich ehre die Wahrheit, *I honor truth.*

Ich schätze die Wissenschaften, *I value knowledge.*

Ich schreibe einen Brief,	I write a letter.
Ich habe ihn länger als zwei Jahre gekannt,	I have <i>known him</i> longer than two years.
Fürchte Gott, und ehre den König,	<i>Fear</i> God, and <i>honor</i> the king.
Liebe deinen Nächsten, als dich selbst,	<i>Love</i> thy neighbour, as thy- self.
Es wiegt ein Pfund,	It <i>weighs</i> a pound.
Ich bin vierzig Jahre alt,	I <i>am</i> forty years old.

Observations.

1. The verbs heißen, *to call*; nennen, *to name*; lehren, *to teach*; fragen, *to ask*; schelten, *to abuse*; schimpfen, *to call names*, govern two accusatives; as,

Ich nenne ihn meinen Vater,	I call <i>him my father</i> .
Herr! lehre mich deine Steige,	Lord! teach <i>me thy ways</i> .
Er fragt mich etwas,	He asks <i>me something</i> .
Er schimpft, or er schalt mich einen Narren,	He calls <i>me a fool</i> .

2. When the dative and accusative are used in the same sentence, the dative is generally placed before the accusative; as,

Ich schreibe dir einen Brief,	I am writing <i>a letter to you</i> .
Ich schneide ihm eine Feder,	I am making <i>a pen for him</i> .

Practice.

I have seen the father in his room.

He has lost a sum of money.

I know the good appetite of that man.

You instruct an idle boy.

He teaches me the German language.

Cain killed his brother Abel.

I have tired myself with walking.

He has been travelling three years.

I have taught you commandments and judgments.

I have purchased that house for ten thousand dollars.

I call him a hero.

He calls him a cheat.

I pray thee, hear my speeches.

I know him by his speech.

He asked him this question.

Room, Zimmer, *n*.

to instruct, unterrichten.

idle, faul.

German language, deutsche

Sprache.

to kill, or to slay, erschlagen.

Abel, Abel.
tired, müde.
travelling, reisen.
commandment, Gebot, *n.*

hero, Held, *m.*
cheat, Betrug, *m.*
to pray, bitten.
speech, Rede, *f.*

Obs. Many reflective and impersonal verbs govern the accusative; as,

Ich schäme mich,	I am ashamed.
Ich erinnere mich,	I remember.
Ich besinne mich,	I recollect myself.
Es gereuet mich,	I repent of it.
Es freuet mich,	I am glad of it.
Es verdrießt mich,	I am vexed at it.
Es befiel ihm ein Schwindel,	He was seized with a giddiness.
Es befremdet mich,	I am struck with that.
Es wundert mich,	I wonder at it.
Es friert mich,	I am cold.
Es hungert mich,	I am hungry.
Es begiebt sich.	It happens.

§ 3. Moods and Tenses of Verbs.

RULE I.

The tenses of the indicative are generally used the same in German as in English; but most of the English tenses are expressed two or three different ways.

Examples.

Present.

Ich schreibe, <i>I write, I do write, or I am writing.</i>
Ich weiß es, <i>I know it.</i>
Schreibt er, <i>Is he writing.</i>
Wisset Ihr es nicht? <i>Do you not know it?</i>

Imperfect.

Wir mußten alles, <i>We knew all.</i>	Schrieben Sie? <i>Were you writing?</i>	Ich kannte ihn nicht, <i>I did not know him.</i>
---------------------------------------	---	--

Perfect.

Haben Sie es gesehen? <i>have you seen it?</i>	Wir haben geschrieben, <i>We have written, or we have been writing.</i>	Ich habe sie nicht gesehen, <i>I have not seen her.</i>
--	---	---

Pluperfect.

Ich hatte eben zu Mittage
gespeiset, *I had just dined.* Hatten Sie geschrieben? Had
they been writing? or had
they written?

First Future.

Ich werde darüber froh seyn, Ich werde nicht schreiben, I
I shall be glad of it. *shall not write, or I shall*
not be writing.

Second Future.

Wenn ich werde in Paris Wenn ich werde die Ehre ge=
gewesen seyn, when I *shall* *habt haben, when I shall*
have been to Paris. *have had the honor.*
Ich werde geschrieben haben, I shall have written.

Conditional.

Ich würde schreiben, I should, would or could write.
Ich würde geschrieben haben, I should have written.

Recapitulatory Examples on the Tenses.

Present.

Ich spreche.	I speak, or I am speaking.
Ich spreche ja,	* I do speak.
Ich bin im Begriff einen Brief zu schreiben.	I am going to write a letter.
Ich spreche (nun or jetzt,)	I am speaking (<i>now</i>).
Saget ihr es nicht?	Do you not say so (<i>it</i>)?
Ich schreibe eben,	I am writing, (<i>I am just writing</i>).
Er achtet nicht darauf,	He does not mind it.
Warum saget ihr nicht eure Lektion auf?	Why do you not say your lesson?
Kommt und sagt eure Lektion auf,	Come and say your lesson.
Ich bin ja am Auftragen,	I am saying my lesson.
Senden Sie jetzt an ihm?	Are you sending to him now?
Nein, er ist eben angekommen,	No, he is just arrived.
Sagt es ja keinem Menschen,	Do not tell (<i>it to</i>) any one.
Arbeiten wir nicht?	Do we not work?
Schreibt eure Exercitia auf,	} Write down your exercises.
Schreiben Sie Ihre Uebungen nieder,	
Was haben wir zu bezahlen?	What have we to pay?

* For, I do speak, the Germans say. Ich spreche ja, *I speak indeed.*
D d

The present is often used for the future and sometimes for the perfect; as,

Ich reise morgen ab,	I <i>shall</i> set off to-morrow.
Ich wohne hier schon zwanzig Jahre,	I <i>have</i> lived here already twenty years.

Imperfect.

Observe. The Germans often use the perfect, when in English we use the imperfect, as may be seen in some of the following examples.

Ich liebte,	I loved, I did love, I was loving.
Indem ich davon sprach, trat mein Vater herein,	Whilst I was speaking of it, in came my father.
Wir haben den König gesehen, oder wir sahen den König,	We saw the king.
Ich habe ihn ungefähr vor vierzehn Tagen gesehen,	I saw him about a fortnight ago.
Ich war gestern da,	I was there yesterday.
Ich war da gestern,	Yesterday I was there.
Gestern war ich da,	
Wir gingen nicht denselben Weg,	We did not go the same way.
Ich ging gestern dahin,	I did go there yesterday.
Ich bin gestern dahin gegangen,	I went there yesterday.
Sind Sie nie in Berlin gewesen?	Were you never at Berlin?
Ich schrieb gestern einen Brief,	I wrote a letter yesterday.
Ich habe gestern einen Brief geschrieben,	I did write a letter yesterday.
Ich bin gestern am Schreiben eines Briefes gewesen,	I was writing a letter yesterday.
Schrieben Sie einen Brief gestern?	Did you write a letter yesterday?
Haben Sie gestern einen Brief geschrieben?	
Ich schrieb als er herein kam,	I was writing when he came in.
Waren Sie gestern am Schreiben eines Briefes?	Were you writing a letter yesterday?
Wußten Sie es nicht?	Did you not know it?
(Wir waren) letztes Jahr, letztern Monat, letzte Woche am Schreiben eines Briefes, or schrieben wir Briefe,	We were writing letters last year, last month, last week.
Er hat sein Deutsches nicht aufgesagt,	He did not say his German.
Sie haben weder ihr Französisches noch Deutsches geschrieben,	They wrote neither their French nor German.
Der Herr sprach zu ihm, or der Herr hat ihn gesprochen,	The Lord spoke to him.

Der Herr hat es gegeben, und The Lord gave, and the Lord
 der Herr hat es genommen, hath taken away.
 Er ist vor einem Jahre gestorben, He died twelve months ago.

Perfect.

Habt ihr (eure Section) aufgesagt? Have you said your lesson?
 Ich habe sie ja aufgesagt, I have said it, or I did say it indeed.
 Habt ihr euer } Exercitium
 Haben Sie Ihr }
 geschrieben? Have you written your exercise?
 Ich habe es nicht gesehen, I have not seen it.
 Sie haben ihre französischen They have written their French
 Exercitia geschrieben, exercises.
 Ich habe meine Aufgabe fertig, I have done my exercise.
 Wir haben den König gesehen, We have seen the king.
 Sie haben an mich geschrieben, You have been writing to me.
 Ich habe es nie gesehen, I have never seen it, or I never saw it.
 Ein Knabe ist ins Wasser gefallen, A boy has, or is fallen, into the water.
 Ich habe den ganzen Tag geschrieben und ich bin müde, I have been writing all day and am fatigued.

Pluperfect.

Ich hatte einen Brief geschrieben, ehe Sie ankamen, I had written a letter before you arrived.
 Hatte sie nicht mit Ihnen gesprochen? Had she not been speaking to you?
 Ich hatte eben zu Mittage gespeiset, I had just dined.
 Ich hatte gegessen als Ihr Bruder kam, I had dined when your brother came.
 Wir reiseten ab, sobald wir den König gesehen hatten, We set out as soon as we had seen the king.

First Future.

Ich werde nicht viel zu thun haben, or keine Arbeit haben, I shall not be busy.
 Wir werden ihm verbunden seyn, We shall be obliged to him.
 Ich werde es heute bekommen, I shall have it to-day.
 Wird er nicht arbeiten? Will he not labor?
 Sie wird Sie wieder sehen, She will see you again.
 Ich werde quälen, I shall torment.
 Ich werde gequält werden, I shall be tormented.
 Sie werden es in meinem Cabinet finden, You will find it in my closet.

Second Future.

Ich werde gequält worden seyn,	I shall have been tormented.
Ich werde gequält haben,	I shall have tormented.
Ich werde ihn gesehen haben,	I shall have seen him, before I
ehe ich Sie wieder sehe,	see you again.
Sie werden Ihr Abendessen ge-	You will have had your supper.
habt haben,	
Es wird geschrieben worden seyn,	It will have been written.

Subjunctive.

Wenn ich das Unglück gehabt	If I had had that misfortune.
hätte,	
Wenn ich reich wäre, so hätte ich	If I were rich, I should have
Freunde,	friends.

Practice.

- Are you writing to him (*now*) ?
 I assure you of my great regard, or esteem.
 She is just gone out. I had just come in.
 I am writing a letter to him.
 In three weeks time you (*will*) see me here again.
 She was playing when I came in.
 Where are you going ? I am going home.
 We have been reading the whole night.
 I never saw that. I never was there.
 Have they not been playing at dice ?
 Had they read the letters before you went ?
 Were you never at Paris ? No, I have never been there.
 When we arrived here, we sent back our servant.
 Whilst I was saying this, he ran out.
 Have you read the book, which I sent you ?
 I shall be travelling at that time.
 We have been speaking of it a long time.
 Had we not been dancing ?
 They had not been gaming.
 I did not know the author formerly.
 Did he give you the money ?
 Shall we not be dancing ? He will not be walking.

Regard, or esteem, Hochach-	where, wo.
tung, f.	home, nach Hause.
just, eben.	at dice, mit Würfeln.
gone out, ausgegangen.	to read, lesen.
again, wieder.	before, ehe.
to play, spielen.	never, nie.

there, da.
 when, da.
 to send, schicken.
 servant, Bediente, m.
 whilst, indem.
 at, zu.
 to travel, reisen.

long time, lange.
 of it, davon.
 to dance, tanzen.
 to game, spielen.
 author, Verfasser, m.
 formerly, vormals.
 money, Geld, n.

Observe. When the present participle in English has no government, it is rendered by the present participle in German. Ex. Sie verließ das Zimmer singend, she left the room singing.

RULE II.

In simple sentences either past participles, or infinitives always occupy the last place:—in compound sentences it may be otherwise, *i. e.* when relative pronouns, conjunctions, or adverbs are used.

Examples.

- | | |
|---|--|
| Ich habe einen Brief geschrieben, | I have <i>written</i> a letter. |
| Ich hatte einen Brief geschrieben, | I had <i>written</i> a letter. |
| Ich werde einen Brief schreiben, | I shall <i>write</i> a letter. |
| Ich bin Willens Deutsch zu lernen, | I have a mind <i>to learn</i> German. |
| Haben Sie das Buch gelesen, welches ich Ihnen schickte? | Have you <i>read</i> the book, which I <i>sent</i> you? |
| Wer sein Leben erhalten will, der wird es verlieren, | <i>Whoever will preserve</i> his life, shall <i>lose</i> it. |
| Nachdem er diese Worte gesagt hatte, ging er weg, | <i>After he had said</i> these words, he went away. |
| Die Frauensperson, welche Sie gesehen haben, ist weggegangen, | The woman <i>whom</i> you have seen, is gone away. |

Der Ort, wo ich gewesen bin, ist schön,	The place <i>where</i> I <i>have</i> been, is beautiful.
Er fragt mich, wer diesen Morgen bei Ihnen war,	He asks, <i>who was</i> with you this morning.
Wenn er das Buch lesen will,	<i>If</i> he <i>will</i> read that book.
Da der König in London ankam,	<i>When</i> the king <i>arrived</i> in Lon- don.
Da ich den Mann, welcher so edel gedacht, ehre und liebe,	<i>Since</i> I <i>honor</i> and <i>love</i> the man who has thought so nobly.

Observe. If a past participle and infinitive come together in a sentence, the infinitive must be last. Ex. Ich werde meine Arbeit in einer Stunde gethan haben, I shall *have done* my work in an hour.

Practice.

Has he *written* a letter?
I will go to see (or *visit*) my friend.
I did *come* home very late yesterday.
I will *sell* my books.
He wishes *to learn* the Latin language accurately.
This man can *speak* English, German, French and several other languages of Europe.
If I *were* rich, I should *have* friends.
The place in which (*where*) I *saw* my friend to-day.
That writer is to be esteemed, who *has* the promotion of virtue for his object.
I am sorry that he *is* sick.
Mr. Legrand is *returned* from Germany.
He has *done* his duty, therefore I cannot *complain* of him.
The man who *is* (*here*) in London.
The woman who *was* (*here*) in London.
I believe that he *was* my friend.
When it *is* time, I will *come*.

To visit, besuchen.

late, spät.

to sell, verkaufen.

to wish, wünschen.

accurately, gründlich.

to, zu.

several, verschiedene.

to speak, reden.

if, wenn.

place, Ort, m.

in which, wo.	for his object, zum Zwecke.
to see, sehen.	I am sorry, es ist mir leid.
writer, Schriftsteller, m.	Germany, Deutschland.
is to be esteemed, ist zu schätzen.	duty, Schuldigkeit.
promotion, Beförderung, f.	to complain, sich beklagen.

RULE III.

The subjunctive is used when doubt or uncertainty is implied.

Examples.

Ich glaubte daß er todt sey,	I thought he was dead.
Ich wünsche daß er komme,	I wish he may come.
Ich warnte dich, damit du dich in Acht nähmest,	I warned you, in order that you might take care of yourself.
Er spricht, als wenn die Sache schon gewiß wäre,	He speaks as if the thing were true already.
Wenn du mir diese Freund= schaft erzeugen könntest,	If you could show me this friendship.
Er glaubt es sey nicht mög= lich,	He thinks (<i>that</i>) it is not possible.
Wenn Ich an Ihrer Stelle wäre,	If I were in your place.
Wenn er reich wäre (so) würde er nicht betteln,	If he were rich, he would not beg.
Wäre er reich, er würde nicht betteln,	Were he rich, he would not beg.
Hätte ich Bücher, so würde ich lernen,	Had I books, I would learn.

Practice.

I wish he may find friends.
He asked me whether I was sick.
I hope he may be happy.
I do not know whether that might have happened.
If I were rich I would do it.
They say that the king has made peace.

We believe that he might have had it.
I should have thought he had been more polite.

To ask, fragen.	they say, man sagt.
to hope, hoffen.	peace, Friede, <i>m.</i>
to know, wissen.	to believe, glauben.
might have happened, geschehen	to think, glauben.
möchte.	polite, höflich.

RULE IV.

1. *Zu, to* is generally placed before the infinitive.*
2. The infinitive without *zu*, follows after the verbs,

Bleiben, to continue.	Liegen, to lie.
Finden, to find.	Lehren, to teach.
Fahren und gehen, to go.	Lernen, to learn.
Heißen, to bid.	Nennen, to call.
Helfen, to help.	Reiten, to ride.
Hören, to hear.	Sehen, to see.
Thun, to do (<i>with</i>) nichts als, nothing but.	

Also *zu* is omitted both before and after können, mögen, lassen, dürfen, sollen, wollen, müssen, haben, helfen, heißen, hören, werden.

Obs. *Zu* is *not put* before the infinitive of verbs used substantively. Ex. Versprechen und Erfüllen sind zwei verschiedene Sachen, to promise and to fulfil are two different things.

Examples with *zu*.

Ich war froh meinen Freund wieder zu sehen,	I was happy <i>to</i> see my friend again.
Lieben Sie die Tugend, um glücklich zu seyn,	Love virtue <i>in order to</i> be happy.
Ich bitte Sie davon zu neh= men,	I request you <i>to</i> take some.
Ich erühne mich, Ihnen meine Aufwartung zu machen,	I make bold <i>to</i> wait upon you.

* The words *um zu, in order to*, are sometimes separated.

Er ging, um sein Geld zu bekommen, He went *in order to* get his money.

Examples without zu.

Der Vater lehrt das Kind lesen, The father *teaches* the child to read.

Ich höre ihn reden, I hear him *talking*.

Er heißt mich gehen, He bids me *go*.

Sie macht mich lachen, She makes me *laugh*.

Ich habe ihn reiten sehen, I saw him *riding*.

Ich sehe ihn kommen, I see him *coming*.

Ich darf sagen, I dare *say*.

Ich kann sagen, I can *say*.

Ich laß ihn gehen, I let him *go*.

Ich will kommen, I will *come*.

Practice with zu.

I wish *to* speak to you.

I hope *to* find him.

I wish *to* see you.

He did all he could, *in order to* ruin me.

I came hither *to* speak to you.

I have something *to* tell you.

Give me something *to* eat and drink.

Practice without zu.

He learns to dance and ride.

I will teach you to do good.

He will not work.

We saw him go.

I heard them sing.

He helps me to write.

He helped me to defend my rights.

RULE V.

The verbs dürfen, hören, helfen, lassen, heißen, können, mögen, müssen, wollen, sollen, werden, sehen, are put in the infinitive, after another infinitive, instead of the participle.

Examples.

Er hat es sagen dürfen, (nicht gedurft),	He has dared to say so (<i>it</i>).
Ich habe ihm arbeiten helfen (nicht geholfen,)	I have helped him to work.
Ich habe sie sprechen hören, (nicht gehört).	I have heard them speak.
Sie hätte es thun mögen, (nicht gemacht).	She might have done it.
Du hättest es kaufen sollen, (nicht gekauft).	Thou shouldst have bought it.
Ich habe es nicht glauben können (nicht gekonnt)	I could not have believed it.

Obs. The participles of *lehren* and *lernen*, are generally used instead of infinitives; as,

Wer hat Sie Französisch sprechen gelehrt?	Who taught you to speak French?
Bei wem haben Sie reiten gelernt?	Of whom did you learn riding?

However Rabener says:

Ich habe ihn kennen lernen, (<i>instead of gelernt</i>)	I have learnt to know him.
---	----------------------------

Practice.

I have seen him ride.
 He could have done it.
 Who has bid you come?
 Have you heard me speak?
 I must have done it.
 I have left my compliments.
 He has bid him go.
 Of whom did you learn dancing?
 Who taught you to write?
 I have taught her to know.

Observations on the Moods, &c.

Obs. 1. *I am*, before an infinitive active, must not be expressed *ich bin* &c.; but *ich werde*, *ich muß*, *ich soll* &c. according to the nature of the sentence.

Examples.

Ich werde aufs Land gehen,	<i>I am to go into the country.</i>
Ich muß ihn wissen lassen,	<i>I am to let him know.</i>
Was muß ich bezahlen?	<i>What am I to pay?</i>
Wenn wir darnach beurtheilt werden sollten.	<i>If we were to be judged by that.</i>
Was soll ich thun?	<i>What am I to do?</i>

Obs. 2. The subjunctive is sometimes used for the participle, and the verb *sollen* for the infinitive.

Examples.

Ich bin zufrieden daß er mich in Thalern bezahle.	<i>I am satisfied with his paying me in dollars.</i>
Ich weiß nicht was ich thun soll.	<i>I do not know what to do.</i>

Obs. 3. Haben, sitzen, liegen, stehen und geben, are sometimes Englished by *to be*.

Examples.

Da haben Sie es,	<i>There it is.</i>
* Sie haben Recht,	<i>You are right.</i>
* Er hat unrecht,	<i>He is wrong.</i>
Es liegt auf dem Tische,	<i>It is upon the table.</i>
Es steht unter dem Tische,	<i>It is under the table.</i>
Der Dorn sitzt in meinem Finger,	<i>The thorn is in my finger.</i>
Es giebt Männer,	<i>There are men.</i>

CHAP. VI.

Rules for the construction of passive, neuter, compound, reflective and impersonal verbs.

§. I. *Passive.*

RULE I.

Passive verbs are formed by *werden*, in the simple tenses, and in the compound tenses by *seyn* and *werden*, or the participle *worden*.

* *Sie haben Recht*, is similar to the French *vous avez raison*. *Er hat Unrecht*, *il a tort*.

Examples.

Ich werde von meinen Freun= den gelobt,	I am praised by my friends.
Man wird geachtet,	People, they &c. are es= teemed.
Ich bin von Ihnen gerettet worden,	I have been saved by you.
Wurden sie von uns ange= klagt?	Were they accused by us?
Er wurde von mir gelobt,	He was praised by me.
Sie war von uns geliebt wor= den,	She had been loved by us.
Wir werden von ihnen nicht gelobt,	We are not praised by them.
Ich werde gewarnt werden,	I shall be admonished.
Ich werde von ihm bedauert worden seyn,	I shall have been pitied by him.

Practice.

He is called an honest man.
Books are written by us.
I had been prevented by them.
Children will be punished.
I should have been laughed at by you.
Shall I not have been pitied by him?

Honest, ehrlicher.
to prevent, verhindern.

to punish, strafen.
to laugh at, auslachen.

RULE II.

Passives may be changed into actives, and active into pas=
sives, without altering the meaning of a sentence.

Examples.

<i>Pass.</i> Mein Bruder wird gelobt,	My brother is praised.
<i>Act.</i> Die Leute loben mei= nen Bruder,	The people praise my brother.

Pass. Ich werde gelobt von Jedermann, I am praised by every body.

Act. Jedermann lobt mich, Every body praises me.

Observe. In order to know whether the verb *to be*, must be expressed by *werden*, or *seyn*; the distinction is this: if the sentence can be changed into the active form, as in the above examples, *werden* must be used, if not, *seyn* must be used.

Examples with Seyn.

Gott sey gelobt,

God be praised.

Er ist verarmt,

He is empoverished.

RULE III.

The passive is used in speaking of things done by the assistance of man, and the active in expressing the operations of inanimate objects.

Examples.

Passive.

The coat is making,
Der Rock wird gemacht.

The ship is building,
Das Schiff wird gebaut.

Active.

The fire is burning,
Das Feuer brennt.

The sun is rising,
Die Sonne geht auf.

Practice.

The house was repairing.

The mill is building.

The table is making.

The fire is lighting.

The candle is burning.

The pot is boiling.

to repair, ausbessern.
mill, Mühle, f.

to light, anzünden.
to boil, kochen.

§. II. Neuter Verbs.

Whenever neuter verbs are employed actively, they are conjugated with *haben*, instead of *seyn*. (*Vide Obs. page 183.*)

The following verbs take *haben* and *seyn*, according to the nature of the sentences in which they are used. *Aus- brennen*, to burn out; *ausdampfen*, to exhale, or evaporate; *dringen*, to crowd; *eilen*, to hasten; *fortfahren*, to drive on; *flattern*, to flutter; *fließen*, to flow; *frieren*, to freeze; *folgen*, to follow; *bekommen*, to get; *plätzen*, to crack; *reiten*, to ride; *schlagen*, to strike; *ausschlagen*, to kick; *zurückschlagen*, to repulse; *segeln*, to sail; *schwimmen*, to swim.

Examples with Seyn.

The water *is* frozen,
Das Wasser ist gefroren.

The whole city *is* consumed,
Die ganze Stadt ist abge-
brannt.

I rode to London,
Ich bin nach London gerit-
ten.

I followed him, (*his person*),
Ich bin ihm nachgefolgt.

Examples with Haben.

It *has* frozen,
Es hat gefroren.

The fire *is*, (*or has*) burnt out,
Das Feuer hat ausgebrannt.

I *have* tired myself with riding,
Ich habe mich müde geritten.

I followed him (*his advice*),
Ich habe ihm gefolgt.

Practice with Seyn.

The moisture *is* exhaled.
The ship *has* sailed to Ame-
rica.
I *am* in haste.
It *fluttered* in the net.
I *rode* to Bremen.

Moisture, Feuchtigkeit, *f*.
ship, Schiff, *n*.
net, Netz, *n*.

Practice with Haben.

The coal *has* evaporated.
The ship *sailed* fast.
I *have* hastened my journey.
The bird *has* fluttered a long
time.
I *have* ridden three days.

coal, Kohle, *f*.
journey, Reise, *f*.

§. III. *Compound Verbs.*

RULE.

The separable particles are placed at the end of the sentence, in the present and perfect tenses, and imperative mood; unless the sentence be influenced by a relative pro-

noun, or a conjunction, in which instance the verb is placed at the end of the sentence, with the particle prefixed to it.

In the following Examples the Particles are separated from the Verbs.

Present.

Sch bereite mich vor,	I prepare.
Sch stehe alle Tage um fünf Uhr des Morgens auf,	I rise every day at five o'clock in the morning.
Sch schreibe alle meine Brie- fe ab,	I copy all my letters.

Imperfect.

Sie hielten mich zu lang auf,	They detained me too long.
Wir standen um zwei Uhr vom Tische auf,	We rose from table at two o'clock.

Imperative.

Sehen Sie Ihre Erzählung fort,	Continue your narrative.
Nehmen Sie mir die Last ab,	Take the burthen from me.

In the following Examples the Particles are joined with the Verb.

Sie glauben nicht, daß ich alle meine Briefe ab- schreibe,	They do not believe that I copy all my letters.
Wenn ich nicht wegginge,	If I did not go away.
Der Brief des Fürsten, wel- chen ich gestern abschrieb,	The prince's letter, which I copied yesterday.

Practice.

I begin the book.
I copied the prince's letters with great care.
Go thither, along with thy brother.
He prepared for a long journey.
Copy the letters this evening.
We came back to London, in a coach, within three days.
We communicated the information to our friends.

If the sun break through the clouds.
Do you not believe that I copy all his letters.

To begin, anfangen.
to copy, abschreiben.
care, Sorgfalt, f.
thither, dorthin.

to go along with, mitgehen.
to come back, zurückkommen.
to communicate, mittheilen.
to break through, durchbrechen.

Observations.

1. Zu in the infinitive, and ge in the participle, are placed between the separable particle and the verb.

Examples.

Ich verlange auszugehen, I desire *to go out*.
Meinen Sie ihm nachzufolgen? Do you mean *to follow* him?
Er hat seine Reise aufgeschoben, He has *deferred* his voyage.

2. When verbs are compounded with inseparable particles, the ge and zu are not placed between the particle and verb.

Examples.

Ich habe seine Verzeihung erhalten, I have *obtained* his pardon.
(not ergehaltem,)
Ich habe ihm viel zu danken, I have much *to thank* him for.
(not verdankt,)

3. When a compound verb is followed by another verb, the separable particle is put before the second verb.

Examples.

Sie singen früh Morgens mit They began *to fight* early in
Sonnen Aufgang an zu schla- the morning, at the rising of
gen, (not zu schlagen an,) the sun.
Ich fing nach dreien Tagen wie- After three days I began *to reco-*
der an zu genesen, (not zu ge- ver.
nesen an,)

4. Verbs compounded with miß, admit ge before the particle.

Examples.

Wir haben gemißbilliget, We have *disapproved*.
Er hat sie gemißhandelt, He has *ill-treated* her.

§. IV. Reflective Verbs.

1. Those verbs which are called reflective, have the pronouns mich, dich, &c. immediately after them in the simple

tenses : and immediately after the auxiliary verb in the compound tenses.

Examples.

Ich tröste mich und er wird sich trösten,	I comfort <i>myself</i> , and he will comfort <i>himself</i> .
Er tröstet sich mit leerer Hoffnung,	He comforts himself with vain hope.
Er hat sich mit leerer Hoff= nung getröstet,	He has consoled himself with vain hope.

2. "Those verbs, by which we express things that happen of themselves, or inward actions of the mind, are always reflective."

Examples.

The wind changes (<i>itself</i> ,) Der Wind ändert sich.	I remember (<i>myself</i> ,) Ich erinnere mich.
The day declines (<i>itself</i> ,) Der Tag neiget sich.	I recollect (<i>myself</i> ,) Ich besinne mich.

For other particulars respecting these verbs, *Vide* the Practice and observations, which follow the conjugation, p. 210 to 212, &c.

§. V. *Impersonal Verbs.*

An impersonal verb is that whose agent, or nominative is unknown, or considered as such, this unknown agent is expressed in English, by the word *it*, and in German, by *es*.

RULE I.

The impersonal form is used to denote the affections of the body, or mind.

Examples.

Es ist mir kalt,	I am cold.
Es ist mir wohl,	I am well.
Es hungert mich, dich, ihn, sie, uns, &c.	I am, he is, thou art, she is, we are hungry.

Es dünkt mir,	}	It seems, or appears to me.
Es kommt mir vor,		
Es schläfert ihn,		He is sleepy.
Es verdrießt, or es ärgert sie,		It vexes her, or them.
Es glüht, siedet, flammt mir im Busen,		It glows, boils, burns in my bosom, or my bosom glows.

Practice.

I am sorry (*for it.*) I am warm. You are thirsty. I am disgusted. I am ill. It pleases me, or I am glad of it. I want money. I repent. It surprises me. It grieves me.

RULE II.

Es, *it*, is also used for *there*, before *seyn*, *geben*, and *liegen*.

Examples.

Es giebt Leute, welche sagen,	=	There are people who say.
Es tönt, schallt, kracht in der Luft,		It sounds, resounds, cracks in the air.
Gott ist es, dem wir unser Leben schuldig sind,	=	It is to God we owe our life.
Es liegen Bücher auf dem Tische,		There are some books upon the table.
Es rauscht, saust, weht, tobt, leuchtet um mich her,		It roars, whistles, blows, rages, lightens round me.

1. "Es is sometimes used for *so*, which is often omitted in English."

Examples.

Ich glaube es,	I believe so.
Sind Sie zufrieden?	Are you contented?
Nein, ich bin es nicht,	No, I am not (<i>so.</i>)

2. In answer to questions, instead of saying, *es ist mir*, *it is I*; say: *ich bin es*, *I am it*; so, *er ist es nicht*, *it is not him*, (*he is not it*); *Sie sind es nicht*, *it is not they*, (*they are not it*.)

3. *Es* is sometimes used before the verb, and the real nominative is placed after, by way of explanation. Ex. *Es lehrt uns die Erfahrung*, *experience teaches us*.

RULE III.

The indefinite pronoun *man*, is Englished by *we*, *people*, *they*, *men*, *one* and *it*, followed by *is*, *was*, &c.

Observe. *Man* is used as *on* in French.

Examples.

<i>Man muß wissen,</i>	<i>We ought to know.</i>
<i>Man arbeitet den ganzen Tag,</i>	<i>People, they, &c. work the whole day.</i>
<i>Man sagt, daß man in diesem Lande Wein verkauft,</i>	<i>It is said that in this country wine is sold.</i>
<i>Man trinkt den besten Wein,</i>	<i>One drinks the best wine.</i>
<i>Man sagt, (on dit,)</i>	<i>People say, they say, men say, it is said, &c.</i>

CHAP. VII.

Rules for the Construction of the Participles.

RULE I.

The present and perfect participles, like adjectives, must agree with the nouns to which they refer, in gender, number, and case: unless used adverbially.

Examples.

<i>Ein liebender Vater,</i>	<i>A loving father.</i>
<i>Ein geliebter Vater,</i>	<i>A beloved father.</i>
<i>Der liebende Vater,</i>	<i>The loving father.</i>

Der geliebte Vater,	The beloved father.
Ein reizendes Frauenzim- mer,	A charming lady.
Das reizende Frauenzim- mer,	The charming lady.
Eine reizende Frau,	A charming woman.
Die reizende Frau,	The charming woman.
Ein erbitterter Feind,	An embittered enemy.
Der erbitterte Feind,	The embittered enemy.
Der Feind ist erbittert,	The enemy is embittered.
Ich fand ihn sterbend,	I found him dying.
Die Frau ist reizend,	The woman is charming.
Das Frauenzimmer ist rei- zend,	That lady is charming.
Der blendend weiße Schnee,	The dazzling white snow.

Practice.

The complaining man.	A playful child.
A written book.	A laughing woman.
A beloved child.	A beloved daughter.
He died standing.	He spoke sitting.
The man was dying.	The man is dead.

RULE II.

The present participle in English, is generally rendered by the infinitive in German, particularly when used as a substantive.

Obs. When ohne zu, without, is used, ohne retains its place and zu goes immediately before the verb.

Examples.

Das Laufen des Wassers,	The running of the water.
Er brachte eine Stunde mit Erzählen zu,	He spent an hour in <i>rela- ting</i> it.
Er gieng ohne etwas zu sagen vorbei,	He passed by <i>without say- ing</i> any thing.
Das Reisen ist nützlich,	Travelling is useful.

Practice.

Boys are more fond of playing than working.
 He gets his living by begging.
 I am tired of standing.
 I come from writing.
 At the rising of the sun.
 It is the boiling of the pot.
 I am weary of talking.

More fond, mehr lieben.
 playing, spielen.
 working, arbeiten.
 to get, verdienen.
 living, Brot.
 by begging, mit Betteln.

tired, müde.
 to rise, aufgehen.
 boiling, Kochen.
 pot, Topf, *m.*
 weary, müde.
 talking, Reden, *n.*

Observations.

1. The present participle is sometimes rendered by *als*, *da*, *nachdem*, *indem*, *und weil*, &c. according to the sense of the sentence.

Examples.

Als ich zu Nacht gegessen hatte legte ich mich schlafen,	<i>Having</i> supped, I laid myself down to sleep, <i>or</i> when I had supped, I laid myself down to sleep.
Da seine Mutter dieses hörte, wurde sie ungehalten,	His mother hearing this became angry.
Nachdem ich die Sache überlegt habe,	<i>Having</i> considered the matter.
Indem ich mich auf sein Wort verließ wurde ich betrogen,	Relying upon his word I was deceived.
Wie ich aus der Straße gieng sah ich meinen Freund,	<i>Going</i> along the street I saw my friend.
Er lächelte, und schien meinen Entschluß zu billigen,	He smiled seeming to applaud my resolution.
Nach Erblickung einer Windmüh- le, die stille stand,	Upon the sight of a windmill <i>standing</i> still, (<i>which stood</i> <i>still</i>).
Weil er ihnen nicht anstand, so wurde er verworfen,	Being disliked by them, he was rejected.

2. Reflective verbs are sometimes expressed by the present participle ; as,

Sch habe mich müde gegangen, I have wearied myself by walking.

3. There are some instances in which the Germans use the present participle ; as,

Lebend oder sterbend gab er ein	<i>Living or dying</i> he set a good
gutes Beispiel	example.
Er fiel nieder redend,	He dropped down <i>speaking</i> .

4. The participle *going* is rendered in the following manner.

Ich bin im Begriff zu verreisen,	I am <i>going</i> to depart.
Ich bin im Begriff nach Hause	
zu gehen,	I am <i>going</i> home.

CHAP. VIII.

Rules for the placing of Adverbs.

RULE I.

Adverbs are placed immediately after the verb, unless the object intervenes : but they must precede past participles and infinitives.

Examples.

Er kam bald,	He came soon.
Das Kind, welches in der Wiege lag, weinte bitterlich,	The child that lay in the cradle, wept bitterly.
Wir haben hier keine Bekanntschaft,	We have no acquaintance here.
Er behandelt den Gegenstand vortrefflich,	He treats the subject excellently.
Ich habe meinen Bruder abermal, or wieder gewarnt,	I have warned my brother again.
Käme ich zu früh, so würde mir die Zeit lang,	Had I come too soon, the time would have appeared long to me.
Ich werde bald meine Schulden bezahlen,	I shall soon pay my debts.

Practice.

He goes fast.	If he came soon.
When I run fast I perspire.	Have you spoken well?

You will hardly finish
to-morrow.

Have you put the hats se-
parately?

He has spoken wisely.

I have heard your friend

Did you speak freely?

well spoken of.

RULE II.

Adverbs of time are placed before all other adverbs; and when a sentence commences with an adverb, for the sake of emphasis, then the nominative follows the verb.

Examples.

Sie haben heute nicht studirt, You have not studied to-day.

Heute haben Sie nicht stu- You have not studied to-day
dirt,

Wir waren gestern im Schau- We were at the play yester-
spiele, day.

Gestern saß ich auf einer Bank Yesterday I was sitting on a
beim Mondlichte, bench by moonlight.

Er wird morgen hier seyn, He will be here to-morrow.

Practice.

I was with him yesterday in the evening.

I have read the book to-day.

I did not sleep there last night.

He has seen the king to-day.

CHAP IX.

Rules respecting Prepositions.

RULE I.

The prepositions *anstatt*, or *statt*, instead of *halben*, or *halber*, on account of; *wegen*, on account of, because of; *ungeachtet*, notwithstanding, &c. require the genitive; (*Vide. Prep. p. 227.*) *Halben* or *halber*, is placed after the

noun; but *wegen*, and *ungeachtet*, may be used either before or after. *An* is sometimes separated from *statt*.

Examples.

* <i>An des Fürsten statt</i> (or anstatt des Fürsten) war ein Minister da,	A minister was there instead of the prince.
<i>An meiner statt</i> , or <i>anstatt</i> <i>meiner</i> ,	In my stead, or instead of me.
<i>An Kindes statt</i> annehm= men,	To adopt.
<i>Des Königs halber</i> ,	For the sake of the king, or on account of &c.
† <i>Bergnügens halber</i> ,	On account of (or for the sake of) pleasure.
<i>Wegen des Nachbars</i> , or <i>des</i> <i>Nachbars wegen</i> ,	On account of the neighbour.
<i>Des langen Processes hal-</i> <i>ben ist der Mann verarmt</i> ,	The man was impoverished <i>by</i> (or on account of) the long trial.

Practice.

Instead of the brother. In his stead, or instead of him.
Notwithstanding his art he was, (*however*) overreached.
I do it only for the sake of the company.
He does it out of friendship.
I love him notwithstanding his ugliness.
On account of his industry.

Art, Geschicklichkeit, <i>f</i> .	company, Gesellschaft, <i>f</i> .
overreach, übertreffen.	ugliness, Häßlichkeit, <i>f</i> .
I do it only, Ich thue es bloß.	industry, Fleiß, <i>m</i> .

Obs. *Halben* and *wegen* may be united with *mein*, *dein*, *sein*,
ihr, *unser*, *euer*, thus; *meinet=wegen*, or *halben*, instead of *meiner=*
wegen &c. Ex. Er that es *meinet=halben*, *deinet=*, *seinet=*, *ihr=*,
unsert=, *euret=wegen* or *halben*, he did it on *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*,
our, *your*, account.

* When a preposition comes first, the nominative follows the verb.

† *Halben* is used when the article is omitted.

RULE II.

The prepositions *aus*, *außer*, *bei*, &c. have the dative after them. (*Vide Prep. p. 228.*) *Entgegen*, *zunächst*, and *zuwider*, always follow the substantive, and *nach*, likewise may when it signifies, *according to*.

Examples.

Aus, *außer*, *out of* &c.

Ich sehe <i>aus</i> seinem Briefe,	I see <i>by</i> his letter.
Ich schließe <i>aus</i> seinem Be- zeigen,	I infer <i>from</i> his conduct.
Sie kamen <i>aus</i> der Kirche,	They came <i>out of</i> the church.
Gehen Sie mir <i>aus</i> den Au- gen,	Go <i>out of</i> my sight.
Er speisete <i>außer</i> dem Hause zu Mittage,	He dined <i>out of</i> the house.
Er ist <i>aus</i> einer alten Fa- milie,	He is <i>of</i> an ancient family.

Bei.

Er ist <i>bei</i> meinem Bruder,	He is <i>with</i> my brother.
Ich will <i>bei</i> ihm ansprechen,	I will call <i>upon</i> him.
Es ist <i>bei</i> dem Schneider,	It is <i>at</i> the tailor's.
<i>Bei</i> Tage,	<i>By</i> day, or <i>in the</i> day time.
Sie stand <i>bei</i> mir,	She stood <i>by</i> , or <i>near</i> me.

Entgegen.

Er reitet dem Winde entge- gen,	He rides <i>against</i> the wind.
Dieses ist der Natur der Din- ge entgegen,	This is <i>contrary to</i> the na- ture of things.

Nach.

Meiner Meinung <i>nach</i> ist er auf einem falschen Wege,	<i>According to</i> my opinion he is in a wrong way.
---	---

Nach.

Dieser Rechnung nach,
 Nach dieser Rechnung,
 Ich gehe nach London,
 Als ich nach Hause ging,

}

*According to this account.**I am going to London.**When I went home.*

Mit.

Wollen Sie mit mir kommen?

Will you come with me?

Ich habe Mitleiden mit ihm,

I take compassion on him.

Er schnitt es mit einem Messer entzwei,

He cut it in two with a knife.

Seit.

Seit dem Tode seines Vaters,

Since the death of his father.

Von.

Er spricht von mir,

He speaks of me.

Sie ist eben von meinem Bruder gekommen,

She is just come from my brother.

Vom Anfange der Welt,

From the beginning of the world.

Zu, to &c.

Ich bin zu Hause gewesen,

I have been at home.

Zu einer andern Zeit,

At another time.

Zunächst.

Er saß mir zunächst,

He sat next to me.

Zuwider.

Dieses ist den Gesetzen der Natur zuwider,

This is contrary to the laws of nature.

Practice.

Do not drink out of this glass.

I infer from his conduct.

He comes out of the garden.

I was with my brother. He sat near me.

I thought your friend was with you.

Are there fine walks near the house?
 To work by candle light. By night.
 My father opposes this design.
 If we compare him with his brother.
 I have received a letter by the post.
 Most of us were of the same opinion.
 That book treats of the immortality of the soul.
 I shall come to you to night.
 He was unhappy till the last moment of his life.

RULE III.

The prepositions *durch*, *für*, &c. have the accusative after them. (*Vide Prep. p. 230.*) *Durch* is sometimes placed after its substantive.

Examples.

Durch, through.

<i>Ich reisete durch gefährliche Wälder,</i>	<i>I travelled through danger- ous forests.</i>
<i>Durch ihn bin ich glücklich,</i>	<i>Through him I am happy.</i>
<i>Er sieht durch das Fenster,</i>	<i>He looks through the win- dow.</i>
<i>Durch Sturm erobert,</i>	<i>Taken by storm.</i>
<i>Ich lag die ganze Nacht durch im Schlafrocke in einem Bette,</i>	<i>I lay in my bed the whole night through in my night gown.</i>

Für, for.

<i>Für wen stimmt ihr?</i>	<i>For whom are you? or for whom do you vote?</i>
<i>Es ist hier kein Platz für sie,</i>	<i>There is no place for them here.</i>
<i>Er fochte für das allgemeine Beste,</i>	<i>He fought for the public good.</i>
<i>Mein Haus ist für Sie und Ihre Freunde offen,</i>	<i>My house is open for you and your friends.</i>
<i>Ich habe ihn für Sie gehalten,</i>	<i>I took him for you.</i>

Gegen, *towards, to, &c.*

Die Franzosen marschirten gegen den Rhein,	The French marched <i>to-</i> <i>wards</i> the Rhine.
Es ist gegen meine Pflicht,	It is <i>against</i> my duty.
Sie ist mildthätig gegen die Armen,	She is charitable <i>towards</i> the poor.
Es ist gegen die Russen ge- richtet,	It is done <i>in opposition to</i> the Russians.
Gottes unendliche Barmher- zigkeit gegen uns hat keine Gränzen,	God's infinite mercy <i>to-</i> <i>wards</i> us has no limits.
Er ist nichts gegen ihn,	He is nothing <i>to</i> him.

In the following sentence *gen* is substituted for *gegen*.

Er richtete seine Augen <i>gen</i> Himmel,	He turned his eyes <i>towards</i> heaven.
---	--

Ohne, *without, French sans*

Daß weiß ich ohne dieß,	I know it <i>without</i> that.
Ich kann nicht ohne einen Freund leben,	I cannot live <i>without</i> a friend.
Er ist ohne Hut ausgegangen,	He is gone out <i>without</i> a hat.
Ich werde ohne Sie nichts thun,	I will do nothing <i>without</i> you.
Es ist ohne Zweifel das Beste was Sie thun können,	It is <i>without</i> doubt the best thing you can do.

Um, *about, round, &c.*

Sie sitzen um den Tisch,	They sit <i>about</i> the table.
Das Schnupftuch war ihr um den Kopf gebunden,	The handkerchief was tied <i>round (about)</i> her head.
Ich ging um die Stadt herum spazieren,	I walked <i>round about</i> the town.
Um wie viel Uhr?	<i>At</i> what o'clock?
Um zwei Uhr,	<i>At</i> two o'clock.

Einen Tag um den andern,	Every other day.
Ich bin den ganzen Tag um ihn,	I am all day <i>with</i> him (<i>about</i> him).
Um das Leben kommen,	To lose one's life.
Ich lobe dich um deinen Fleiß,	I praise you <i>for</i> your diligence.
Ich bitte Sie um Verzeihung,	I beg your pardon.

Wider, against, contrary to.

Wider seine Gewohnheit,	<i>Contrary to</i> his custom.
Beschwor er sich wider den König?	Did he conspire <i>against</i> the king?
Es ist wider Ihre Pflicht,	It is <i>against</i> your duty.

Observe. *Wieder*, signifies *again*; as,

Hat er nicht wieder an Sie geschrieben?	Did he not write to you <i>again</i> ?
---	--

Practice.

Athens flourished by (*through*) just laws.

I am happy *through* him.

He gained his reputation by (*through*) his good conduct.

All things were created by (*through*) the word of God.

This passage is too obscure for me.

He was a learned man for those times.

I board for six dollars a week.

I have paid ten dollars for it.

Do as you would be done by, or do unto others as you would, that others should do unto you.

You are very kind *to* me, (*towards me.*)

They marched *against* the enemy.

Four thousand men, besides women and children.

There is seldom a week without some feast of this kind.

I cannot do it without the consent of my father.

It was much about the same time.

This picture was sold for five guineas.

She sold her house at a very high price.

I requested nothing of him but what was just.

I am very sorry for you.

I shall come again directly.

RULE IV.

When motion *to a place* is expressed by the prepositions *an, auf, hinter, &c.* the accusative is required; but if they express motion, or rest *in a place*, the dative is used. This distinction may be made intelligible, by asking the question *when? where? or in what place?* then the answer will be in the dative; but if we ask *whereto? or to what place?* the answer will be in the accusative.

Examples.

A. Ich gehe in die Kirche, I am going into the church, or
I go to the church, (*whereto?*) answer, to the church.

In this sentence the accusative is used, because motion towards the object is implied.

D. Ich gehe in der Kirche, I go in the church, (*where?*)
answer, in the church.

Here the dative is used, because motion in a place is implied.

D. Ich stehe in der Kirche, I stand in the church, (*where?*)

Here again the dative is used, because rest in a place is implied.

D. Er sitzt auf dem Stuhle, He sits on the chair, (*where?*)
*(*wo?*)

A. Er setzt sich auf den Stuhl, (wohin?) He sets, (*or places*) himself
upon the chair.

D. Es liegt auf dem Tische, It lies upon the table.
(*wo?*)

A. Er legt etwas auf den Tisch, (wohin?) He puts something on the table.

D. Er steht an der Wand, He stands against the wall.
(*wo?*)

A. Er stellt sich an die Wand, (wohin?) He places himself against the wall.

* If we can ask *wo? woran? an wem?* in German the dative must be used, (*wo? where? woran? whereon? whereat? whereby? an wem? to whom?*) but the accusative is used if we can ask *wohin? (whither? what way?) an wen? whom?*

D. Die Reihe ist an mir, It is my turn.
(an wem?)

A. Die Reihe kommt an mich, (an wen?) It comes to my turn.

In the following instances the dative is used, because a state of rest is implied :

Hinter der Kirche wohnt der Prediger, The preacher lives *behind* the church.

In der Stadt ist Feuer, *In* the town is fire.

Neben der Thür hängt sein Bildniß, His likeness hangs *near* the door.

Ueber mir wohnt ein Künstler, An artist lives *above* me.

Unter mir ist ein Keller, *Under* me is a cellar.

Vor dem Hause steht ein Baum, A tree stands *before* the house.

Zwischen den Bergen liegt mein Garten, My garden lies *between* the mountains.

Practice.

Accusative.

He goes to every place.

I sat down at the table.

Put every thing in its right place.

Lay it upon the table.

He mounted the hill in great haste.

He writes on fine paper.

All our hopes are founded on God's bounty.

He went behind the door.

He put the book into his pocket.

We go to school.

When it comes to your turn.

He leaped over a brook.

He writes on history.

It was divided among them.

To throw something before the door.

Dative.

He lies on the ground.

He sat between the brother and the sister.

He is writing at the desk.

The book lies upon the table.

There sits a bird upon a tree.

It lies behind the door.

He is in the school.

On his arrival in London.

They live in peace together.

He stood near me.

A friend is known in time of need.

His room is above mine.

I fell asleep over the book.

He was occupied with a work.

It was the custom among the Greeks.

To fly before one's enemy.

CHAP. X.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

RULE I.

The conjunctions *und*, *aber*, *sondern*, *weder*, &c. connect similar cases, moods and tenses.

Examples.

Zeit und Stunde sind noch nicht da,	The time and hour are not yet come.
Der Glanz der Sonne, des Mondes, und der Sterne,	The brightness of the sun, moon, and stars.
Gieb es dem Vater und dem Sohne, (not den Sohn,)	Give it to the father and (<i>to the</i>) son.
Ich kenne die Frau, aber ich kenne nicht den Mann,	I know the wife, but I do not know the husband.
Ich trinke weder Kaffee, noch Thee, noch Chocolate,	I drink neither coffee, tea, nor chocolate.
Was wir wünschten und hofften, (not hoffen,)	What we wished and hoped.

Practice.

Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my word shall not pass away.

I know neither his father nor brother.

Time and chance are things on which much depends.

He does nothing but eat, drink, and sleep.

I dined with him yesterday and the day before yesterday, and I shall dine there again to-day.

I will neither eat nor drink.

Fear God and honor the king.

To do good, and to shun evil, is the duty of all men.

Will pass away, werden vergehen.	he does nothing but, er thut weiter nichts als.
on which, von denen.	fear, fürchten.
much depends, vieles abhängt,	honor, ehren.
	to shun, meiden.

RULE II.

Some conjunctions require *so* after them in the German, (*Vide p. 237 and 238.*) which is not expressed in English. This throws the nominative after the verb in the subsequent sentence.

Examples.

Wann es Zeit ist, so werde ich kommen,	When it is time I will come.
Ob ich gleich wenig habe, so bin ich doch zufrieden,	Though I have little, yet I am contented.
Wann ihr wieder kommet, so will ich es euch geben,	When you come again, I will give it you.
Wenn Sie es thun, so sind Sie zu tadeln,	If you do it, you are to blame.
Als wir zu Abend gegessen hatten, so giengen wir spazieren,	Having supped, we took a walk.

Practice.

If I were rich, I should have friends.

Since, or because it is so fine, we will take a walk.

However handsome she may be, yet, or nevertheless she is not amiable.

Having this opportunity, I could not omit writing to you.

If you will come to me, I will give it you.

When I see him, I will tell it to him.

If we say yes, he also says yes.

Since, weil solches.

fine, schönes.

we will, so wollen wir.

amiable, liebenswürdig.

omit, unterlassen.

 RULE III.

The conjunctions *obschon*, *obgleich*, *obwohl*, have generally *ob* separated from them, when a personal pronoun is the nominative; but when the nominative is not a personal pronoun, *ob* is not separated.

Examples.

Ob er schon reich ist, (or ob= schon er reich ist,) so ist er doch unglücklich,	Though he is rich, yet he is unhappy.
Ob er gleich dieses sagt,	Though he says this.
Ob ich wohl gern helfen wollte, nichts desto weniger ist es mir wegen meiner Armuth unmöglich,	Although I would very willingly help, it is nevertheless impossible, on account of my poverty.
Obgleich dieses Pferd kein Engländer ist,	Although this is no English horse.

Practice.

Though I do not know.

Although we are rich, yet we cannot assist every body.

Though he knew she hated him, yet he insisted on marrying her.

Although you are learned, yet there is still much that you do not know.

Though you are older than he, yet I doubt whether you be so learned.

Though his proposition met with some opposition.

Know, weiß.

every body, allen Leuten.

hated, haßte.

insisted, bestand darauf.

proposition, Vorschlag.

RULE IV.

The conjunction daß, expressed or understood, requires the indicative, when a certainty is spoken of; but the subjunctive when desire, doubt or uncertainty is implied, and when the verb which goes before is conditional, either simple or compound.

Indicative.

Wir wissen, daß Crösus reich gewesen ist,	We know that Croesus was rich.
Ich versichere dich, daß ich dein Freund bin,	I assure thee that I am thy friend.

Ich weiß er wird heute an- I know, (*that*) he will arrive
kommen, to-day.

Ich glaube es ist Zeit, I believe it is time.

Subjunctive.

Ich wünsche, daß er es nicht I wish that he had not done it,
gethan hätte, (*or*,) (*or*,)

Ich wünsche er hätte es I wish he had not done it.
nicht gethan,

Er will nicht glauben, daß He will not believe that I am
ich sein Freund sey, his friend.

Er fürchtete, er möchte ihn He was afraid, *that* he might
schlagen, or daß er ihn beat him.
schlagen möchte,

Würde man glauben, daß Would one think it were pos-
es möglich wäre, sible.

*Examples.**Indicative.*

I believe he is at home.

We know *that* he is a rich man.

He is of that humor, that no one can agree with him.

I am sorry I have not seen your sister.

Dost thou believe *that* thou art a sinner?

I know *that* it is wrong.

Subjunctive.

I was afraid (*that*) you would not come.

I hope your sister will marry my brother.

We believe that he might have had it.

They tell me that there has been thunder.

Our friend maintains that this will be a fruitful year.

Observe. Daß is sometimes omitted after an expression which implies *a wish, a hope, a prayer, or an assurance*; as in the following, and in some of the preceding examples.

Ich wünsche, Gott wolle Sie in I wish God may take you under
seinen Schutz nehmen, his protection.

Ich hoffe Sie werden es nicht I hope you will not take it amiss.
übel nehmen,

Ich bitte Sie, geben Sie sich keine Mühe, I beg you would give yourself no trouble.
 Er versicherte mich, es wäre wahr, He assured me it was true.
 Ich bitte, Sie wollen es annehmen, I beg you will accept of it.

N. B. The word *but* is differently expressed.

1. At the beginning of a sentence, by *aber*, *allein*; as,
 So sagen Sie, *aber* (or *allein*) ich glaube es nicht, they say so, *but* I do not believe it.

2. *But* is expressed by *sondern*, when the contrary of a negation is used; as,

Sie sind nicht meine Freunde, *sondern* meine Feinde, they are not my friends, *but* my enemies.

3. *But* signifying *only*, is expressed by *nur*; as,

Er hatte nur einen einzigen Freund, he had *but*, (or *only*) one friend.

4. *But* with words expressive of time or age, is *erst*; as,

Sie ist erst sechzehn Jahr alt, she is *but* sixteen years old.
 Es ist erst zwei Uhr, it is *but* two o'clock.

5. *But* after nouns or pronouns of negation, is expressed by *als*; as, *nichts als*, or *nichts anders als*, nothing *but*; *niemand als*, nobody *but*.

6. *But* used in the sense of *except*, is *außer*, *ausgenommen*; as,
 Es ist das letzte Haus außer einem, it is the last house *but* one.

Sie sind alle fleißig, ausgenommen ihr, They are all diligent *but* you.

7. *But*, after *I do not doubt*, signifies *that*, *daß*; as,

Ich zweifle nicht, daß Sie mein Freund sind, I do not doubt, *but* you are my friend.

FAMILIAR DIALOGUES.

Erstes Gespräch.

Guten Morgen mein Herr, Ma-
dame, Mamsell, or Mademoi-
selle,

Guten Tag, mein Herr, &c.

Guten Abend,

Gute Nacht,

Wie befinden Sie sich, mein Herr?

Sehr wohl, ich danke Ihnen,

Ich befinde mich sehr wohl, ich dan-
ke Ihnen,

Es ist mir lieb Sie zu sehen,

Ich hoffe Sie sind wohl,

Nicht sehr wohl,

Ich habe Sie lange nicht gesehen,

Wo sind Sie gewesen?

Ich bin in Paris gewesen,

Wie befindet sich Ihr Herr Bruder?

Er ist ziemlich wohl,

Er befindet sich ziemlich wohl,

Ich glaube er befindet sich wohl,

Er befand sich gestern Abends
wohl,

Wie befinden sich Ihr Herr Vater
und Ihre Frau Mutter?

Meine Mutter befindet sich nicht
wohl,

Sie befand sich gestern früh nicht
wohl,

Es thut mir leid,

First Dialogue.

Good morning, Sir, Madam,
Miss.

Good day, Sir, &c.

Good evening.

Good night.

How do you do, Sir?

Very well, I thank you.

I am very well, I thank you.

I am glad to see you.

I hope you are well.

Not very well.

I have not seen you for a long
time.

Where have you been?

I have been in Paris.

How does your brother do?

} He is tolerably well.

I believe he is well.

He was well last night.

How are your father and
mother.

My mother is not well.

She was ill yesterday morn-
ing.

I am sorry for it.

Zweites Gespräch.

Was ist die Uhr?

Wie viel Uhr ist es?

Wie viel ist die Uhr?

Second Dialogue.

} What o'clock is it?

Es ist ein Uhr,	It is one o'clock.
Es ist zwei Uhr,	It is two o'clock.
Es ist zwölf Uhr,	It is twelve o'clock.
Es ist ein Viertel nach zwölf,	} It is a quarter past twelve.
Es ist ein Viertel auf eins,	
Es ist halb ein Uhr,	} It is half past twelve.
Es ist halb eins,	
Es ist drei Viertel auf eins,	} It wants a quarter to one.
Es fehlt ein Viertel zu eins,	
Es ist ein Viertel auf drei,	It is a quarter past two.
Es ist zwanzig Minuten nach zwei,	It is twenty minutes past two.
Es ist zwanzig Minuten vor acht,	It is twenty minutes to eight.
Wie viel fehlt es zu zehn?	} How much does it want of ten?
Wie viel ist es auf zehn?	
Es fehlt zehn Minuten zu zehn,	} It is ten minutes to ten.
Es ist fünfzig Minuten auf zehn,	
Es ist zehn Minuten vor zehn,	} It wants ten minutes to ten.
Wann sind Sie gekommen?	
Ich kam ungefähr um vier Uhr,	When did you come?
Es schlug eben sieben Uhr,	I came about four o'clock.
Hat es schon geschlagen?	It just struck seven o'clock.
Es wird bald acht schlagen,	Has it already struck?
Wie viel schlägt es jetzt?	It will soon strike eight.
Es kann auf den Schlag neun seyn,	What does it strike now?
Das ist Ihre Zeit zu frühstücken,	It may be on the stroke of nine.
nicht wahr?	That is your time for breakfasting, is it not?

Drittes Gespräch.

Third Dialogue.

Sprechen Sie Deutsch, mein Herr?	Do you speak German, Sir?
Ich spreche es ein wenig,	I speak it a little.
Ich verstehe es besser als ich es sprechen kann,	I understand it better than I can speak it.
Sprechen Sie mit mir,	Speak with me.
Verstehen Sie mich?	Do you understand me?
Sprechen Sie mit ihm, (ihr,)	Speak with him, (her.)
Habe ich richtig ausgesprochen?	Did I pronounce right?
Sie sprechen sehr gut Deutsch,	You speak German very well.
Sie schmeicheln mir,	You flatter me.
Sind Sie in Deutschland gewesen?	Have you been in Germany?
Nein, niemals, aber ich lerne die deutsche Sprache,	No, never, but I learn the German language.
Wie lange haben Sie gelernt?	How long have you learnt?
Fünf Monathe,	Five months.
Das ist nur eine kurze Zeit, ich wundere mich, daß Sie schon so gut sprechen,	That is but a short time, I wonder you speak so well already.

Was denken Sie von der deutschen Sprache?

Ich denke sie (es) ist eine sehr nützliche Sprache,

Sie ist sehr wortreich,

Verstehen Sie was Sie lesen?

Ich verstehe mehr als ich reden kann,

Wie nennen Sie das auf Deutsch?

Lassen Sie uns Deutsch sprechen,

Das ist ein gutes Mittel, es zu lernen,

Mit wem sprechen Sie?

Was sagen Sie?

Wovon sprechen Sie?

Sprechen Sie zu mir?

Sprechen Sie ein wenig lauter,

What do you think of the German language?

I think it is a very useful language.

It is very copious.

Do you understand what you read?

I understand more than I can speak.

What do you call that in German?

Let us speak German.

That is a good way to learn it.

With whom do you speak?

What do you say?

Of what do you speak?

Do you speak to me?

Speak a little louder.

Viertes Gespräch.

Was ist es für Wetter?

Es ist schön (schönes) Wetter,

Scheint die Sonne?

Ja, mein Herr, und es ist sehr warm,

Ist es heute gut Wetter gewesen?

Das Wetter ist den ganzen Tag schön gewesen,

Wie ist das Wetter?

Es ist nicht zu warm und nicht zu kalt,

Das Wetter hat sich geändert,

Es ist sehr windig,

Die Wolken sind sehr dick,

Ich fürchte, wir werden Regen bekommen,

Es rieselt, es wird regnen,

Es wird bald regnen,

Es fängt an zu regnen, schneien,

Es ist schlechtes (schlecht) Wetter,

Es ist schmutzig,

Es ist trocken, naß, regnet, stürmisch, windig, veränderlich Wetter,

Fourth Dialogue.

What kind of weather is it?

It is fine weather.

Does the sun shine?

Yes, Sir, and it is very warm.

Has it been good weather to-day?

The weather has been fine the whole day.

How is the weather?

It is neither too warm nor too cold.

The weather has changed.

It is very windy.

The clouds are very thick.

I fear we shall have rain.

It drizzles, it will rain.

It will soon rain.

It begins to rain, to snow.

It is bad weather.

It is dirty.

It is dry, wet, rainy, stormy, windy, changeable weather.

Das Wetter klärt sich auf,
Dieser Regen wird bald vorüber
seyn

Wir werden Donner haben,
Der Donner brüllt,

The weather clears up.
This rain will soon be over.

We shall have some thunder.
The thunder roars.

Fünftes Gespräch.

Wo gehen Sie hin?
Ich gehe nach London,
Er gehet nach Deutschland,
Wo wohnt er jetzt?
Er wohnt in der Stadt Hannover,

Er gehet durch (über) Frankreich,

Er ist in (zu) London, Paris, Nea=
pel, Rom, Wien, Petersburg ge=
wesen,

Meine Schwester ist in (zu) Rom
gewesen,

Mein Bruder war in Amsterdam
gewesen,

Ich bin in (zu) London,

Ich gehe ins (aufs) Land,

Ich gehe in das (auf das) Land, }

Wo kommen Sie her?

Ich komme von (aus) dem Lande,

Ich komme von (aus) der Stadt,

Ich komme aus (von) der Straße,

Wir kommen von der Börse,

Ich gehe nach Hause,

Ich komme aus (von) der Kirche,

Sie geht in die Kirche,

Er geht nach Hause,

Ich komme aus dem Zimmer,

Sie kommt aus der Stube,

Ich gehe in die Kammer, in die
Küche, in den Keller, &c.

Sie sind in der Kammer, in der
Küche, in dem Keller, in dem
Hofe, &c.

Fifth Dialogue.

Where are you going?

I am going to London.

He is going to Germany.

Where does he live now?

He lives in the town of Ha=
nover.

He is going through (by the
way of) France.

He has been in (at) London,
Paris, Naples, Rome, Vien=
na, Petersburg.

My sister has been at Rome.

My brother had been in Am=
sterdam.

I am in (at) London.

I am going into the country.

Where do you come from?

I come from (out of) the
country.

I come from (out of) the city.

I come out of (from) the street.

We come from change.

I am going home.

I come from church.

She is going to the church.

He is going home.

I come out of the room.

She comes out of the parlour.

I am going into the chamber,
into the kitchen, into the
cellar, &c.

They are in the chamber; in
the kitchen, in the cellar
in the yard, &c.

Sechstes Gespräch.

Wie alt sind Sie?

Sixth Dialogue.

How old are you?

Ich bin zwanzig Jahr alt,
 Sie sind älter als ich,
 Was ist Ihr Alter?
 Ich bin noch nicht so alt,
 Er ist vierzig Jahr alt,
 Ist Ihre Frau Mutter sehr alt?
 Sie ist fast neunzig Jahre alt,
 Ich fange an alt zu werden,
 Ich bin älter als Sie glauben,
 Sie sind jedoch nicht sechzig Jahre,
 Nicht völlig; allein ich bin doch
 fünf und dreißig,
 Sie sind noch sehr jung; Sie sind
 in der Blüthe Ihres Alters,
 Ich hoffe wohl das Alter von acht-
 zig Jahren zu erreichen, wie
 mein seliger Vater, der vor drei-
 ßig Jahren gestorben ist,

I am twenty years old.
 You are older than I.
 What is your age?
 I am not yet so old.
 He is forty years old.
 Is your mother very old?
 She is almost ninety.
 I begin to grow old.
 I am older than you think.
 Yet you are not sixty.
 Not quite; I am only thirty
 five.
 You are very young still; you
 are in the bloom of your
 age.
 I hope to reach the age of
 eighty, like my deceased fa-
 ther who died thirty years
 ago.

Proverbs and Idiomatic Expressions, &c.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Ein rechtschaffner Mann ist das edelste Werk Gottes, | An honest man is the noblest work of God. |
| 2. Jung gewohnt, alt gethan, | What we are accustomed to in youth, we do in old age. |
| 3. Mit der Zeit pflückt man Rosen, | Be patient, and in time you will succeed. |
| 4. Wissenschaft herrscht immer über Unwissenheit, | Knowledge will always pre-
dominate over ignorance. |
| 5. Müßiggang ist aller Laster An-
fang, | Idleness is the beginning of
all vice. |
| 6. Nach gethaner Arbeit ist gut
ruhen, | After labor rest is sweet. |
| 7. Gesundheit ist der edelste
Schatz, | Health is above wealth. |
| 8. Arbeit macht uns frohe Tage,
Trägheit wird uns selbst zur
Plage, | Labor is a source of plea-
sure; idleness of pain. |
| 9. Durch Schaden wird man klug, | Through misfortune we be-
come prudent. |
| 10. Wer viel schläft, lebt wenig, | Whoever sleeps much, lives
little. |
| 11. Tugend kann nicht genug be-
lohnt werden, | Virtue is worth any price. |
| 12. Glückselig ist der, den Unglück
Weisheit gelehrt hat, | Happy is he, to whom distress
has taught wisdom. |

13. Armuth schändet nicht, aber Folly and vice disgrace, but
Thorheit und Laster, poverty does not.
14. Die Morgenstunde hat Gold } The morning hours are as
im Munde, } valuable as gold.
15. Das ist mir lieb, } Early to bed, and early to rise,
16. Friede ernährt, Unfriede ver- } make a man healthy, weal-
zehrt, } thy and wise.
17. Was deines Amtes nicht ist, } I am glad of that.
18. Gewohnheit ist die andere Na- } Peace nourishes, discord con-
tur, } sumes.
19. Gleich und Gleich gesellt sich } Do not trouble yourself about
gern, } what is not your business.
20. Das Werk lobt den Meister, } Custom is a second nature.
21. Ungerechtes Gut gedeihet nicht, } Birds of a feather, flock to-
22. Ein gutes Gewissen ist ein } gether.
sanftes Ruhelassen, } The work commends the mas-
23. Böse Beispiele verderben gute } ter.
Sitten, } Ill got goods seldom prosper.
24. Eine Hand wäscht die andere, } A good conscience is a soft
25. Wie die Arbeit so der Lohn, } pillow to rest on.
26. Was man gern thut, wird } Bad examples corrupt good
einem leicht, } manners.
27. Ueberfluß macht Ueberdruß, } One hand washes the other.
28. Auch die Sonne ist nicht ohne } One good turn deserves a-
Flecken, } nother.
29. Unglück ist die Schule der } According to the work, so will
Weisheit, } be the reward.
30. Mit dem Hut in der Hand, } What we do willingly, be-
kommt man durch's ganze Land, } comes easy.
31. Besser spät als gar nicht, } Excess causes surfeit.
32. Wer viel anfängt, endet wenig, } The best man has his faults.
33. Der Geiz ist eine Wurzel alles } Misfortune is the school of
Uebels, } wisdom.
34. Lerne dich selbst kennen, } With our hat in our hand, we
35. Eile mit Weile, } may go through every land.
36. Was giebt's? } Better late than never.
37. Hochmuth kommt vor dem } Whoever begins many things,
Fall, } finishes few.
38. Aus Pfennigen werden Gro- } Avarice is the root of all evil.
schen, und aus Groschen Thaler, } Learn to know thyself.
- Soft and fairly goes far.
What is the matter?
Pride will have a fall.
- Pence become shillings, and
shillings become pounds.

39. Thue recht; scheue niemand,
40. Du magst wohl schön und vor-
nehm seyn; doch bilde dir da-
rauf nichts ein,
41. Man ist damit man lebt, man
lebt nicht um zu essen.
42. Mache nicht die Rechnung ohne
den Wirth.
43. Undank ist der Welt Lohn,

44. Gute Bäume tragen zeitig,
45. Genieße was dir Gott beschie-
den,
Entbehre gern was du nicht hast,

Ein jeder Stand hat seinen Frieden,
Ein jeder Stand hat seine Last,
46. Bete und arbeite,
47. Jedem das Seine,
48. Das versteht sich von selbst,
49. Das Kleid macht nicht den
Mann,
50. Fröhlich in Ehren kann nie-
mand wehren,
51. Ein Arbeiter ist seines Lohnes
werth,
52. Wer leicht glaubt, wird leicht
betrogen,
53. Ehrlich währt am längsten,

54. Lotterieloose sind Eingangzet-
tel ins Armenhaus.
55. Noth lehrt beten.
56. Abgeredet vor der Zeit, giebt
nachher keinen Streit,

57. Der Fehler ist so gut wie der
Stehler.
58. Wer sich in Gefahr begiebt,
kommt leicht um,
59. Der Horcher an der Wand hört
seine eigene Schand,

60. Wer andern eine Grube gräbt,
fällt endlich selbst darein,

61. Was Häschen nicht lernt,
lernt Hans nimmer mehr,
- Do right, fear nobody.
Although thou mayst be
handsome and distinguished,
yet do not be conceited.
We ought to eat to live, and not
live to eat.
Do not reckon without the
host.
Ingratitude is the world's re-
ward.
Good trees bear in due season.
Enjoy what God has appoint-
ed to you.
What you have not, dispense
with.
Every station has its comforts.
Every station has its troubles.
Pray and work.
Let every one have his own.
That follows of course.
Dress does not complete the
man.
None can prevent us being
happy if we act honorably.
The labourer is worthy of his
hire.
Whoever easily believes, is
easily deceived.
Honesty holds out longest, or
Honesty is the best policy.
Lottery tickets, are tickets of
admission to the poor house.
Necessity teaches us to pray.
An agreement beforehand,
causes no dispute after-
wards.
The receiver is as bad as the
thief.
Whoever ventures into danger,
will be easily destroyed.
The listener behind the wall,
hears his own disgrace, or
Listeners hear no good of
themselves.
Whoever digs a pit for ano-
ther, ultimately falls into it
himself.
If we do not learn when young,
we shall never learn when
old.

62. Ende gut alles gut, All is well that ends well.
63. Von Verstorbenen und Abwesenden soll man nichts Böses reden, We should never speak ill of the absent, or dead.
64. Wer wenig hat, kann wenig missen, He who has but little, can lose but little.
65. Wo nichts ist, da hat der Kaiser sein Recht verloren, Where nothing is, there the emperor loses his right.
66. Es ist besser allein, als in schlechter Gesellschaft seyn, It is better to be alone, than in bad company.
67. Sage mir mit wem du umgehst, so will ich dir sagen wer du bist, Tell me with whom you associate, and I will tell you who you are.
68. Wer im Sommer nichts sammelt, wird im Winter nichts zu essen haben, Whoever treasures up nothing in summer, will have nothing to eat in winter.
69. Hunger ist der beste Koch, Hunger is the best sauce.
70. Wer nichts wagt, gewinnt auch nichts, Nothing venture, nothing have.
71. Er hat Ehre damit eingelegt, He has gained honor by it.
72. Er schlägt in sich, He reflects, or meditates.
73. Er ist dahinter gekommen, He got into the secret.
74. Ich frage nichts darnach, I do not care for it.
75. Trägheit geht langsam voran, und Armuth folgt schnell hinterdrein, Idleness goes slowly before, and poverty follows quickly after.
76. Es ist kein Unglück so groß, es ist wieder ein Glück dabei, There is no misfortune so great, but there is some advantage attending it.
77. Allzuviel ist ungesund, Too much is unhealthy.
78. Wer nicht hören will, muß fühlen, Whoever will not hear, must feel.
79. Ein magerer Vergleich ist besser als ein fetter Prozeß, A small composition is better than a great lawsuit.
80. Lust und Liebe zum Dinge, macht Händchen alle Arbeit geringe, A desire and love for any thing makes work easy.
81. Ländlich, sittlich, Every country has its customs.
82. Ihr thut der Sache zu viel, You carry the thing too far.
83. Er schlägt sich aus dem Sinne, He turns his thoughts from it.
84. Schuster, bleib bei deinem Leisten, Shoemaker, keep to your last.
85. Besser arm mit Ehren, als reich mit Schande, It is better to be poor with honor, than rich with disgrace.
86. Durch wiederhohlte Streiche, fällt die größte Eiche, Repeated strokes, fell the greatest oaks.

87. Ein jeder strecke sich nach seiner Decke,
Let every one cut his coat according to his cloth.
88. Wie das Leben, so der Nachruhm,
As our life is, so will be our celebrity after death.
89. Ein Prophet gilt nirgend weniger als in seinem Vaterlande,
A prophet has no honor in his own country.
90. Wer Unglück gekostet hat, weiß wie es einem andern schmeckt,
Whoever has experienced misfortune, knows how to feel for others.
91. Neue Besen kehren gut,
New brooms sweep clean.
92. Versprechen und halten, steht fein an Jung und Alten,
It becomes both young and old, to perform what they promise.
93. Der Krug geht so lange zu Wasser, bis er bricht,
A pitcher may go often to the well, and be broken at last.
94. Eine Krähe hackt der andern die Augen nicht aus,
One crow does not peck out the eyes of another.
95. Eine Schwalbe macht keinen Sommer,
One swallow does not make a summer.
96. Ich will die Gefahr laufen,
I will run the risk.
97. Sorgen macht Sorgen,
He who goes a borrowing, goes a sorrowing.
98. Es ist nicht alles Gold was glänzt,
It is not all gold that glitters.
99. Noth bricht Eisen,
Necessity has no law.
100. Niemand weiß wo der Schuh ihn drückt, als wer ihn hat,
No one knows, where the shoe pinches, but he who wears it.
101. Ein Vogel in der Hand, ist besser als zwanzig auf dem Dache,
A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.
102. Nichts wissen ist keine Schande, aber nichts lernen wollen,
Ignorance is no disgrace; but having no inclination to learn is a disgrace.
103. Mancher Apfel hat eine schöne Schale und inwendig steckt ein Wurm,
Many apples have a fine outward appearance, but are rotten within.
104. Das Angesicht verräth die That,
The countenance betrays the deed. A guilty conscience needs no accuser.
105. Bei Gott ist kein Ding unmöglich,
With God nothing is impossible.
106. Wenns Glück anklopft, so mache ja bald auf,
When fortune knocks, be sure to open the door.
107. Nach dem Regen scheint die Sonne,
After a storm comes a calm.
108. Er macht aus der Mücke einen Elephanten,
He makes a mountain of a mole hill.
109. Wer mit Gold und Silber sacht, ist des Sieges gewiß,
He who fights with gold and silver is sure to conquer.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 110. Geduld überwindet alles, | Patience overcomes all things. |
| 111. Stille Wasser sind am tiefsten, | Still waters are commonly deepest. |
| 112. Rom ist in einem Tage nicht gebauet worden, | Rome was not built in a day. |
| 113. Zeit, Ebbe und Fluth warten auf niemand, | Time and tide wait for no man. |
| 114. Gott wird geben einem jeden nach seinen Werken, | God will render to every man according to his deeds. |
| 115. Im Wohlstande hat man Freunde die Menge; aber in Zeit der Noth gehen fünf und zwanzig auf ein Loth, | In time of prosperity friends will be plenty; in time of adversity not one amongst twenty. |
| 116. Nicht Reichthum, sondern Zufriedenheit macht die Menschen glücklich, | Not riches, but contentment makes men happy. |
| 117. Der Schriftsteller ist zu schätzen, welcher die Beförderung der Tugend zum Zwecke hat, | That writer is to be esteemed, who has the promotion of virtue for his object. |
| 118. Strebe zu haben ein unverlezt Gewissen allenthalben, sowohl gegen Gott als gegen Menschen, | Strive to have always a conscience void of offence, both towards God and man. |

GERMAN ABBREVIATIONS.

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| A. C. | Anno Christi. | in the year of our Lord. |
| Anno | im Jahr, | in the year. |
| Antw. | Antwort, | answer. |
| A. T. | Altes Testament, .. | Old Testament. |
| Auszg. | ausgenommen, | except. |
| B. | Buch, Band, | book, volume. |
| C. Cap., or Kap. | Capitel, or Kapitel, .. | chapter. |
| D. | Doctor, | Doctor. |
| d. h. | das heißt, | that means. |
| d. i. | das ist, | i. e. viz. |
| dergl. | dergleichen, | of this kind. |
| Ev. | Evangelium, | Gospel. |
| Eu. | Euer, | your. |
| f. or folg. | folgend, (<i>sing.</i>) | } the following. |
| ff. | folgende, (<i>plu.</i>) | |
| Fr. | Frau, | Lady, wife. |
| geb. | geboren, | born. |

gest.	gestorben,	died.
Gr.	Groschen,	a coin in Germany.
h. S.	heilige Schrift,	Holy Scriptures.
Hr. Hrn.	Herr, Herrn,	Mr. Sir, Sirs, Messrs.
J. C.	Jesus Christus,	Jesus Christ.
l.	lies,	read.
M. or Maj.	Majestät,	Majesty.
Mscr.	Manuscript,	Manuscript.
N. S.	Nachschrift,	Postscript.
N. T.	Neues Testament,	New Testament.
od.	oder,	or.
Rec.	Recensent,	Reviewer, critic.
Rthlr.	Reichs Thaler,	Rixdollar.
S. f.	Seite,	Page (of a book).
S. or f.	siehe,	see, or vide.
Se. Maj.	Seine Majestät,	his Majesty.
St.	Sanct,	Saint.
Thlr.	Thaler,	dollar.
u. a. m.	und andere mehr,	and so forth, or farther
u. d. g.	und dergleichen,	and the like.
u. f. f.	und so fort, or ferner,	} &c.
u. f. m.	und so mehr,	
u. f. w.	und so weiter,	
V. or v.	Vers or von,	Verse, of, or from.
Z. z.	Zeile,	line.
z. B.	zum Beispiel,	} for example.
z. E.	zum Exempel,	

FINIS.



Errata.

<i>Page</i>	5	line	25	for glutton, read gluttony.
....	10	..	9	.. Zeichen, read zeichnen.
....	10	..	34	.. der Boden, the ground, read the loft.
....	19	..	10	.. das Reis, the rice, read the twig,
....	21	..	23	.. Maria, read Mariä.
....	23	..	6	.. should be line 8.
....	38	..	3	.. en, read n.
....	38	..	7	.. eß, en, read s, n.
....	40	..	26	.. should be line 28, for eß, en, read s, n.
....	95	..	27	.. for Spinrocken, m. l. read Spindel, f, 3.
....	114	..	30	.. Gewolt, read Gewollt
....	147	..	7	.. Ich befließ, read Ich befließ mich.
....	156	..	15	.. the participle gedeihen, read gebiehn.
....	205	..	3	.. inseperable, read inseparable.
....	206	..	15	.. mp, read emp.

Page	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99	100									
Page	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111	112	113	114	115	116	117	118	119	120	121	122	123	124	125	126	127	128	129	130	131	132	133	134	135	136	137	138	139	140	141	142	143	144	145	146	147	148	149	150	151	152	153	154	155	156	157	158	159	160	161	162	163	164	165	166	167	168	169	170	171	172	173	174	175	176	177	178	179	180	181	182	183	184	185	186	187	188	189	190	191	192	193	194	195	196	197	198	199	200

Smith

Rowbotham, John

A Practical German Grammar

London 1824

L.germ. 223 m

urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb10584268-7